

# THE STRANGER

on the Road to Emmaus

John R. Cross



Published by GOODSEED® International

# The Stranger on the Road to Emmaus

Edition 5  
LARGE PRINT

Copyright © 2009 by GOODSEED® International  
First Printing: December 1996

All rights reserved. No portion of this book may be reproduced in any form without the written permission of the copyright holder. GOODSEED, www.goodseed.com, The Emmaus Road Message and logo design marks, are trademarks of GOODSEED International.

Published by GOODSEED® International  
P.O. Box 3704, Olds, AB, T4H 1P5, Canada  
Email: info@goodseed.com

## Library and Archives Canada Cataloguing in Publication

Cross, John R.

The stranger on the road to Emmaus [text (large print)] / John R. Cross. —  
Large print, ed. 5

Includes bibliographical references.

ISBN 978-1-890082-71-0

1. Bible—Criticism, interpretation, etc.
2. Christianity—Essence, genius, nature.
3. Theology, Doctrinal—Popular works. I. Title.

BS511.2.C763 2009b

220.6

C2009-904760-8

Scripture quotations marked (AMP) taken from the Amplified® Bible,  
Copyright © 1954, 1958, 1962, 1964, 1965, 1987 by The Lockman Foundation  
Used by permission. (www.Lockman.org)

Scripture quotations marked (ESV) are from The Holy Bible, English Standard Version,  
copyright © 2001 by Crossway Bibles, a division of Good News Publishers. Used by permission.  
All rights reserved.

Quotations marked (KJV) are from the Authorized King James Version.

Scripture quotations marked (NASB) are taken from the New American Standard Bible®,  
Copyright © 1960, 1962, 1963, 1968, 1971, 1972, 1973, 1975, 1977, 1995 by The  
Lockman Foundation Used by permission. (www.Lockman.org)

Scripture quoted by permission. Quotations designated (NET) are from the NET Bible®  
copyright © 1996-2006 by Biblical Studies Press, L.L.C. www.bible.org All rights reserved.

Scripture quotations marked (NIV) are taken from the HOLY BIBLE, NEW  
INTERNATIONAL VERSION®. NIV®. Copyright © 1973, 1978, 1984 by International  
Bible Society. Used by permission of Zondervan. All rights reserved.

Scripture quotations marked (NIV) are from the HOLY BIBLE, NEW INTERNATIONAL VERSION.  
Copyright © 1973, 1978, 1984 by International Bible Society. Used by permission of Hodder  
& Stoughton Publishers, A member of the Hodder Headline Group. All rights reserved. "NIV"  
is a registered trademark of International Bible Society. UK trademark number 1448790.

Scripture quotations marked (NKJV)™ are taken from the New King James Version®.  
Copyright © 1982 by Thomas Nelson, Inc. Used by permission. All rights reserved.

Scripture quotations marked NLT are taken from the Holy Bible, New Living Translation,  
copyright 1996. Used by permission of Tyndale House Publishers, Inc., Wheaton, Illinois 60189.  
All rights reserved.

To my father and mother, both of whom taught me that the Bible has a message that cannot be ignored.

And to my wife and family, who have been constant in their support and encouragement.

## ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

Centuries ago, a king known for his wisdom, wrote...

**Is there anything of which one can say,  
“Look! This is something new”?**

Certainly, as it relates to the Bible, one cannot take credit for original thoughts. I readily admit that I have included outlines and ideas that have been plundered from a thousand sources, both ancient and modern. Many of them are such common knowledge, no one would dare claim them as their own. Where sources were known, I have given credit in the end notes.

Of those I can identify, I especially want to thank Trevor McIlwain, who, in using a broad overview of Scripture, put the message in perspective. His approach to teaching has had a profound influence on my own, and for that I am deeply indebted to him.

In the same vein, I wish to thank Nancy Everson for her input and encouragement; my brother David Cross and my wife Janice for help in hashing out subject details and flow; Dr. Carl Wieland for his input on science-related areas; Paul and Kathleen

Humphreys, Barney and Mary Ann Iott, John Krajec, and Russ and Karyn Smyth, for their faithful support; Rachel Bader for her hard work on formatting, and the artists: Don Dolton, Adah Biggs, Ian Mastin, and one who preferred anonymity. I also want to thank Marlin Redpath and Jim McCulley for their part in creating the cover.

This fifth edition has reaped the benefit of years of input, with scores of folk making helpful suggestions. Of those listed, and the list is far from complete, some zeroed in on content, simplicity, or grammar, while others helped with the art or administration. To all involved, my many and sincere thanks.

Stephanie Aldom, Robin Belanger, Tracy Bernard, Jenny Bowen, Mavis Brockman, Ron Carraway, John & Denise Cornish, Andrew Cross, Naomi Cross, Sally Cross, Thom Cunningham, Bryan Coupland, Audrey DeJager, Luke DeJager, Jim Delgatty, Carrienne Ducommun, Dave Ducommun, Deanne Dolton, Caleb Edwards, Jim Elliott, Nathaniel Enns, Theo Enns, Nathan Enns, Peter & Linda Enns, Jennifer Erickson, Eric Esau, Flip & Marguerite Felton, Andrew & AnneMarie Ferguson, Joseph Ferguson, Dr. Dun Gordy, Don Hogman, Paul Howells, David Humphreys, Mark Humphreys, Mieke Jacobs, Miriam Keung, Andy Kline, Andrew Krajec, Jason McClure, Alan McDougall, Jason McDougall, Dr. Andy McIntosh, Alexis McKay, Jeremy Meerstra, Art & Wim Meerstra, Joyce Meerstra, Mark Nelson, Don Pederson, Lily Pegg, Gaetan & Ivy Pilon, Chet & Anita Plimpton, Micah Plimpton, Nora Rainey, Jim & Jill Rowe, Don Roberts, Dennis Rokser, Benjamin Sanford, Marie Sanford, Tim & Sue Sanford, Miriam Schnee, Jonathan & Jessica Simmonds, Brad Sprague, Helen Sprague, Neil Stirling, Dr. Neil Stretch, Linda Swain, Alice Tucker, Klaas VanderHeide, Peter & Carol VanderHeide, Esther VanderHeide, Frank VanderMeulen, Aukie Vandevrie, Verdon & Barbara Watson, Beth Weaver, Tibby Westcott, Raewyn Wiebe, Nichole Zook

# CONTENTS

---

Preface	9
<b>CHAP 1</b>	1 Prologue . . . . . 15
	2 Getting Things Straight . . . . . 17
	3 A Unique Book . . . . . 22
<b>CHAP 2</b>	1 In the Beginning God . . . . . 31
	2 Angels, Hosts and Stars . . . . . 40
<b>CHAP 3</b>	1 Heaven and Earth . . . . . 49
	2 It Was Good . . . . . 58
	3 Man and Woman . . . . . 70
<b>CHAP 4</b>	1 I Will . . . . . 89
	2 Has God Said? . . . . . 96
	3 Where are you? . . . . . 109
	4 Death . . . . . 117
<b>CHAP 5</b>	1 A Paradox . . . . . 133
	2 Atonement . . . . . 140
	3 Two by Two . . . . . 159
	4 Babel . . . . . 177
<b>CHAP 6</b>	1 Abraham . . . . . 189
	2 Belief . . . . . 196
	3 Isaac . . . . . 199
<b>CHAP 7</b>	1 Israel and Judah . . . . . 213
	2 Moses . . . . . 216
	3 Pharaoh and the Passover . . . . . 222
<b>CHAP 8</b>	1 Bread, Quail and Water . . . . . 237
	2 Ten Rules . . . . . 243
	3 The Courtroom . . . . . 259

<b>CHAP 9</b>	1 The Tabernacle . . . . .	273
	2 Unbelief . . . . .	287
	3 Judges, Kings and Prophets . . . .	294
<b>CHAP 10</b>	1 Elizabeth, Mary and John . . . . .	309
	2 Jesus . . . . .	317
	3 Among the Sages . . . . .	333
	4 Baptism . . . . .	338
<b>CHAP 11</b>	1 Tempted . . . . .	353
	2 Power and Fame . . . . .	359
	3 Nicodemus . . . . .	363
	4 Rejection . . . . .	369
	5 The Bread of Life . . . . .	377
<b>CHAP 12</b>	1 Filthy Rags . . . . .	383
	2 The Way . . . . .	389
	3 Lazarus . . . . .	392
	4 Hell . . . . .	399
	5 Acceptance and Betrayal . . . . .	403
<b>CHAP 13</b>	1 The Arrest . . . . .	411
	2 The Crucifixion . . . . .	418
	3 The Burial and Resurrection . . . .	442
<b>CHAP 14</b>	1 The Stranger . . . . .	457
	2 Adam to Noah. . . . .	463
	3 Abraham to the Law . . . . .	476
	4 The Tabernacle to the Bronze Serpent	490
	5 John the Baptist to the Resurrection	499
<b>CHAP 15</b>	1 What do You want me to do? . . . .	517
	2 A Convenient Time . . . . .	548
<b>Appendix</b>	Glossary . . . . .	555



## PREFACE

It's not easy to write an objective book about the Bible. By its very nature, the Bible demands a response. Unfortunately, people's responses have been determined under less than ideal settings.

Many of us have experienced religious zealots, who cram shattered fragments of Bible down our throats with the predictable effect of stimulating the spiritual gag reflex. This has left people inoculated with just enough Bible information to create misunderstanding, but not enough to generate true comprehension. On such a basis, many have chosen to **reject** the book rather than **accept** it. Most try a neutral platform—they avoid it altogether.

With the above in mind, I've endeavored to stay away from that **preachy** tone that sets one's teeth on edge. I've worked to explain the Bible clearly, allowing it to speak for itself—to say what it says—letting you draw your own conclusions. Some may accuse me of losing objectivity because I've communicated the Bible as being true. I felt that was a risk I must run, as the Bible itself makes that claim. To do otherwise would not be true to the

text. Indeed, I've tried to capture the spirit of the narrative to make it interesting as well as clear.

Secondly, I was determined to not **water down** the message. Where the Bible demands a choice, I've tried to illustrate that choice clearly. The Bible is quite direct about what it has to say and I've endeavored to reflect that reality by shunning any sort of vagueness. In keeping with this, I've avoided the confusion of being politically-correct at the expense of the message. Initially, I was perplexed at knowing how to express some words in our gender-neutral society. I eventually gave up on **humankind** and went with the traditional **mankind**.

As with any book, some may find it easy in the first few pages to decide that "it's not for me." I wish to challenge those who are inclined that way, to read the entire volume before deciding what to believe about the Bible. There was a time when I too would have thrown the Bible out with the proverbial bath water—but then I was challenged to pause and look again. I'm still looking, and continue to marvel over this **Book of all books**. There is a good chance you will too.

To maintain ease in reading and remain consistent with the Bible text chosen, in most cases I have used small initial letters for pronouns and certain nouns that relate to God. In areas where there might be confusion about who is being referred to, I have used capital letters consistent with traditional grammar rules.

All Bible text portions are bold-faced and indented. Where text is underlined, it should be understood as an emphasis on the content. Square parentheses in the Scripture portions indicate additions for explanatory purposes.

**“The Stranger on the Road to Emmaus”** introduces the reader to nine different translations of the Bible. None of the translations differ on content communicated nor affect the accompanying commentary.



About the Bible:

**...And let the one who hears say: "Come!"  
And let the one who is thirsty come; let  
the one who wants it take the water of  
life free of charge.**

**I testify to the one who hears the words  
of the prophecy contained in this book:  
If anyone adds to them, God will add to  
him the plagues described in this book.**

**And if anyone takes away from the words  
of this book of prophecy, God will take  
away his share in the tree of life and  
in the holy city that are described in  
this book.**

Revelation 22:17-19 NET

# CHAPTER ONE

**1** PROLOGUE

**2** GETTING THINGS STRAIGHT

**3** A UNIQUE BOOK

# 1 PROLOGUE

The year—circa 33 A.D.

The sun burned midday hot. All was quiet. Even the birds refused to sing in the oppressive heat. Cleopas kicked a clod of dried mud from the dusty road, drew a large breath and blew out his cheeks in a weary sigh. Squinting into the haze, he could barely make out the next ridge. Beyond that lay Emmaus—home. Sunset would be on them before their arrival. Normally they would have left Jerusalem sooner—after all, it was a three hour walk—but the events of the morning had kept them hanging back, wishing for more concrete news. Emmaus wasn't much of a town, but today it seemed very attractive. Any place but Jerusalem, with its yelling rabble, its Roman cohorts, its governor—Pontius Pilate.

Cleopas' heavy thoughts were jerked back to the present as his irritated companion asked a question for the second time. The two of them had been discussing the day's events—the last few years' events—until it seemed no detail could be dissected more. Cleopas was tired, but more than that, he was confused by all that had

transpired in Jerusalem. These days, it seemed, life held more questions than answers. Trudging down the hill they rounded a bend. It was then they met the stranger.

Hours later, the same day, the same night, when the two of them stood hot and sweaty before their friends back in Jerusalem—for it was there they had rushed—they couldn't give a good answer as to how the stranger had joined their twosome. At first, Cleopas thought he had stepped out of the shadow of a big boulder, but that didn't jive with his friend's explanation. The bottom line was, they just weren't sure where he had come from. Lamely, Cleopas had said that the stranger had "kinda, well just sort of—appeared." That had been met with some derisive statements about the heat and too much sun.

But of one thing they were sure. The stranger had taken that ancient collection of books—the Bible—and starting at the very beginning, over the next several hours, had explained it in a way that made incredible sense. The stranger's message had driven all despondency and doubt from their minds. So thrilled were they by their new understanding that they had hurried all the

way back to Jerusalem to tell their friends about **THE STRANGER**. Somehow, somewhere, they too needed to hear this message—the message they had heard **ON THE ROAD TO EMMAUS**.

So just what did **THE STRANGER** say about the Bible—a book that has puzzled so many—that made so much sense? That is what this book is all about. And to understand it clearly, we will do what **THE STRANGER** did—start at the very beginning.

## **2 GETTING THINGS STRAIGHT**

When you stop and think about it, it's entirely reasonable—indeed, just plain logical—to take a few hours out of your entire life to gain an understanding of the Bible. After all, the Bible has some very profound things to say about life...and about death.

For centuries it has been a best seller. Anyone who claims to be the least bit informed should understand its basic content. Unfortunately, the Bible has fallen into disrepute, not because of what it says, but because some very prominent men and women, who claim to follow the Bible, have made some of the worst choices in life.

But the Bible has not changed. And despite what the hypocrites or critics say, it does make good sense to know it for **yourself**—

...for **your own** peace of mind,

...for **your own** life and death's sake.

## **A PUZZLE**

In many ways, the Bible is like a puzzle. By this, I do not mean that its message is hidden, but rather that to understand the Bible accurately, the biblical pieces must be put together in the right way. We can do this by applying four basic principles of learning.

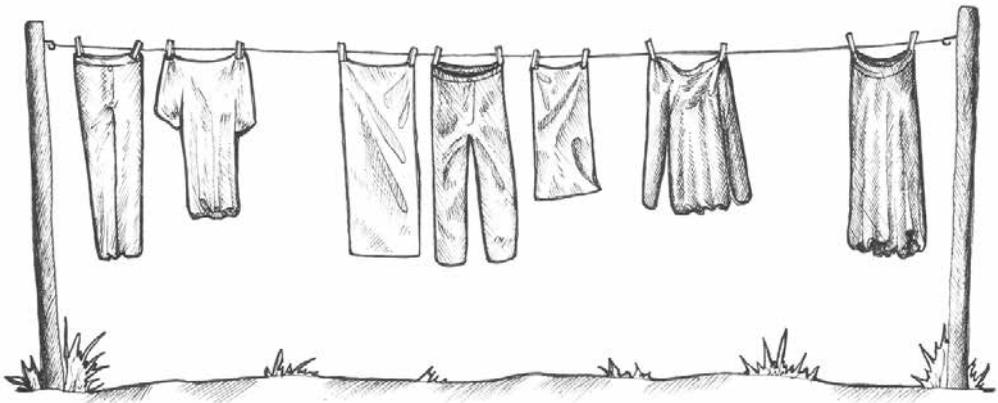
### **1. The Storytelling Principle**

The first principle is especially important when learning history or reading a story. Simply put, it's this—**start at the beginning and move sequentially through to the end**. That may seem obvious, but many people tend to read the Bible in bits and pieces, never taking the time to tie them together.

In this book we will cover key events, stringing them together in logical sequence—like hanging laundry on a clothesline. Since this overview is far from comprehensive, expect some gaps on

the line. If you wish, the gaps can be filled in later, after you have the overall picture.

Although this clothesline cannot include every story, the events we do study will tie together in one continuous message. If you are a typical reader, by the time you have finished this book, the Bible will make remarkable sense. Whether you believe it or not is entirely up to you. I sincerely hope you will, but that is your choice. My job is to help you understand it clearly.



## 2. The Mathematical Principle

The second principle is one we use all the time. To learn any new concept, it helps to build from the foundation up—to move from the known to the unknown. You don't start children in kindergarten by teaching them algebra. Rather, you begin with

basic numbers, and move from the simple to the complex. If you skip the fundamentals, even rudimentary algebra will be beyond your grasp.

It's the same way with the Bible. If you neglect the foundations, your biblical understanding will incorporate some unusual ideas, resulting in the message being confused—the puzzle will present the wrong image. In this book we begin with the basics, and progress through each chapter, building on previously gained knowledge.

### **3. The Priority Principle**

This third principle—**major on the majors**—should be applied to any learning situation where the content is unfamiliar to you. The idea is to learn the most important points first.

The Bible covers an incredible array of topics, but not all are of equal importance. In this book we will focus on one major theme—the most significant theme in the Bible. Once you understand it, the Bible will make profound but simple sense.

### **4. The Clarity Principle**

The fourth principle is of critical importance. **Don't mix your subject matter—stick to one theme at a time.**

The Bible addresses many different issues. It might be compared to a cookbook with its many diverse recipes. Traditionally, the Bible has been broken down into topics, such as God, Angels, Man, and Prophecy. The intention was to create better understanding, but one needs to be careful. Some people, finding certain similarities between topics, attempt to combine the ideas, often resulting in a distortion of the original meaning. It's like jumping from a pickle recipe to a pie recipe because they both share the initial letter "p." If you begin by making pickles and end with the pie recipe, you will bake the pickles until they are well-browned! Both may start with the letter "p," but combined they make bizarre food!

The mixing of various topics is one of the contributing causes as to why we find so many different church groups, religions and cults, that to varying degrees hold the Bible as their book. The pie has been mixed with the pickles. The puzzle has a jumbled picture. In some cases, the confusion is minor. In other situations, the mix-up has had catastrophic results.

In the Bible, if you unintentionally leap from one topic to another, the end result will be confusion—your puzzle will be disjointed. To avoid this biblical chaos, we will stick to one **theme**.

### 3 A UNIQUE BOOK

There is no doubt about it; the Bible is a unique book. Actually, it's a collection of books, sixty-six in all. One author, in writing of the Bible's uniqueness, put it this way:

Here is a book:

1. written over a 1500 year span;
2. written over 40 generations;
3. written by more than 40 authors, from every walk of life—including kings, peasants, philosophers, fishermen, poets, statesmen, scholars, etc.:  
Moses, a political leader, trained in the universities of Egypt  
Peter, a fisherman  
Amos, a herdsman  
Joshua, a military general  
Nehemiah, a cupbearer  
Daniel, a prime minister

Luke, a doctor

Solomon, a king

Matthew, a tax collector

Paul, a rabbi

4. written in different places:

Moses in the wilderness

Jeremiah in a dungeon

Daniel on a hillside and in a palace

Paul inside a prison

Luke while traveling

John on the isle of Patmos

others in the rigors of a military campaign

5. written at different times:

David in times of war

Solomon in times of peace

6. written during different moods: some writing from the heights of joy and others from the depths of sorrow and despair

7. written on three continents: Asia, Africa, and Europe

8. written in three languages: Hebrew ..., Aramaic..., and Greek...

9. Finally, its subject matter includes hundreds of controversial topics. Yet, the biblical authors spoke with harmony and continuity from Genesis to Revelation. There is one unfolding story ...<sup>1</sup>

This **one unfolding story** is what we want to look at—simply and without theological jargon. By far the most unique thing about the Bible is that it claims to be God’s own words.

## **GOD-BREATHED**

Often referred to as Scripture, the Bible states that...

**All Scripture is God-breathed ...<sup>2</sup>**

2 Timothy 3:16 NIV

The whole concept of God **breathing out** Scripture is a study in itself. Just as when one exhales his breath, and that breath comes from his innermost being, so ultimately all Scripture is to be viewed as the very product of God himself. God and his words are inseparable, which is one reason the Bible is often referred to as **God’s Word**.

Highly simplified, it can be looked at this way. God told men what he wanted recorded and

those men wrote it down. Most of these men were called **prophets**.

**In the past God spoke to our forefathers through the prophets...** Hebrews 1:1 NIV

Today, we think of prophets as those who foretell the future, but in Bible times a prophet was a messenger who passed on God's words to the people. Sometimes the message had to do with future events, but more often than not, it was concerned with daily living.

God guided the prophets in such a way that what was recorded was precisely what he wanted written. At the same time, God allowed the human writer to record **His Word—God's Word**—in the prophet's own unique style, but to do so without error. These men were not free to add their own private thoughts to the message.

**... you must understand that no prophecy of Scripture came about by the prophet's own interpretation. For prophecy never had its origin in the will of man, but men spoke from God as they were carried along ...**

2 Peter 1:20–21 NIV

The phrase **carried along** is used elsewhere in the Bible in reference to the transporting of a paralyzed man.<sup>3</sup> Just as a disabled man could not walk by his own power, so the prophets did not write the Scripture at their own inclination. The Bible is clear on this point—it was **God's** message from beginning to end.

### **EXTREME ACCURACY**

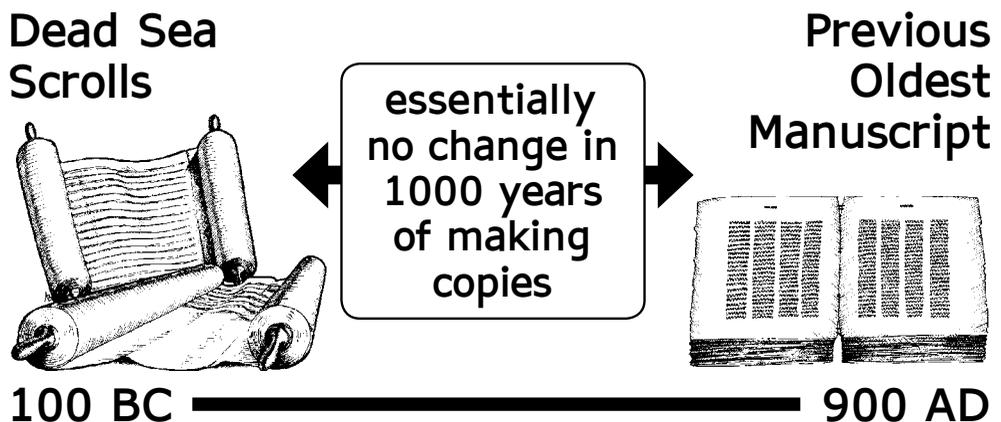
The prophets wrote God's words on a scroll, usually an animal skin or paper made from plant fiber. The originals were called **autographs**. Since the autographs had a limited life span, copies were made of the scrolls. But the writers' awareness that what was being recorded was God's own Word resulted in one of the most remarkable reproduction jobs ever done. In writing the Hebrew text...

**They used every imaginable safeguard, no matter how cumbersome or laborious, to ensure the accurate transmission of the text. The number of letters in a book was counted and its middle letter was given. Similarly with the words, and again the middle word was noted.**<sup>4</sup>

This was done with both the copy and the original autograph to insure that they were exactly the same.

These scribes were so accurate in their transcription that, when the Dead Sea Scrolls were found (written in 100 BC), and compared with manuscripts resulting from centuries of copying and recopying to a period of time 1000 years later (900 AD), there were no significant differences in the text.<sup>5</sup>

Josephus, a Jewish historian from the first century A.D., summed it up for his people when he stated ... how firmly we have given credit to those books of our own nation, is evident by what we do; for during so many ages as have already passed, no one has been so bold as either to add anything to them, to take anything from them, or to make any change in them; but it becomes natural to all Jews...to esteem those books...divine.<sup>6</sup>



These men were absolutely convinced that to meddle with the text was to tamper with God. We have ample reason to be assured that what we have today is essentially the same as what the prophets wrote.

Truly, the Bible is a unique book by any standard. No wonder the Bible is...**the most quoted, the most published, the most translated and the most influential book in the history of mankind.**<sup>7</sup>

## **OLD AND NEW TESTAMENT**

As we begin to navigate through the Bible, it may be helpful to know that the Scriptures are divided into two major sections—the **Old Testament** and **New Testament**. Historically, the **Old Testament** portion was further sub-divided into another two<sup>8</sup> categories:

1. the Law of Moses (sometimes referred to as **The Torah, The Books of Moses, or The Law**)
2. the Prophets (Later on, a third section called the **Writings**, was sub-divided out of the Prophets.)

In the Scriptures, the phrase, **the law and the prophets**, is a way of referring to the entire Old Testament—a part which comprises approximately

two-thirds of the Bible. The remaining one-third is referred to as the New Testament.

## **GOD'S WORD**

Remembering the biblical categories is not critical. The important thing to keep in mind is that the Bible claims to be God's Word—His message to mankind. We are told that through its pages we can become acquainted with God. Such a claim should cause even the most indifferent person to pause and consider what it has to say.

**Your word, LORD, is eternal; it stands firm...**

Psalm 119:89 NIV

# CHAPTER TWO

**1 IN THE BEGINNING GOD...**

**2 ANGELS, HOSTS AND STARS**

# 1 IN THE BEGINNING GOD...

The Bible starts with four very profound words:

**In the beginning God ...** Genesis 1:1 NASB

There are no opening arguments for the existence of God—it is assumed he exists. God is just **there**.

## ETERNAL

God has been **there** all along. God existed before plants, animals and people, before the earth and the universe. He had no beginning and he will have no end. God has always been and will always be. The Bible says that God has existed from everlasting past to everlasting future. God is eternal.

**Before the mountains were born or you brought forth the earth ...from everlasting to everlasting you are God.** Psalm 90:2 NIV

The concept of an eternal God is difficult for us to grasp. It's so troublesome to our intellect that often we file it in our cranium under the label **impossible**. But there are illustrations to help our comprehension. For example, we can compare eternity with the cosmos.

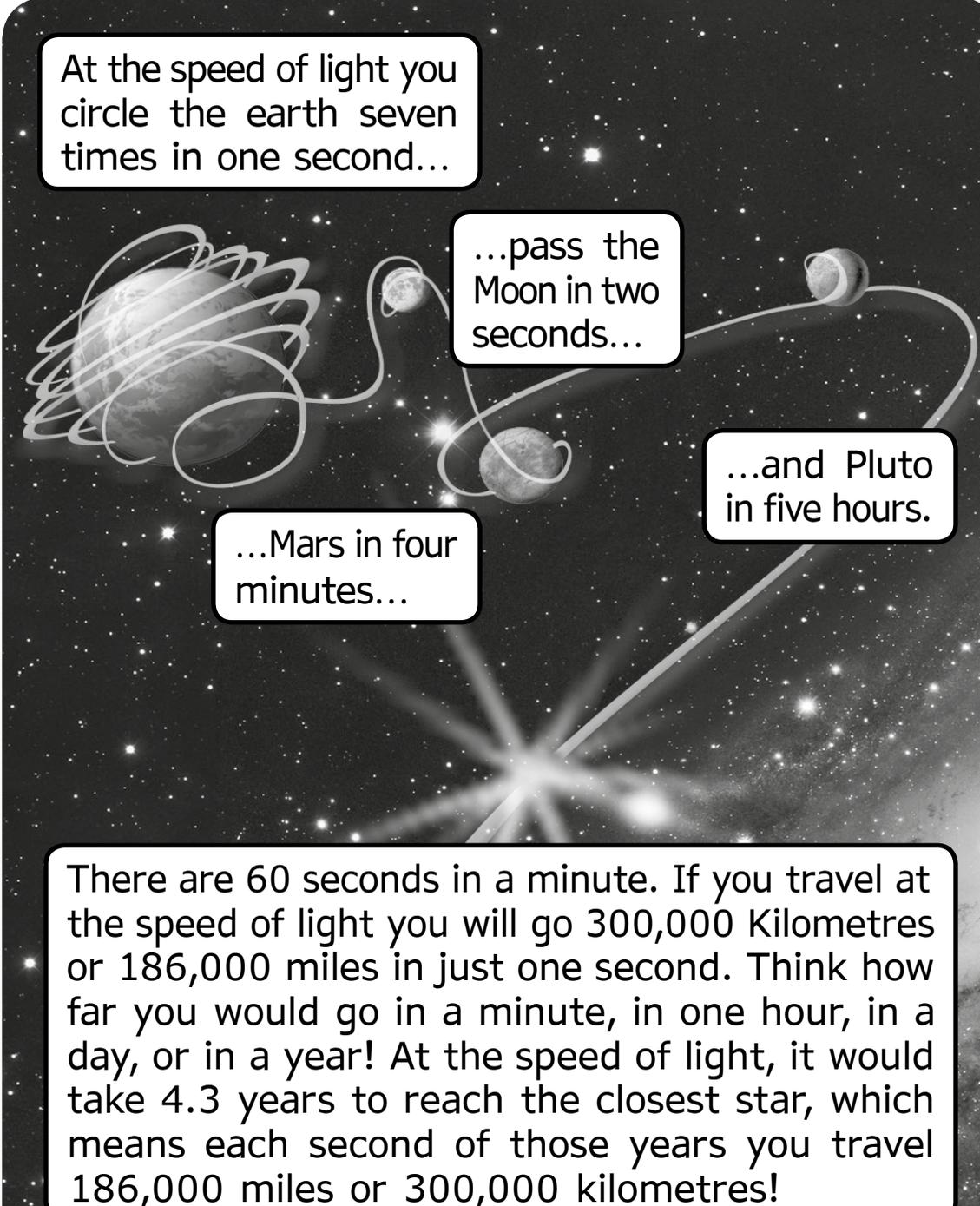
Most of us can fathom our solar system—the sun surrounded by orbiting planets. We know it's

vast, but space probes have made the farthest distances seem reachable. But go a step further and begin to measure the universe. If we were to climb into a spaceship and travel at the speed of light, we would circle the earth **seven times in one second!** How did you enjoy your tour? A little brisk, perhaps?

Heading out into space at the same speed, we would pass the moon in two seconds, the planet Mars in four minutes, and Pluto in five hours. At the speed of light, you will reach the closest star in 4.3 years, which means each second of those years you travel 186,000 miles or 300,000 kilometers. From there you are off into our galaxy—the MILKY WAY.

### **THE MILKY WAY GALAXY**

The band of stars you see in the night sky is part of a gigantic family of stars called the Milky Way Galaxy.<sup>1</sup> Traveling at the speed of light, it would take 100,000 years to cross it from one side to the other. There are an estimated 100 billion galaxies in the Universe, many comprising billions of stars. Galaxies come in clusters and super-clusters. There are about twenty galaxies in our cluster, and thousands of galaxies in our super-cluster.



At the speed of light you circle the earth seven times in one second...

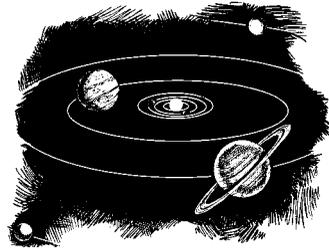
...pass the Moon in two seconds...

...Mars in four minutes...

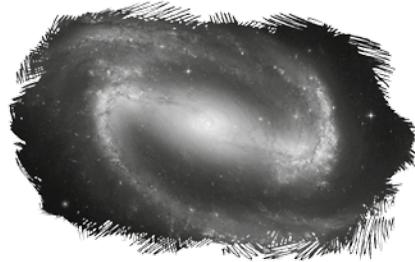
...and Pluto in five hours.

There are 60 seconds in a minute. If you travel at the speed of light you will go 300,000 Kilometres or 186,000 miles in just one second. Think how far you would go in a minute, in one hour, in a day, or in a year! At the speed of light, it would take 4.3 years to reach the closest star, which means each second of those years you travel 186,000 miles or 300,000 kilometres!

Our star, the sun, is near the edge of the Milky Way Galaxy. Our entire solar system with its orbiting planets could fit in this box.



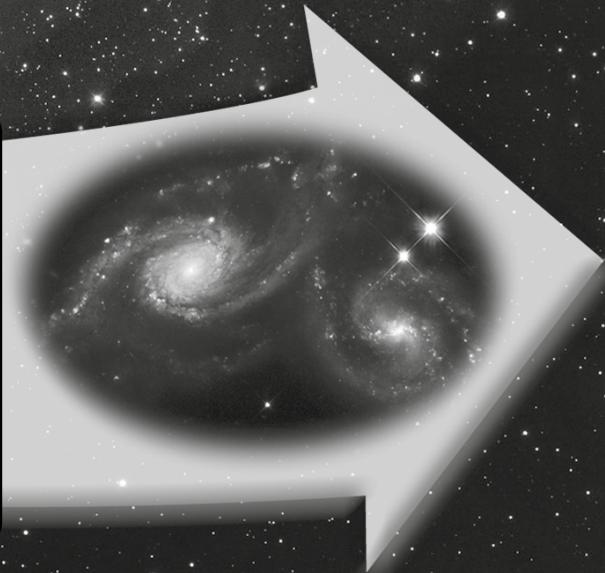
At the speed of light, you will reach the next closest galaxy in 2 million years...



**WANT A STAR  
NAMED AFTER YOU?<sup>2</sup>**

Based on the present population of the earth, you could have 16 galaxies named after you. That means billions of stars could carry your name!

...and the next closest cluster of galaxies in 20 million years. At this point you have only begun to travel the Universe.



Yes, the thought of an eternal God is difficult to grasp, but so is the vastness of our universe. Both are mind-boggling, yet both are real. The Bible speaks emphatically on this point. God's eternal existence is such an inherent part of his nature that the Bible refers to it as his name ...

**... the name of the LORD, the everlasting God.**  
Genesis 21:33 KJV

### **MANY NAMES**

God has many names or titles, each declaring something about his character.

We will look at three:

#### **1) I Am**

God said ... "I AM WHO I AM." And he said, "Say this ... 'I AM has sent me to you.'"

Exodus 3:14 ESV

The closest one can get to an explanation of this statement is this: **I Am the One who is** or **I Am the self-existent one**. God exists by his own power.

We need food, water, air, sleep, light—an endless supply of essential items to live—but not God. He requires nothing, nothing at all! He is the **self-existent one, the I Am**.

## 2) Lord<sup>3</sup>

The title **I Am** is not commonly used in the Bible because its meaning is embedded in the word **LORD**.

**No one is like you, O LORD; you are great, and your name is mighty in power.**

Jeremiah 10:6 NIV

The name **LORD** not only highlights God's eternal self-existent state, but also focuses our attention on his position—a position that is higher than all others. He is **LORD** of lords.

## 3) The Most High

This name ties in with the name, **LORD**, by emphasizing God's role as a sovereign ruler.

**Let them know that you, whose name is the LORD—that you alone are the Most High over all the earth.** Psalm 83:18 NIV

Just as ancient empires had absolute leaders or sovereigns who reigned over their domains, so God is King of the universe, the God Most High.

Even the word **God** itself emphasizes his position as supreme ruler. The word **God** means **strong one, mighty leader, supreme Deity**.

The idea of God as king may conjure up an image of an old man seated on a gold throne floating

somewhere in the stratosphere. The Scripture nowhere illustrates God as an old man, but it does refer to God's throne—not ensconced in a cloud—but rather in a holy temple situated in Heaven.

**The LORD is in his holy temple; the LORD is on his heavenly throne. He observes the sons of men; his eyes examine them.**

Psalm 11:4 NIV

God rules from Heaven. We don't know much about this place called Heaven, but the little we do know is incredible. We will discuss this in greater detail later on, but for now it is enough to know that God is the supreme Ruler.

### **ONLY ONE GOD**

The term **The Most High** speaks of God's unique place in the universe. There is no one else like him. He stands alone, the Sovereign LORD of all.

**I am the LORD, and there is no other; Besides Me there is no God.** Isaiah 45:5 NASB

**Before Me there was no God formed, And there will be none after Me.** Isaiah 43:10 NASB

There is no hierarchy of gods, with one big God ruling the roost as it were. No other gods exist out there, whether self-existent or created.

**This is what the LORD says... "I am the First and the Last; there is no other God."**

Isaiah 44:6 NLT

The Bible is emphatic—there is only one God.

## **A SPIRIT**

Before we leave this subject, we need to understand one last thing. The Bible tells us that God is invisible because he is a spirit.

**God is spirit ...**

John 4:24 NASB

You can't see a spirit because it doesn't have flesh and bones like we do. But just because you cannot see somebody doesn't make that person any less real.

Think of a funeral of a friend who has died. If the casket was open, you may have looked at the body. The body was there, but where was your friend? He was gone; your friend's spirit was no longer present. When we look at someone, we only see their house, the human body—we don't actually see the real person, the spirit.

We will see that the Bible indicates in many different ways that man's spirit starts at a point in time and then lives on forever. But God is different; he never had a beginning and he will

never end. He is the only eternal spirit, living from everlasting past to everlasting future.

**God:**

He is a **spirit**

He is **eternal**.

He is the **I Am**—the self-existent one.

He is the **God Most High**, the Sovereign Ruler of all.

He is the **only God**.

And that's the way it was—**In the beginning ...**

## **2 ANGELS, HOSTS AND STARS**

God's first creative act is scattered across the pages of the Bible. You can pull together enough information to answer rudimentary questions, but that is where it stops. The Bible is not written to satisfy man's endless curiosity. It gives basic information on some events, but when it comes to further details, the pages fall silent. This is precisely the case with the subject of spirit beings.

### **NAMES**

The Bible calls spirits by many different names—some singular, some plural. We often call them angels, but the Bible uses many terms

to define them: cherubim, seraphim, angels, archangels, morning stars—the list goes on. Collectively they are referred to as multitudes, hosts, or \*stars.

\* Not to be confused with stars in the night sky. Context reveals which meaning is in question.

### The host of heaven worships You.

Nehemiah 9:6 NKJV

They may all have personal names but only a few are mentioned, such as Gabriel and Michael.

### **INVISIBLE, INNUMERABLE**

As with God, spirits are invisible, having no bodies of flesh and blood like you and me. Even though we can't see them, they must be everywhere. The Bible indicates that there are ...

**...thousands upon thousands of angels...**

Hebrews 12:22 NIV

The idiom used to number just those surrounding God's throne communicates an unfathomable sum.

**Then I looked and heard the voice of many angels, numbering thousands upon thousands, and ten thousand times ten thousand. They encircled the throne...**

Revelation 5:11 NIV

## SERVANTS

The angelic beings were created to serve God and do his pleasure. They are called ministering spirits.

**Praise the LORD, you his angels, you mighty ones who do his bidding, who obey his word. Praise the LORD, all his heavenly hosts, you his servants who do his will.**

Psalm 103:20–21 NIV

**Are not all angels ministering spirits sent to serve ...?**

Hebrews 1:14 NIV

The word **angel** is derived from the Greek term, meaning **messenger** or **servant**. Because God created them, they belonged to him and were to do whatever God asked them to do.

## CREATOR—OWNER

The concept of the creator also being the owner has lost its strength in our industrialized, money-driven economy.

I remember walking through a tribal village in Papua New Guinea. Every item I asked about—**“Whose paddle is this? Whose canoe is that?”**—elicited a response that designated an owner. Upon inquiring how they knew who the owner was, they looked at me incredulously.

**“Well, the owner is the one who made it!”** The creator-owner connection was very strong.

When I questioned them if it would be all right for me to break a paddle, they were just as emphatic that it would not be a good idea—unless I wanted to have trouble with the creator-owner.

Taking it a step further, I asked if it was acceptable for the owner to break it. They gave a tribal shrug and a nod: **“It’s okay for the owner to break it—he made it.”**

God created the angels and so it was not out of place for them to be considered his possessions. And since they belonged to him, they were to do his bidding—as his servants and messengers. This was not some ancient form of servitude. There are no parallels here to forced bondage. The angels could have had no better Creator-Owner.

### **EXTRAORDINARY INTELLECT AND POWER**

To carry out his directives, God created the angels with great intellect and power. Some of these angelic beings had more capability than others. The angels were created as perfect beings, without any evil. But they weren’t robots either; they each had a will which gave them the ability to choose.<sup>4</sup>

## **SIMILAR BUT DIFFERENT**

Angels share some similarities with man, though man is not nearly as powerful or intelligent. The Bible says that God made man ...

**...a little lower than the angels...**

Psalm 8:5 NKJV

Though similar, angels are distinct from man. They never die.<sup>5</sup> They neither marry nor reproduce.<sup>6</sup> Though normally unseen, on certain assignments they make themselves visible. When they talk to man, the language they use is understandable to the hearer.

## **THE ANOINTED CHERUB**

The most powerful, the most intelligent and the most beautiful spirit ever created was a cherub. His name is translated in Latin as **Lucifer**,<sup>7</sup> which means **shining one**.

**... O Lucifer, son of the morning!**

Isaiah 14:12 NKJV

Lucifer was referred to as an anointed cherub. The meaning of the word **anointed** has its origins in the ancient rite of pouring oil on someone or something to set it apart to God for a special task. This act was considered sacred and not to be taken lightly.

You were anointed as a guardian cherub,  
for so I ordained you. You were on the  
holy mount of God... You were blameless  
in your ways from the day you were  
created ...

Ezekiel 28:14-15 NIV

It seems that Lucifer's job kept him in the presence of God at all times. Perhaps he somehow represented the rest of the angels and led them in worship and praise of their Creator-Owner. We will learn more about this anointed cherub later.

## **WORSHIP**

The word **worship** comes from an old English word meaning to **declare a person's worth**. The Bible says that all the angels worshipped God.

**You impart life to them all, and the multitudes of heaven worship you.**

Nehemiah 9:6 NET

That is only fitting since God is the Sovereign King and, as such, rightly deserves to have his worth declared. By way of contrast, if I am boasting about a friend's deeds, someone else could call into question whether my friend deserves as much praise as I'm giving. But the Bible says God is worthy of all praise.

**“You are worthy, our Lord and God, to receive glory and honor and power, since you created all things, and because of your will they existed and were created!”**

Revelation 4:11 NET

**For you are great and do amazing things.  
You alone are God.**

Psalms 86:10 NET

### **ALL THE ANGELS WATCH CREATION**

God’s creative act had begun. Now, as all the angelic host watched and rejoiced, God embarked on his next great work of art.

His canvas: the universe

His subject: the whole earth.

**“Where were you when I laid the foundations of the earth? Tell me, if you know so much. Who determined its dimensions and stretched out the surveying line? What supports its foundations, and who laid its cornerstone as the morning stars [or spirit beings] sang together and all the angels shouted for joy?”**

Job 38:4–7 NLT



# CHAPTER THREE

**1** HEAVEN AND EARTH

**2** IT WAS GOOD

**3** MAN AND WOMAN

# 1 HEAVEN AND EARTH

The first book in the Bible is called Genesis.

Genesis means beginnings.

In the beginning God created the heavens and the earth. Now the earth was formless and empty, darkness was over the surface of the deep, and the Spirit of God was hovering over the waters. And God said, "Let there be light," and there was light. God saw that the light was good, and he separated the light from the darkness. God called the light "day," and the darkness he called "night." And there was evening, and there was morning—the first day.

Genesis 1:1–5 NIV

## FROM NOTHING

"In the beginning God created..." To create is to exhibit profound power. It is even more incredible to realize that God created everything out of nothing. We as humans create, but only with pre-existing material. We paint pictures using oils and canvas. We build houses out of wood, mortar and brick. But when God created, he used nothing.

## **ALL-POWERFUL**

To create on such a grand scale with no materials, no blueprints, no workshop and no tools, takes abilities totally foreign to us. The Bible tells us that creation was possible simply because God is able. God's power knows no limit.

**Great is our LORD, and mighty in power ...**

Psalm 147:5 NKJV

He is truly **all-powerful**.

## **ALL-KNOWING**

God not only has the power, but he also has the knowledge. He is **all-knowing**.

**Great is our LORD ... his understanding has no limit.**

Psalm 147:5 NIV

God knows everything. He doesn't need to check with the architect or an engineer for further information. His knowledge is unlimited. In creation, God was not confined to someone else's blueprint.

## **EVERYWHERE PRESENT AT ONE TIME**

When man is in the process of building or shaping an object, he needs a workplace, such as a shop or studio. But God needed no workshop in which to fashion his creation, for the Bible tells us that the LORD is **everywhere present at one time**.

**“Am I only a God nearby,” declares the LORD, “and not a God far away? Can anyone hide in secret places so that I cannot see him?” declares the LORD. “Do not I fill heaven and earth?” declares the LORD.**

Jeremiah 23:23–24 NIV

Only God possesses this triad of attributes—**all-knowing, all-powerful, and present everywhere at one time**—and only a faultless combination of these three attributes would be able to create the complex realm in which we live.

**He has made the earth by His power; He has established the world by His wisdom, And stretched out the heaven by His understanding.**

Jeremiah 51:15 NKJV

The angels possess none of these characteristics, even as powerful and intelligent as they are. And us? We don't even come close to this sort of ability.

For us to construct even the simplest object takes combined human effort. For example, let's say we decide to make a simple chair—the kind you find in a school auditorium.

For starters we need metal. **But where do you find metal?**

In rocks. But who knows which stones contain the required metal?

We need a geologist and a prospector who know a great deal about finding the rocks which carry iron ore.

Assuming we have found the right rocks, what's the next step?

We need someone with the know-how to manufacture dynamite and assorted mining equipment. We need miners who have the expertise to extract the ore safely from the ground.

But you still can't build a chair with a mound of iron ore. It needs to be melted down. Can you build a fire hot enough to melt rocks?

We need those who know the smelting and alloy process. So we found those fellows, but guess what?

They just poured for us a block of steel. If we are going to make a chair, it will necessitate having someone who understands how to roll that block into a thin sheet of metal, bend it into a tube and then weld it.

**Welding?** Sounds like we need someone with knowledge in electricity and how to generate it.

As you can see, making a chair is a complicated process. And we haven't even discussed the plastic parts.

**Plastic?** Hmmm. Doesn't that get into petroleum products? Now let me see. Drilling a well to find oil takes...??!!

And all we wanted to do was make a chair. To create even the simplest object takes hundreds of people with combined knowledge and allied skills. **No one person knows it all.**

None of us, human or angelic, can be compared in even the smallest way to God who **knows** all things, who has all the **power** to create from nothing, and is **everywhere**—so that he can place the object he has made wherever he chooses. God stands alone.

**Ah, LORD GOD! Behold, You have made the heavens and the earth by Your great power and outstretched arm. There is nothing too hard for You.**                      Jeremiah 32:17 NKJV

## **GOD SPOKE**

The account of this monumental creative act is recorded simply and concisely. The most staggering information is stated in just a few words. For example, the biblical text makes only

passing reference to the means by which God accomplished his creation. He didn't use hands or tools. The LORD just spoke the cosmos and all it contained into existence.

**God said, "Let there be light."**

Genesis 1:3 NET

**...the entire universe was formed at God's command ...**

Hebrews 11:3 NLT

Once again, such ability confounds our imagination. We can't comprehend speaking a metal chair into existence, let alone the universe! But then, what would you expect from an almighty God? When you think about it, you would expect him to be just that powerful. The Bible states it as fact.

**By the word of the LORD the heavens were made, And all the host of them by the breath of His mouth... Let all the earth fear the LORD; Let all the inhabitants of the world stand in awe of Him. For He spoke, and it was done; He commanded, and it stood fast.**

Psalms 33:6,8-9 NKJV

So, that's the way it all started. God spoke light into existence. He named the light **day**, and the darkness he called **night**. According to the Bible, the first day of creation was complete.

## **EVERYWHERE PRESENT AT ONE TIME**

Not all the attributes of God are equally comprehensible. Somehow it's easier for us to envision God being **all-powerful** and **all-knowing** than to see him being present in all places at the same time. But over and over again, the Scripture teaches us that God is **everywhere-present**.

When you stop and ponder the idea, it really is comforting. If I am travelling away from my family, I want to know that God is with them. But at the same time, I want the LORD to be with me. If I am in trouble, I don't want to have to **find God** to get help. I may need assistance—NOW! And, of course, I want that to be true for my family as well.

On the other hand, it can be frightening to know that God is everywhere present. If I do wrong, there's no place to hide.

In the 10th century BC, a king of Israel wrote these words as he was directed by God:

**Where can I go from Your Spirit? Where can I flee from Your presence? If I go up to the heavens, You are there; If I**

**Continued...**

make my bed in the depths, You are there. If I rise on the wings of the dawn, if I settle on the far side of the sea, even there Your hand will guide me, Your right hand will hold me fast. If I say, "Surely the darkness will hide me and the light become night around me," even the darkness will not be dark to You; the night will shine like the day, for darkness is as light to You.

Psalm 139:7–12 NIV

The fact that God is **everywhere** at one time needs to be differentiated from the concept of **pantheism**. Simply put, pantheism teaches that God is in everything, and everything is God. In contrast, we will see that the Bible teaches that the LORD is distinct from his creation—he is not part of it. The Scripture defines God as a **being**, not some sort of abstract or transcendent force.

Do you not know? Have you not heard? The LORD is an eternal God, the creator of the whole earth. He does not get tired or weary; there is no limit to his wisdom.

Isaiah 40:28 NET

## **ANCIENT BUT ACCURATE**

Centuries ago it was commonly believed that the earth was flat. This thinking never had its origins in the Bible. The Scripture uses a word that alludes to the spherical shape of the globe when it states...

**He sits enthroned above the circle  
of the earth ...**

Isaiah 40:22 NIV

Some ancients speculated that the earth sat on a strong foundation or was supported by a mythological god. The Bible says God...

**...hangs the earth on nothing.**

Job 26:7 NKJV

Ptolemy in the 2<sup>nd</sup> century catalogued 1,022 stars, which was considered authoritative until Galileo's invention of the telescope in the 17<sup>th</sup> century. Though only about 5000 stars are visible to the unaided eye, the Bible from its earliest pages relates the number of stars to...

**...the sand which is on the seashore...**

Genesis 22:17 NASB

## 2 IT WAS GOOD

God had begun his creative work. The curtains had been pulled back. As all the angelic host watched, heaven and earth were placed on the stage. With a word, the Sovereign God turned on the floodlights. Act One was completed; Day One was finished. Now five more acts of God's great drama were to follow in the next five days of creation.

**Do you not know? Have you not heard? Has it not been told you from the beginning? Have you not understood since the earth was founded? ... He stretches out the heavens like a canopy, and spreads them out like a tent to live in. Isaiah 40:21-22 NIV**

The Bible compares the earth to a tent. It's a place in which to dwell, the most unique homestead in the universe.

### DAY TWO

At the conclusion of day one, the earth as created was completely covered with water. Now, on day two...

**...God said, "Let there be an expanse in the midst of the waters and let it separate water from water." ...God called the expanse**

**“sky.” There was evening, and there was morning, a second day.** Genesis 1:6-8 NET

The expanse\* was probably synonymous with what we call the **atmosphere**. The earth’s **atmosphere** and **water** are just two of many features that make life possible on this planet.

\*The word **expanse** is synonymous with **space**, and can apply to either earth’s atmosphere or deep space.

On day two we see the first indication that the world as originally created was different from what we now know. It seems it had a different atmosphere and was universally warmer. Later on we will read about the circumstances that may have changed the environment to its present state.

### **DAY THREE**

At the beginning of Day Three, the water under the expanse still constituted one vast ocean with no visible dry land.

God said, “Let the water under the sky be gathered to one place and let dry ground appear.” It was so. God called the dry ground “land” and the gathered waters he called “seas.” God saw that it was good. God said, “Let the land produce vegetation:

plants yielding seeds according to their kinds, and trees bearing fruit with seed in it according to their kinds." It was so. The land produced vegetation—plants yielding seeds according to their kinds, and trees bearing fruit with seed in it according to their kinds. God saw that it was good. There was evening, and there was morning, a third day. Genesis 1:9–13 NET

Day Three can be divided into two parts. First, we see the dry land appear. Apparently, as the ocean bottom sank, forming huge basins for the water, dry land appeared, rising out of the watery depths. Second, we see the creation of plants and trees.

For thus says the LORD, Who created the heavens, Who is God, Who formed the earth and made it, Who has established it, Who did not create it in vain, Who formed it to be inhabited: "I am the LORD, and there is no other." Isaiah 45:18 NKJV

From the very beginning, God had been preparing the world to be inhabited, and now plant life was created to provide for our physical needs: food to eat, oxygen to breathe and wood for building.

## DAY FOUR

On the first day of creation, God had drawn back the curtain of darkness when He spoke light into existence. On the fourth day, God created the light-givers.<sup>1</sup>

God said, "Let there be lights in the expanse of the sky to separate the day from the night, and let them be signs to indicate seasons and days and years, and let them serve as lights in the expanse of the sky to give light on the earth." It was so.

God made two great lights—the greater light to rule over the day and the lesser light to rule over the night. He made the stars also. God placed the lights in the expanse of the sky to shine on the earth, to preside over the day and the night, and to separate the light from the darkness.

God saw that it was good. There was evening, and there was morning, a fourth day.

Genesis 1:14–19 NET

If it seems strange to us that God would create light before He created the sun, we must remember that it is just as easy for God to create the light as it is for him to create the light-givers.

**“I am the LORD, who made everything,  
who alone stretched out the sky ...”**

Isaiah 44:24 NET

**He made the moon to mark the months,  
and the sun sets according to a regular  
schedule.**

Psalms 104:19 NET

## **ORDER**

The sun, moon and stars reveal that the Master Designer is a God of order. Order is the rule of the universe. It ticks with the precision of an atomic clock and, indeed, it is a kind of timekeeper. We write tidal charts years in advance with the confidence that they will be accurate. We launch satellites, certain that they will rendezvous with distant planets at a precise moment, just as \*programmed. The whole planet relies on the regularity of the sunrise and sunset. Without that set pattern, nothing would survive.

\* NASA's Galileo probe traveled six years before reaching Jupiter precisely as scheduled.

The order observed in the universe is the result of physical laws that govern all things. We can study those laws through various sciences such as astronomy, biology, physics and chemistry.

God established these physical laws to hold the universe together with astonishing precision.

**He is before all things, and in Him all things hold together.** Colossians 1:17 NASB

We take these laws so much for granted that we never consider what the world would be like without them. But just imagine the result if—for a few seconds, at random, every few days—the law of gravity was suspended. Chaos and death would reign. It would be like someone instantly removing all the traffic lights, stop signs and speed limits from our city streets. Those laws are there for a purpose. Laws define uncompromising boundaries as to how something will function.

**Yours is the day, yours also the night; you have established the heavenly lights and the sun. You have fixed all the boundaries of the earth ...** Psalm 74:16–17 ESV

Almost instinctively we treat these natural laws with great respect. For example, we walk very carefully along the edge of a cliff because we know that to defy the law of gravity will have serious repercussions. Whenever you have a law, you also have a consequence. Unless

one's a daredevil, we avoid flirting with those consequences like we avoid the plague.

These laws—this structure and order—are a reflection of God's nature. It's the way he is.

## **DAY FIVE**

On the fifth day, God created the whole kaleidoscope of sea life and birds.

**Then God said, "Let the waters teem with swarms of living creatures, and let birds fly above the earth in the open expanse of the heavens."**

**So God created great sea creatures and every living thing that moves, with which the waters abounded, according to their kind, and every winged bird according to its kind. And God saw that it was good. So the evening and the morning were the fifth day. Genesis 1:20,21,23 NASB/NKJV**

## **DAY SIX**

The sixth day was the pinnacle of God's creative act. God began the day by creating the land animals.

**Then God said, "Let the earth bring forth the living creature according to its kind: cattle and creeping thing and beast of**

the earth, each according to its kind"; and it was so.

And God made the beast of the earth according to its kind, cattle according to its kind, and everything that creeps on the earth according to its kind. And God saw that it was good. Genesis 1:24–25 NKJV

## KINDS

On days three, five and six, it is respectively stated that plants, sea life, birds and animals were to reproduce according to their kind. What does it mean when it says, **according to their kind**? Simply put, it means that cats give birth to cats, dogs to dogs and elephants to elephants. We don't need to worry that, when we plant tulip bulbs, cedar trees will sprout.

Creatures can give rise to different varieties,<sup>2</sup> but still be the same kind. For instance, you can breed various types of dogs and end up with a whole array of canines—poodles to Great Danes—but they are all still dogs. Nothing new has been added, in fact, each of them contains less genetic information than the mongrel stock from which they were bred. On the other hand, because kinds are fixed, a farmer need not

be concerned about the neighbor's milk cow breaking into his pasture and interbreeding with his prize horse. Once again, we can see that God embedded in the system physical laws to maintain order.

### **PERFECT, FLAWLESS, HOLY**

As the universe was created, the Bible says repeatedly that...

**God saw that it was good.** Genesis 1:25 NASB

It's another of those concise statements which is loaded with meaning. When God created, he made things truly good.

**As for God, his way is perfect; the word of the LORD is flawless.** Psalm 18:30 NIV

We humans can never make something flawless. What we produce may be quite acceptable, but it will still have defects. But when God created, he made all things without fault.

The Bible says that God himself is perfect—without blemish. We use words like **holy** and **righteous** to describe aspects of that perfection.

**Holy, holy, holy is the LORD Almighty ...**  
Isaiah 6:3 NLT

**Splendid and majestic is His work, and His righteousness endures forever.**

Psalm 111:3 NASB

**...the holy God will show Himself holy in righteousness.**

Isaiah 5:16 NASB

We will take a deeper look at these words as we progress through the Bible. For now, all we need to know is that the words, **holy** and **righteous**, are used to describe aspects of the LORD's perfect nature.

The absolute holiness of God cannot be over-emphasized. It's a point that must not be missed in the overall story. It's a piece that cannot be left out of the puzzle. Keep this in mind as you continue to read.

Perfection is fundamental to God's character. Because he is perfect, he could only make a perfect creation. Creation has changed, as we will see, but in the beginning it was just right! God said, **it was good**. It was perfect.

## **GOD CARES**

God could have created all plants and animals black and white, but instead he made everything with an endless variety of pigmentation and hues.

Not only did he invent colour, but also created eyes able to see the colour.

God ensured a vast variety of foods that would taste good. He could have created all food to taste like liver! Some may not mind liver, but we all know people who would have been very disappointed. The LORD not only created endless flavours, but he also provided us with taste buds able to enjoy the fine nuances of a seemingly endless variety of cooking styles.

Along with many other things, he gave fragrance to flowers and he created the nose with its ability to appreciate a multitude of scents. Everything could have smelled like rotten eggs, but that is not the way God designed it.

God could have limited His creation of plant life to a few kinds. Indeed, just a few would have provided our needs quite adequately. But no, we see an overwhelming variety. It is evident that the LORD is a God who truly cares. The Bible says that he...

**...richly provides us with everything for our enjoyment.**

1 Timothy 6:17 NIV

Not only did God have all the ability and power to create the boundless variety, but that power was combined with loving concern. He is a God who revealed himself with acts of kindness in the world about us.

God is still impressing mankind with his creation. For centuries, much has been hidden from man's view because of our inability to see and understand it. But then, as we developed electron microscopes, atom-smashers, orbiting telescopes and other technology, we were able to peer into some of those hidden areas. And we have not become bored in our discoveries. Rather, the more we discover, the more fascinated we are, the more impressed we become, and the more we are aware of what we do not know. And yet it has been there all along, created by an awe-inspiring God.

**Great is the LORD, and highly to be praised,  
and His greatness is unsearchable.**

Psalm 145:3 NASB

There was yet one more step before the sun set on Day Six—before God's universe was complete; that step was the creation of man and woman.

### 3 MAN AND WOMAN

For this is what the LORD says—he who created the heavens, he is God; he who fashioned and made the earth, he founded it; he did not create it to be empty, but formed it to be inhabited—he says: “I am the LORD, and there is no other.”

Isaiah 45:18 NIV

#### DAY SIX (CONTINUED)

The sixth day began with the creation of animals. Now the focus of the whole story changes. Up to this time, God had been preparing the earth to be inhabited. The watching angels must have wondered what God had in mind for the grand finale. Would the earth be for them? Whether such angelic conjecture went on or not we don't know, but certainly the way God went about the creation of man held its share of surprises.

Then God said, “Let \*us make man in \*our image, after \*our likeness. And let them have dominion over the fish of the sea and over the birds of the heavens and over the livestock and over all

\* Perhaps you are wondering who God was talking to when he said “Let us make man in our image...” We will cover that later on in the book.

the earth and over every creeping thing that creeps on the earth.” So God created man in his own image, in the image of God he created him; male and female he created them. Genesis 1:26–27 ESV

## THE IMAGE OF GOD

The Bible says the LORD created man in the image of God. Now obviously this doesn't mean we are exact duplicates. None of us are all-knowing, all-powerful, or everywhere present at one time. Nor does the Bible teach that we are **little gods**. Rather, man is like a mirror which reflects the image of the object but is not the object itself. In a sense, when you look at man, you see many things that he holds in common with God.

First of all, God created man with a **mind**. In a sense, God gave us a dab of his intellect. Because we have a mind, we are able to investigate, understand and create, abilities which God possesses. But, although we have an intellect, we are not all-knowing. Indeed, we are born into this world with very little knowledge. All our **knowing** must be learned.

God also created man with **emotions**. The word **emotion** can have negative overtones, but there is a positive side. The ability to **feel** is a very

important aspect of being human. Without **feelings**, your response to others would be like that of a robot—cold and calculated. In contrast to an emotionless robot, the Scripture tells us that the Lord is compassionate; he is tender; he feels anger when he sees injustice. A heartless, unaffected god without the capacity to feel love or show compassion would be truly frightening. God created us with **feelings**, because he has feelings.

God also created man with a **will**. Man's ability to make decisions for himself is often taken for granted. But the capacity to choose and have preferences is what gives mankind endless variety. Some like rice, others prefer potatoes. For breakfast you can have grape, apple or orange juice. The choices are unlimited.

The ability to choose separates us from robots which cannot make independent decisions—they only feed back what is programmed in. Man was given a **will** so he could freely follow God, not as a robot, but as one who has intelligently grasped that God cares for him, and therefore knows that God is looking out for his best interests.

Having an **intellect**, **emotions** and a **will** are all aspects of being created in God's image. There

are other areas we could look at as well, but let's move on in the story. The Bible says ...

**And the LORD God formed man of the dust of the ground, and breathed into his nostrils the breath of life; and man became a living being.**      Genesis 2:7 NKJV

The words **breath of life** are often associated with the **spirit** or non-material side of man. This is an additional reflection of God's image, for God is Spirit. As we stated before, spirits cannot be seen since they have no bodies. However, in man's case, God chose to provide a physical house of flesh and bones for man's spirit to dwell in—a **house** formed from **the dust of the ground**. Once formed, the body would have laid there, complete in every way, but entirely lifeless. It was when God breathed the spirit into man, that the body became alive. Only God can impart life; no person or angel has that ability. Once again, we see that the LORD is completely distinct from all his created beings—He is greater than them all.

## **A COMPANION**

The first and only man God created was named **Adam**, which means **man**. God then created the woman.

...the LORD God said, "It is not good for the man to be alone; I will make him a helper suitable for him." Genesis 2:18 NASB

So the LORD God caused a deep sleep to fall upon the man, and while he slept took one of his ribs and closed up its place with flesh. And the rib that the LORD God had taken from the man he made into a woman and brought her to the man.

And the man and his wife were both naked and were not ashamed. Genesis 2:21–23,25 ESV

These few verses have generated heated arguments. Some have understood that when God made woman, he made her a second-class citizen. This is not so. God took woman out of man's side—to be a companion, not from man's heel—to be his slave. Adam gave his wife the name **Eve**, meaning **lifegiver**.

### **THE PERFECT GARDEN**

God took Adam and Eve and placed them in a special garden which he had created for them. The garden was called **Eden**.

Now the LORD God had planted a garden in the east, in Eden; and there he put the man he had formed. And the LORD God

made all kinds of trees grow out of the ground—trees that were pleasing to the eye and good for food.      Genesis 2:8–9 NIV

All the gardens and zoos of the world could not compare with God’s garden. It was a perfect paradise—with luxuriant foliage, sparkling clear water teeming with a myriad of fish, an incredible variety of animals—with beauty beyond description! The weather was different too. The Bible says...

...the LORD God had not sent rain on the earth ...but streams came up from the earth and watered the whole surface of the ground.      Genesis 2:5–6 NIV

We have very little idea of what Eden was like—but, obviously, God did not create a garden where Adam and Eve were struggling to survive. The garden had an abundance, and everything they could possibly need was adequately provided by God. It was a perfect world in which to live.

### **CREATOR—OWNER**

God didn’t ask Adam and Eve if they would like to live in Eden—he knew what was best for them. God could act without consulting anyone simply because, as Creator, he was also Owner.

(Remember the tribal illustration: He who makes the canoe paddle also owns the paddle.)

**Yours, O LORD, is the greatness and the power and the glory and the majesty and the splendor, for everything in heaven and earth is yours.** 1 Chronicles 29:11 NIV

**The LORD owns the earth and all it contains, the world and all who live in it.**

Psalm 24:1 NET

**Know that the LORD, he is God! It is he who made us, and we are his; we are his people ...**

Psalm 100:3 ESV

Just as the angels belonged to God because he created them, so man belonged to God because the LORD was his Creator. And just as the angels were given the position of being God's servants, so God gave man the responsibility of taking care of the earth.

**Then the LORD God took the man and put him into the garden of Eden to cultivate it and keep it.**

Genesis 2:15 NASB

## **TRIAL PERIOD**

Just because God did not consult with Adam and Eve about placing them in the garden did not mean

that they were without a choice. God had created man with a will—the ability to choose. However, when it comes to some areas of life, such as love, having the capacity to choose is meaningless unless there are alternatives. So God placed before man a very simple option involving two trees.

**In the middle of the garden were the tree of life and the tree of the knowledge of good and evil.**

Genesis 2:9 NIV

The first tree mentioned is the **tree of life**. If man ate of this tree, he would live forever. No problem.

The second tree, however, came with a warning. It was **the tree of the knowledge of good and evil**. Adam and Eve knew about **good**, but **evil** was another matter. They had both been created as perfect beings and were innocent of all wrong. Their experience was limited to God's goodness. The Bible says that if Adam and Eve ate the fruit of this one tree, then not only would they know what was good but also what was evil.

**And the Lord God commanded the man, "You are free to eat from any tree in the garden; but you must not eat from the tree of the knowledge of good and**

**evil, for when you eat of it you will surely die.”** Genesis 2:16–17 NIV

Earlier on we saw that to defy one of God’s physical laws, such as gravity, has repercussions. That principle—a broken law has consequences—applies to any of God’s laws or commands. In this case, God gave man one simple rule: “Don’t eat the fruit from that one tree.” The consequence of breaking that command was made just as plain—man would die. We will discuss death in detail later.

This single tree was what distinguished man as a human and not a robot. Man had a choice—to eat or not to eat, to obey or disobey. Given that choice, Adam and Eve were removed from the realm of androids, programmed to do only what they were told. There is a big difference between a person who is programmed to say “**I will obey you**” and someone who does so of his or her own free will. Having the ability to choose is what gives the word **obey** meaning and depth. Choice makes a relationship genuine.

This one restriction on the first humans was scarcely a hardship. The situation was not as some paintings depict, with Adam and Eve sitting

under two lonely trees having very little fruit from which to choose. They had an abundance.

**...the Lord God made all kinds of trees grow out of the ground—trees that were pleasing to the eye and good for food. Genesis 2:9 NIV**

### **CREATED FOR HIS GLORY**

In giving Adam and Eve a choice, God was not intending them to run off and establish their own agenda. Rather, man was created to reflect God's grandeur—to honour Him.

**"You are worthy, our Lord and God, to receive glory and honor and power, since you created all things, and because of your will they existed and were created!"**

Revelation 4:11 NET

When a son is obedient to his dad, he honours his dad. So it is between man and God. Man was created with a will so that, by the obedient choices he made, he would honour the LORD. Indeed, as Creator of the universe, God deserves all the honour man could give him. Showing such respect would result in tremendous benefits. The Bible says that when man fits into God's plan for him, he finds the greatest happiness, fulfillment and reality. So it was for Adam and Eve.

God blessed them and said to them, "Be fruitful and multiply! Fill the earth and subdue it! Rule over the fish of the sea and the birds of the air and every creature that moves on the ground."

Genesis 1:28 NET

### **MAN—THE FRIEND OF GOD**

God was committed to the well-being of Adam and Eve. He was there to fill every need they had.

Then God said, "I now give you every seed-bearing plant on the face of the entire earth and every tree that has fruit with seed in it. They will be yours for food. And to all the animals of the earth, and to every bird of the air, and to all the creatures that move on the ground—everything that has the breath of life in it—I give every green plant for food." It was so.

Genesis 1:29–30 NET

The Bible speaks of God coming in the cool of the evening to walk with man. Adam and Eve were able to do this, as they were innocent of any sort of evil or wrong—they had a perfection that allowed them to be in God's company. Only perfect<sup>3</sup> people can live in the presence of a perfect God.

What an experience that must have been for this new couple—to stroll in the garden with the Creator of the universe! It's quite conceivable that God spent time explaining in detail how he made things, imparting profound knowledge on intricate flowers, calling down birds concealed high in the treetops, introducing secluded forest animals—pointing out things that had escaped their notice. No doubt he explained the laws that kept everything running so precisely. What an education and what an Educator! No one could have better informed them as to how to care for the garden. The world was a perfect place in which to live.



But God wasn't some sort of crusty, distant super-professor. The Creator was Adam's and Eve's **best** friend. In life, the ideal family relationship is one in which the parents give loving care, and a child in turn gives honour to his parents by loving obedience. This was the relationship Adam and Eve had with God. God lovingly provided for them, and they lovingly obeyed the LORD—honouring him. It was the way God created things to be.

### **CREATION COMPLETED**

**God saw all that he had made—and it was very good! There was evening, and there was morning, the sixth day.** Genesis 1:31 NET

Creation was complete. People often start projects with great gusto and then lose interest over time. But God is different. The LORD always finishes what he sets out to do.

**The LORD's decisions stand forever; his plans abide throughout the ages.**

Psalm 33:11 NET

Creation was done. The Bible tells us that God rested on the seventh day, not because he was tired, but because his creation was complete. It was time to lean back and enjoy!

## WHAT ABOUT EVOLUTION?

The Bible does not mention evolution. The Creation-Evolution debate has generated much controversy, couched as a debate between religion and science. This book is not written to address this topic, but here is a little food for thought.

First of all, it is not entirely safe to designate Evolution as science, and Creation as religion. Since Charles Darwin first published the theory in 1859, classic Darwinism has been largely replaced by Neo-Darwinism and Punctuated Equilibrium—theories that differ greatly from each other. No agreed-upon body of facts exists that explains origins. Many well-studied people argue that Evolution is not pure science, but embraces key aspects of religion. This religion presupposes that there is no God, choosing to put its faith in massive amounts of time and chance. They point out that evolution violates basic laws of physics. On the other hand, to put Creation wholly in the religion category may not be correct

Continued...

either. A significant community of scientists has concluded that this complex universe could only exist if there was a designer (such as God), or a team of designers. Solely using science, they point out that the world has an irreducible complexity<sup>4</sup> at even the smallest level. They demonstrate that such universal complexity and order could only exist if it was planned from the ground up—it could not evolve by random chance. Though some of these scientists do not categorize themselves as Bible believers, many do take the Bible at face value. The latter group is referred to as **Creation Scientists**.

Since the mid-sixties, there has been an explosion of written material on the subject (see Appendix). Much of it is readable for the lay person. I would encourage you to keep reading and studying before you make up your mind.

Some wonder about the feasibility of the Creation account as it relates to the dinosaurs.

From a biblical viewpoint, there is no reason not to believe that God created them along with the rest of the animals. Evidence exists that the dinosaurs lived at the same time as man.

Others wonder about the earth's age—it appears very old, but the Bible does not allow for eons of time. It is true that scientists have developed numerous astronomical, solar, terrestrial, and biological clock models<sup>5</sup> in an effort to determine the age of the universe, but while these models employ reasoned calculations, the computed ages have left scientists scratching their heads. Depending on the clock used, ages range from a few thousand years to billions of years. Darwin theorized 400 million years for biological evolution. Today, a common estimate starts at 4.6 billion years. Whose clock is right?

Is there a reasonable answer that fits the biblical account? Going strictly by the Bible, we know that God created a mature earth.

**Continued...**

On the day of his creation, Adam could have walked among towering trees, marvelled at immense animals, and gazed at stars in the night sky. Perhaps he thought, **“Wow! This place has been around for a long time.”** However, God would have told him that it was, at most, six days old—he had created the whole universe in a fully functioning state. Scientists, in looking back, try to determine the past by what they observe—just like Adam. The Bible, however, records the origins of the earth from the perspective of an eyewitness—God himself.

So, did God mean it when he said he created the universe? Who are we to believe? Whose word is to be trusted?

Centuries ago, a king pondered his place in the world:

**When I consider your heavens, the work of your fingers, the moon and the stars, which you have set in place, what is man that you are**

mindful of him, the son of man that you care for him?

You made him a little lower than the heavenly beings and crowned him with glory and honor.

You made him ruler over the works of your hands; you put everything under his feet: all flocks and herds, and the beasts of the field, the birds of the air, and the fish of the sea, all that swim the paths of the seas. O LORD, our Lord, how majestic is your name in all the earth!

Psalm 8:3–9 NIV

# CHAPTER FOUR

**1** I WILL

**2** HAS GOD SAID?

**3** WHERE ARE YOU?

**4** DEATH

# 1 I WILL

Creation ended with God's stamp of approval. He pronounced it **very good**. All was in order. There was no pain, no disease, no struggle for the survival of the fittest, no discord, and above all, no death. Between God and man there was a unique relationship, a fellowship, a friendship. Eden was the perfect place to live. Everything was very good.

But today we have pain and disease and only the fittest survive. At times we wish that verbal discord was our only problem. Instead, at any given time, the tyranny of war dominates in many parts of the world. Everything runs down, breaks down or wears out. From every corner of the animal kingdom to all mankind, life involves perpetual struggle. The world is **not a very good** place. What happened?

## LUCIFER

It all goes back to the garden of Eden. The Bible says of Lucifer ...

**You were in Eden, the garden of God; Every precious stone was your covering ...**

Ezekiel 28:13 NASB

Lucifer, you will remember, was the most powerful spirit God created. His name means **shining one**.

He belonged to the angelic order called cherubim and was selected by God for special responsibilities that took him into God's presence.

**You were an anointed guardian cherub...you were on the holy mountain of God ...**

Ezekiel 28:14 ESV

Lucifer was perfect. He is described as having incredible beauty and wisdom.

**You were blameless in your ways from the day you were created ...**

Ezekiel 28:15 ESV

**You had the seal of perfection, full of wisdom and perfect in beauty.**

Ezekiel 28:12 NASB

Although Lucifer was the most powerful angel, there is no direct indication that he ruled the other spirit beings.

## **PRIDE**

The time when the next event in history occurred is open to debate. It probably took place sometime soon after creation was completed. There may be a difference of opinion over **when**, but **what** happened is very clear. The Bible says Lucifer became proud. His beauty and power went to

his head, so to speak. With pride came ambition. Five times Lucifer said, "I will." A whole study could be done on these I will's, but, in brief, it's enough to say that Lucifer wanted to stage a celestial revolt.

**"O shining one, son of the dawn... You said in your heart,**

**"I will ascend to heaven;**

**I will raise my throne above the stars  
[or angels] of God;**

**I will sit enthroned on the mount of  
assembly, on the utmost heights of  
the sacred mountain.**

**I will ascend above the tops of the  
clouds;**

**I will make myself like  
the Most High."**

Isaiah 14:12 YLT, 13-14 NIV

\*The Most High  
is one of God's  
names.

Not only did Lucifer want to take over Heaven, but he was resolved to be like the Most High. Lucifer was determined to lead a coup d'état to replace God with HIMSELF. Then HE would be the leader of all the angels and the universe would be HIS to rule. Lucifer's heart was bursting with prideful ambition.

The only loophole in Lucifer's plan was that God knew all about it. God is **all-knowing** and Lucifer's thoughts did not escape him. The Bible says that God detests pride.

**These six things the LORD hates, yes, seven are an abomination to Him: a proud look ...**

Proverbs 6:16–17 NKJV

Lucifer was deliberately going contrary to God's plan for him. We must remember that God did not create angels as robots. They were created with a will. Their choice to serve was an expression of willing submission to the sovereign God. But Lucifer became dissatisfied with being an angel. He had something bigger and better in mind. He became proud and chose to rebel. Lucifer despised both his design and his Designer. The dictionary says that to despise means: **to regard with contempt; to look down upon; to dislike intensely; loathe.** God called Lucifer's attitude sin.

## **JUDGMENT**

Because God is perfect, he could not tolerate Lucifer's sin as if it did not matter. **Perfection, by its very nature, demands the absence of**

imperfection. We will see this truth repeatedly as we progress through the Bible.

God who is right (**righteous**), can have no part with wrong.

God's **holiness** leaves no room for sin.

God who is **sinless**, cannot tolerate sin in his presence.

God's perfection is a reality as certain as any physical law that governs the universe. His response to Lucifer's sin was immediate. He expelled him from his position in Heaven .

**...you sinned. So I drove you in disgrace from the mount of God, and I expelled you, O guardian cherub...Your heart became proud on account of your beauty, and you corrupted your wisdom because of your splendor. So I threw you to the earth...**

Ezekiel 28:16-17 NIV

Lucifer did not go without a battle. He still was a very strong being and, on top of that, many other angels followed him. The Bible gives some precise details of what happened. To help you understand the account, I have tied the context together. As you read, you will see that any

confusion about whom this may be speaking of, is removed in the latter parts of the text.

Then another sign appeared in heaven: an enormous **red dragon**... **His tail** swept a third of the stars out of the sky and flung them to the earth ...

And there was war in heaven. Michael and his angels fought against the **dragon**, and the **dragon** and his angels fought back. But he was not strong enough, and they lost their place in heaven.

The great **dragon** was hurled down—that ancient serpent **called the devil, or Satan**, who leads the whole world astray. He was hurled to the earth, and his angels with him.<sup>1</sup>

Revelation 12:3–4, 7–9 NIV

## **DEVIL, SATAN, DEMONS**

The text indicates that one-third of the angels followed Lucifer in his rebellion. Lucifer became known as the **Devil** or **Satan**. Just as God's names describe his attributes, so Lucifer's names reveal his character. Satan means **adversary** or **enemy**; Devil means **false accuser** or **slanderer**. The rebellious angels that followed Satan were now called **demons** or **evil spirits**.

## LAKE OF FIRE

When God cast the Devil and his demons from Heaven, it was only the first phase in judging these rebellious spirits. The Bible says that God has a place of final punishment, an...

**...eternal fire prepared for the devil and his angels.**

Matthew 25:41 ESV

This location is commonly referred to as **the Lake of Fire**. Often cartoons are drawn depicting Satan and his demons standing waist-deep in flames, conniving and plotting mischief. However, the Bible tells us that Satan is not yet there. He was cast out of Heaven, but not into the Lake of Fire. Later, after many events occur involving him and his demons, Satan will be forever confined to this place of punishment. Referring to this future time, the Bible says...

**The devil, who deceived them, was cast into the lake of fire...And they will be tormented day and night forever and ever.**

Revelation 20:10 NKJV

## WAR

Although God had expelled Satan and his demons from Heaven, they still retained their immense power and intellect. It would be all-out war. Satan

would fight dirty. He would be against everything good, everything that God planned to do. His prey? God's pinnacle of creation—mankind.

## **2 HAS GOD SAID ... ?**

When God created man, he didn't just place him on earth and walk away. The Bible says that God visited Adam and Eve in the garden and, in the offhand way it's mentioned, one can assume that this was a regular event. On a number of occasions, the Scripture speaks of God taking on the form of a human to show himself to man. This was obviously one of those times. Adam and Eve were on intimate terms with their Creator-Owner, and God took care of their every need.

### **THE DECEIVER**

But then Satan slinked into the garden. He did not arrive with a blast of trumpets, announcing who he was and what he was about. Satan is much too subtle for that. The Bible tells us that Satan is the great deceiver—the devil. He is incapable of telling uncorrupted truth.

**... the devil ... was a murderer from the beginning, not holding to the truth, for**

**there is no truth in him. When he lies, he speaks his native language, for he is a liar and the father of lies.**

John 8:44 NIV

The word **lie** in the original Greek text is **pseudos**—a conscious and intentional falsehood. We use the word ourselves. It implies **imitation**.

Several years ago, I was reading an article on Satan in a popular news magazine. He was illustrated as having a red body with horns on his head, a pointed tail and carrying a pitchfork. The overall rendering was hideous. According to the Bible, that picture is deceptive to the extreme. The Bible says that...

**...Satan disguises himself as an angel of light.**

2 Corinthians 11:14 NASB

He comes in all his eye-catching splendour, mimicking God as closely as he can. A better picture of the Devil might have been a good-looking young man in a black suit with a clerical collar. Satan loves religion. He closely imitates the truth, but he cannot be trusted, because by his very nature he is an impostor—a counterfeit, a teller of deliberate falsehoods.

I am sure Satan was quite happy with the red suit, pitchfork-in-hand drawing. It's easier to deceive people if they're looking in the wrong direction for the wrong thing. He would also have been pleased with other statements in the magazine—"theologians have all but scratched \*Old Scratch." The implication was that no one believes in that guy anymore! What better way to deceive than for the Devil to have theologians telling people that he is a myth!

\*This is an idiom used for the Devil with no biblical connections.

## DECEPTION

So Satan arrived in the garden of Eden with all the subtlety he could muster. No trumpets, no fanfare. He came in the embodiment of a snake, a reptile that is often identified with the Devil. The Bible records several incidents of evil spirits living inside both humans and animals, speaking through them or causing them to act abnormally. On this occasion Satan spoke through the reptile. He addressed Eve.

Now the serpent was more crafty than any of the wild animals the LORD God had made. He said to the woman, "Did God

really say, ‘You must not eat from any tree in the garden?’”

Genesis 3:1 NIV

The fact that a snake could speak did not seem to disturb Eve. No doubt every day she discovered a new and fascinating part of God’s creation. Perhaps she thought this was just another one of those new creatures. We don’t really know.

## **DOUBT**

Whatever the case, it is interesting that Satan approached Eve with a question about God. He planted something in her mind that she had never considered—the **creature can question the Creator**. The question came in a slightly condescending tone, “Did God say...I mean, **really**—did God really say that?”

With his **you’ve-got-to-be-kidding** approach, Satan implied that man was rather simple-minded or naive to accept the LORD’s word at face value.

“Perhaps God is holding back something good from you. I mean, how do you know? Maybe the LORD isn’t as good and loving as he makes himself out to be.”

There was a hint that God wasn't being completely honest, not entirely forthright. Satan passed himself off as being concerned for man, looking out for man's best interests. The Devil counterfeited God's goodness. His twisted logic questioned God's Word and in questioning, he planted doubt.

In addition, Satan grossly overstated God's prohibition. God had **not** forbidden eating from **every** tree. He had only mentioned one tree: the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. But the overstatement produced the desired reaction.

**The woman said to the serpent, "We may eat fruit from the trees in the garden, but God did say, 'You must not eat fruit from the tree that is in the middle of the garden, and you must not touch it, or you will die.'"**

Genesis 3:2-3 NIV

Eve tried to defend God, even though the LORD does not need to be defended. In her zeal she added to God's command. God had told man that he should not **eat** of the tree, but he had never said they could not **touch** it. When you **add** to God's Word you always **take away** something from it. Eve made God out to be more demanding than he really was, and in the process marred God's

character. Getting people to add or subtract from the Bible is the sort of math Satan specializes in. The Devil loves the resulting confusion. The addition was **oh-so-little**, but it was all that Satan needed. A crack had appeared in the dike.

## **DENIAL**

**“You will not surely die,” the serpent said to the woman. “For God knows that when you eat of it your eyes will be opened, and you will be like God, knowing good and evil.”**

Genesis 3:4–5 NIV

Not content with questioning God’s word, Satan outright denied it. He blatantly called God a liar. He suggested that the reason the tree was forbidden was because God feared Adam and Eve would learn too much. Cleverly, Satan mixed truth with error. It was true that their eyes would be opened and they would know good and evil, but it was false to imply that they would be like God with all his attributes. It was also erroneous to state that they would not die. Satan was deliberately and knowingly lying. Although he knew by experience the consequence of going against God’s word, he cruelly enticed man to partake of his own destruction.

## DISOBEDIENCE

When the woman saw that the fruit of the tree was good for food and pleasing to the eye, and also desirable for gaining wisdom, she took some and ate it. She also gave some to her husband, who was with her, and he ate it.      Genesis 3:6 NIV

Satan had succeeded. You can almost hear his howl of laughter echoing through the garden. As usual, Satan did not hang around to help pick up the pieces. He never does. The Bible says...

**...the devil, prowls around like a roaring lion, seeking someone to devour.**

1 Peter 5:8 NASB

The Devil leaves the bones—picked clean. He may come across as a great provider—providing pleasure, fun, a good time—but it's only temporary and often very empty. In reality, Satan never gives. If he imparts anything, it's only gut-wrenching heartache. He's a malicious playmate, a cruel companion.

Over the years some have blamed the woman for this outright disobedience against God's command. However throughout Eve's entire conversation with Satan, it seems that her husband was with her. Adam could have prevented his wife from eating

the fruit, and certainly did not have to eat the fruit himself. But they **both** ate.

What Adam and Eve did is similar to children playing in the street against their mother's instructions. The disobedient youngsters think they know **better than mom** what is safe and fun. They are showing that they don't entirely trust their mother's knowledge of safety. They are disregarding her authority. In the same way, Adam and Eve sinned when they felt they knew **better than God** what was good for them. Their choice made a statement. They didn't quite trust their Creator—they weren't sure God was telling the truth.

Adam and Eve had all the reasons in the world to tell the Devil that HE was the liar, but they chose to believe Satan instead of God. They disobeyed God's clear instructions, and joined the Devil's rebellious ranks. The Bible says:



**ENEMY**

**Anyone who chooses to be a friend of the \*world becomes an enemy of God.**

James 4:4 NIV

\* The world as influenced and controlled by Satan.

That's the natural outcome of choosing sides. Adam and Eve had abandoned their friendship with

God and joined Satan. They had rejected a pure, perfect world to experiment with a forbidden one.

### **A BROKEN FRIENDSHIP**

But such a choice has ramifications. As we saw before, **breaking a law has consequences**. The Scripture teaches us that sin's effects are very costly. Adam and Eve's defiant choice to follow Satan's lies opened a vast gulf in the relationship between God and man. A perfect God could not allow mixed loyalties, half friendships or partial betrayals. Unless there was trust, no relationship could exist. The friendship was over.



Therefore God gave them...the sinful desires of their hearts... They exchanged the truth of God for a lie, and worshiped

and served created things [Satan] rather than the Creator—who is forever praised.<sup>2</sup>

Romans 1:24–25 NIV

## FIG LEAVES

Then the eyes of both of them were opened, and they knew that they were naked ...

Genesis 3:7 NKJV

Adam and Eve immediately sensed that something was wrong. They had feelings they had never experienced before—very uncomfortable ones—called guilt and shame. They were devastated. The Bible says they were afraid and for the first time they realized they were naked. Casting their eyes around for a solution...

...they sewed fig leaves together and made themselves coverings.

Genesis 3:7 NKJV



Perhaps they thought that if they fixed up their outward appearance, God would never notice that things had changed on the inside. They would just gloss things over and pretend that everything was okay. It was man's first attempt to make things right in a world gone wrong.

There was only one problem with the fig leaf solution: it didn't work. The condemnation remained. Having a good outward appearance did not remedy the inner reality. Perfection was gone. Feelings of guilt churned within. The gulf was still there.

And they heard the sound of the LORD God walking in the garden in the cool of the day, and Adam and his wife hid themselves from the presence of the LORD God among the trees of the garden.

Genesis 3:8 NKJV



SEPARATED

Only guilty people hide—one doesn't hide from a friend. A barrier now existed between God and man. The friendship was over.

## Is God Picky?

Some may say, "But the sin was over such a little thing—just a bite of fruit!" True. God had not put a big stumbling block in man's path. Indeed, it was no stumbling block at all. There were dozens of trees from which Adam and Eve could have freely eaten. This was the smallest of possible tests, but it defined man as being human—as having a free will.

Suppose a young lady met a fellow who seemed to be the nicest person on earth. He showed real love for her—going out of his way to do special things for her, comforting her when she hurt, sharing in her humor, telling her he loved her. Then she found out he had no choice—that he was programmed to be loving ... well, it would be a terrible disappointment. It would all seem so artificial, so meaningless, so empty. And it would be.

Man was given a choice, a simple one, which was very easy to keep. But this one

Continued...

choice made a huge difference. Having this choice:

**to eat or not to eat**

**to obey or disobey**

**to love or not to love**

...defined man as human.

Man was not a robot. Man was able to love by his own free choice. Adam and Eve's love for each other was real, not artificial. And their initial obedience and love for God was genuine as well.

Although the test itself may have seemed a small concern, it is a serious thing to disobey the Lord in even the smallest of matters. The Bible says that God is perfect—he is holy and righteous—he cannot tolerate even the least of sins. It states explicitly that to disobey is wrong. It is sin. 1 Samuel 15:23

### 3 WHERE ARE YOU?

Satan had deceived Adam and Eve into thinking that they could be equal with God. That was exactly what the Devil had craved for himself. But God hadn't created man to be governed by his own instincts or ideas. The important thing was to do what God said, and HE had said ...

**"...you must not eat from the tree...for when you eat from it you will surely die."**

Genesis 2:17 NET

They had eaten, and in an instant everything had changed. It happened just as God said. His word had not altered. It never does.

**And they heard the sound of the LORD God walking in the garden in the cool of the day, and Adam and his wife hid themselves from the presence of the LORD God among the trees of the garden.** Genesis 3:8 NKJV

You can imagine the pounding hearts, the sweaty palms, the dry mouths as they crouched out of sight in the garden, listening to YAHWEH approach. What would their Creator-Owner say?

What would an almighty, all-powerful God do with two disobedient humans?

**Then the LORD God called to Adam and said to him, "Where are you?"** Genesis 3:9 NKJV

What an immense relief! Apparently God didn't know anything had happened. He didn't even know where they were! Like two children who had just raided the cookie jar, they poked their heads out. Their faces were masked with innocence. Ahh, are you looking for us? Adam spoke:

**"I heard the sound of You in the garden, and I was afraid because I was naked; so I hid myself."** Genesis 3:10 NASB

He spoke, but he erred. Like a boy playing hooky from school and then writing his own absentee note signed, "my mom," Adam overlooked the fact that he had never felt fear before, and that his nakedness had never bothered him. Adam had cookie crumbs on his face. God said ...

**"Who told you that you were naked? Did you eat from the tree that I commanded you not to eat from?"** Genesis 3:11 NET

### **QUESTIONS, QUESTIONS!**

Why was God asking all these questions? Did not an all-knowing God know **where** Adam and Eve were hiding? And would not this same God know

why they were feeling naked? Was the LORD really so limited that he had to ask the culprits whether they had eaten of the forbidden fruit? The truth of the matter was that God knew **exactly** what had occurred—but he was asking questions to help Adam and Eve sort out in **their** minds precisely what had happened. They had disobeyed the LORD! **They had trusted Satan instead of God.**

As we continue through the Bible we will see that God often questions man to help him see things clearly.

### **GOD'S FAULT**

The LORD's questions also gave Adam and Eve an opportunity to **come clean** on their own.

**The man said, "The woman you put here with me—she gave me some fruit from the tree, and I ate it."**      Genesis 3:12 NIV

Uh-oh! Adam admitted to eating the fruit—sort of—but only because **that woman** God created gave him the fruit. Adam was a victim!

**"It was all God's fault."**

**"If God hadn't created the woman ... then the woman wouldn't have given me the fruit, and then I wouldn't have eaten."** Well, you can see it very clearly. It was God's fault after all!

So the LORD God said to the woman, "What is this you have done?" And the woman replied, "The serpent tricked me, and I ate." Genesis 3:13 NET

Aha! So now the truth was out. Neither of them were to blame. It was the snake's fault. Eve was a victim too. And, of course, if God hadn't created snakes... then she wouldn't have sinned either. God had messed up!

### **PERSONAL CHOICE**

God never quizzed the snake. Some comic has said the snake had no leg to stand on anyway. The truth of the matter was that both Adam and Eve had chosen to sin of their own accord. God had given them an opportunity to own up, and they had blown it—they had refused to admit their guilt.

Perhaps if Adam and Eve had been truly apologetic, God would have restored the friendship somehow—His way—right then and there. We don't know. What we do know is that God shows love far beyond anything we can imagine.

**WHAT THEY SAID.**

**Adam:** The man said, "The woman you put here with me—she gave me some fruit from the tree, and I ate it."

**Eve:** The woman said, "The serpent deceived me, and I ate."

**Victim mentality, Blames others**

**WHAT THEY SHOULD HAVE SAID.**

**Adam:** "God I have failed you miserably. I have disobeyed your clear directions to not eat of the fruit. I have sinned. Please forgive me."

**Eve:** "Lord God, I too have sinned by disobeying your command. I want to see our relationship restored to what it was. Please tell me how."

**Responsible for own actions  
Seeks ways to restoration**

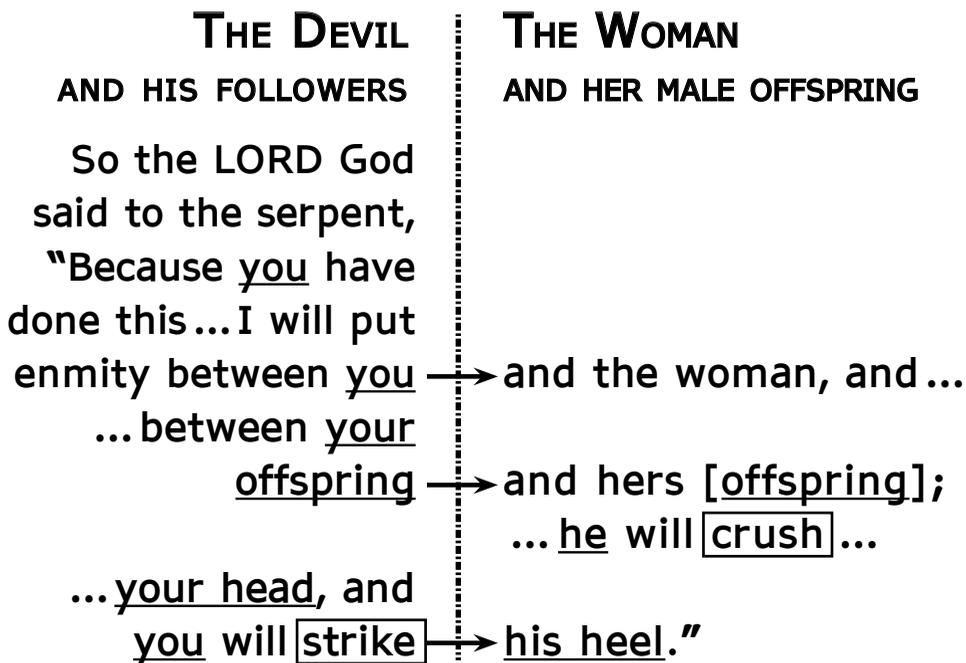
## A PROMISE

This initial sin of man had severe consequences on the rest of mankind. As we will see, Adam and Eve were acting on behalf of the whole human race. Their sin brought a curse, but God in his love also gave a promise.

So the LORD God said to the serpent,  
 “Because you have done this...I will put  
 enmity between you and the woman, and  
 between your offspring and hers; he will  
 crush your head, and you will strike his heel.”

Genesis 3:14–15 NIV

These sentences deserve a closer examination. The promise had two facets:



The LORD was saying that he would one day rescue mankind from Satan. The LORD promised that a man would come, born of the woman, who would crush the Devil's head—a fatal wound. True, Satan would one day hurt this man, but only with a strike at the heel—a temporary injury from which he would recover.

This was the first of many promises to come about the future offspring of Eve. This male child would be known as THE ANOINTED ONE, because of the special task given to him by God. The task God had in mind for this CHOSEN ONE was to **deliver** or **save** mankind from the consequences of sin and the power of Satan. For this reason, he would also be known as THE PROMISED DELIVERER. This must have been very good news to Adam and Eve.

This promise of a DELIVERER added another name to the list of terms that reveal God's character. He would be known as **the one who saves** or THE SAVIOUR.

An  
offspring  
of EVE



The  
Promised  
Deliverer

**...there is no other God besides Me, A righteous God and a Savior; There is none**

except Me. "Turn to Me and be saved, all the ends of the earth; For I am God, and there is no other." Isaiah 45:21–22 NASB

## A CURSE

As we saw before, sin has its consequences. It always does. Just as defying the law of gravity brings broken bones, so violating God's word has ramifications. God could not condone the sin of Adam and Eve. He could not say, "Oh, forget it," or, "You couldn't help it. We'll pretend it never happened," or, "It was just ONE little sin." No. The damage was done. Adam and Eve were guilty. One sin brought judgment. One sin brought fear and shame. One sin brought more sin. The earth and everything in it suffered from the curse. The animals, the sea, the bird life, even the very ground was affected. No longer was creation perfect. As a result of the curse, the Bible says ...

...the whole creation groans and labors...

Romans 8:22 NKJV

Man would enter the world through the pain of childbirth and leave it by the agonies of death. While on this planet, life would be full of injustice, sweat and misery. God told Adam ...

**“By the sweat of your brow you will eat food until you return to the ground, for out of it you were taken; for you are dust, and to dust you will return.”**

Genesis 3:19 NET

The thorns and thistles of life, whether real or symbolic, would make man’s existence one of pain and struggling to survive. Man had set off a chain reaction of sorrow. But the most bitter consequence of man’s sin was the very thing that God had warned them about. It was death.

## **4 DEATH**

**And the LORD God commanded the man, “You are free to eat from any tree in the garden; but you must not eat from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, for when you eat of it you will surely die.”**

Genesis 2:16–17 NIV

In a very real sense, when Adam and Eve chose to defy God’s warning, they tested God to see if he would keep his word. Did God really mean what he said? Would man die? Or was God just talking, uttering empty threats—bombast without teeth? The Scripture’s reply is quite emphatic:

...it is easier for heaven and earth to pass away than for one stroke of a letter of the Law [or God's Word] to fail.

Luke 16:17 NASB

We don't like talking about death. It's a taboo subject. I have travelled all over the world visiting some of the most remote people groups on the planet and I have never found a society that enjoyed death. I have stood at many open graves, some in churchyards, some in jungles, but they all shared one common denominator—grief. It is burnt into the human psyche with the branding iron of reality that death means one thing—separation. The loved one has slipped out of our presence to never return. The sense of loss and separation we feel at that time actually brings us very close to the meaning Scripture gives the word. In the Bible, death implies some sort of **separation**. It does not mean annihilation or non-existence—the spirit part of man continues to live after physical death.

It is also helpful to understand that death cannot be disassociated from its origin—it came about because of sin. The Bible speaks of it as a reward or payment for wrongdoing. Just as a person is paid wages for working, so...

...the wages of sin is death...

Romans 6:23 NASB

The Scripture speaks about **death** in a number of different ways. We will look at three.



DEAD

### 1. DEATH OF THE BODY

(SEPARATION OF MAN'S SPIRIT FROM HIS BODY)

Physical death is not hard for us to grasp. We are only too well acquainted with it. But we need to understand something more as it relates to Adam and Eve.

When you cut a leafy branch off a tree, the leaves don't instantly wither and look dead. In the same way, when God told Adam "for when you eat of it you will surely die," God did not mean that Adam would drop dead as soon as he ate the fruit. Rather, God meant that Adam would be cut off from his source of life, and then, just like a branch, his body would eventually wear out and stop functioning. The body would ...

...die and return to dust. Psalm 104:29 NET

Though the body dies, the Bible says the spirit goes on living—it will continue to exist forever.



SEPARATED

## 2. DEATH TO A RELATIONSHIP

(SEPARATION OF MAN'S SPIRIT FROM GOD)

We have already seen that Adam and Eve's disobedience ended their close friendship with the LORD. But the consequences went even further. The children of Adam and Eve, and their children's children—indeed all mankind to this day—have been born into this world separated from God.

The relationship between God and man is so thoroughly finished, so profound, so complete, that even though we live physically, God views all mankind as being...

**...dead in your transgressions and sins.**

Ephesians 2:1 NET

There's a dynamic here that we must not miss. Let me illustrate.

I have spent a significant portion of my life living in tropical countries. For a time, my wife and I lived in a house set on low stilts. On one occasion, a very large rat chose to crawl into the narrow space under our house and die. Unfortunately, the vermin expired right under our little bedroom. Initially, we thought we had no option but to let the body decay into oblivion. The carcass rotting in the hot, humid climate

sent a stupefying odor into our bedroom, giving new meaning to the word **foul**. The rat smelled so rank that my wife and I found it impossible to sleep. We were forced to retreat to another part of the house. Sleeping in close proximity to that evil-smelling carcass was not normal or natural to us. We fled.

The next morning, my son, Andrew, volunteered to remedy the situation. He located a long stick, and reaching deep into the crawl space under the house, slowly worked the dead rat towards the opening. As it got close, Andrew pulled back in revulsion, grimaced and said, "Dad! The beast is full of maggots." Oh gag! Andrew took a plastic bag and, sticking it over his hand, reached far under the house. Grabbing the miserable creature by its tail, he pulled the worm-infested cadaver out into the open. Holding the offending remains far from his body, he ran towards the jungle that bordered our property and, with a mighty swing, flung the rat far from his presence.

If that rat had been alive and able to sense Andrew's emotions, he would have been aware that Andrew was highly displeased with him—angry. And if that rat could have read Andrew's thoughts as he was flung far into the woods, he would have heard him say, "Get out of here!" And if the rat

could have spoken and said, "For how long?" Andrew would have answered, "Forever!"

The dead rat actually illustrates three different ways God feels about sin. First, he is angry. This is not a wrath full of malice or meanness. God is not a hothead who has lost his temper. Rather, it is a reflection of God's pure, perfect character. It might best be understood as a type of **righteous indignation**. Just as we were perturbed with the rotten rat, so the LORD is angry about sin. **It grieves him.**

God created the world to be a delightful place to live, but sin has changed much of it into hard work. Every time we do an unpleasant job, it's a reminder that sin has ravaged God's creation. Pain and suffering, sorrow and grief, filth and stench, bullies and drunkenness, earthquakes and war—all were not part of God's original creation. Sin has been like a drop of cyanide on a lavish, scrumptious meal—it didn't take much but it ruined it all. Sin has been like a bee sting to the face—it's a small thing, but it affects your whole being. **Sin went beyond breaking the law; it was an affront to God's entire character.** It's for this reason that the Bible says ...

**... God's wrath comes on those who are disobedient.**  
Ephesians 5:6 NIV

Adam and Eve had disobeyed God when they ignored the LORD's clear instructions. Disobedience against God is a hallmark of sin. The Bible says ...

**For the wrath of God is revealed from heaven against all ungodliness and unrighteousness of men ...**  
Romans 1:18 NKJV

We label sin as fun or evil, harmless or sadistic, big or small. The Bible does recognize certain differences when it comes to consequences, but with God, all sin is a stench in his holy nostrils. It's cyanide in his feast.

Secondly, just as the rat drove my wife and me to sleep in another room, and just as Andrew flung that revolting carcass out of his presence, so God has removed himself from sinful man. The Scripture says ...

**... your iniquities have separated you from your God; And your sins have hidden His face from you ...**  
Isaiah 59:2 NKJV

Sometimes I've heard folks say that God seems distant, far away. Well, the Bible does say that man is **estranged** from his Creator.



**...you were alienated from God...**

Colossians 1:21 NIV

Holiness demands the absence of sin. A perfect God cannot allow sin in his presence, for ...

**[His] eyes are too pure to look on evil; [he] cannot tolerate wrong.** Habakkuk 1:13 NIV

This brings us to the third point that the dead rat illustrates. Just how long does God feel we should be separated from him? The answer is pretty clear. **Forever!** Sin has infinite and eternal ramifications. Just like we would not want to live with the rotten rat next week, or at any time, God will never allow sin to dwell in his presence.

This is difficult news but keep reading. Good news is coming. For now, though, it is important to understand that when the Bible speaks of man's relationship with God as being finished, it speaks with intensity. It is truly cut off—it's dead.

### **3. Death to a Future Joy—The Second Death**

(Separation of man's spirit from God forever)

When a young couple is engaged, they look forward with delight and anticipation to all the future joys of marriage. They browse house designs, discuss where to live and what they will do together. But

if the engagement goes sour and the relationship ends, all their prospective plans die too.

The Bible tells us that God is preparing a wonderful home for man after death. It's called Heaven. Heaven is an incredible place, designed by God for man's future joy. Eternal life is part of the plan. Just being free of sin, suffering and death will be wonderful.

But just as there is **eternal life**, so there is eternal death. When the Bible uses the word **death**, by implication it sometimes refers to the **death of God's original plan** for mankind. This death is also called the **second death**, probably because it occurs after physical death. This **second death** is reserved for those people who will not be in Heaven. Instead, the Bible says they will go to the **Lake of Fire**, an appalling place that God created specifically for punishing Satan and his demons.



ETERNAL  
JUDGMENT

**Then I saw a great white throne and him who was seated on it...And I saw the dead, great and small, standing before the throne, and books were opened. Then another book was opened, which is the book of life. And the dead were judged ...**

**This is the second death, the lake of fire. And if anyone's name was not found written in the book of life, he was thrown into the lake of fire.** Revelation 20:11–12, 14–15 ESV

The Bible speaks of being <sup>a</sup>thrown alive into the fiery lake of burning sulfur, and of being <sup>b</sup>tormented day and night forever and ever. It will be a place of <sup>c</sup>sorrow, devoid of happiness. The Scriptures talk of <sup>d</sup>worms (literally maggots), of an intense <sup>e</sup>darkness, of people weeping and gnashing their teeth in extreme anguish, of being parched with <sup>f</sup>thirst, and of remembering this life and of wishing for no one to join them. It's a place of lonely suffering, not some buddy-buddy celebration of debauchery.

- a Rev. 19:20  
Though the physical body dies the spirit continues to live.
- b Rev. 20:10
- c Psalms 116:3
- d Mark 9:48
- e Matthew 8:12;  
22:13; 25:30
- f Luke 16:24

**But cowards who turn away from me, and unbelievers, and the corrupt, and murderers, and the immoral, and those who practice witchcraft, and idol worshipers, and all liars—their doom is in the lake that burns with fire and sulfur. This is the second death.** Revelation 21:8 NLT

Later in the book, we will learn more about man's destiny.

## A SIN NATURE

Sin and death now reigned in Adam's bloodline, seemingly passed on through the generations by the father. Like begets like. Apples reproduce apples, cats reproduce cats, sinful man reproduces sinful man.

**Therefore, just as sin came into the world through one man, and death through sin, and so death spread to all men because all sinned.**

Romans 5:12 ESV

Because of Adam's sin, all his offspring would inherit his sin nature. And because he died, all his offspring would die.<sup>3</sup>

We often connect a list of crimes with the word **sinner**, but the Bible says it is more than that. Man has a **sin nature**, often called **Adam's nature**. This nature is a **condition** or **state of being**. For example, the doctor has told a friend of mine that he



Adam by nature had become a sinner—Adam would die.



All of Adam's descendants would have the sin nature. All would die.

has a heart condition. That **condition** reveals itself with **symptoms**. When he climbs the stairs, he huffs and puffs and his face changes color. On occasion, he pops a nitroglycerin tablet under his tongue. In the same sense, we can say that every human has a **condition**, called the sin nature. The **symptoms** of that **condition** are acts of sin.

### **AN HONEST GOD**

If all this talk of sin and death seems morbid, it should be a reminder to us that God doesn't make unpleasant subjects pretty. He tells it like it is. Sin and death are two things all humans have in common, and we need to know what the Bible says about them. To be told the truth is what one would expect from a perfect God.

### **A REVIEW—THE BRIDGE OF FRIENDSHIP**

In the beginning, God and man were close friends, living in harmony in a perfect world. Only perfect people can live with a perfect God.

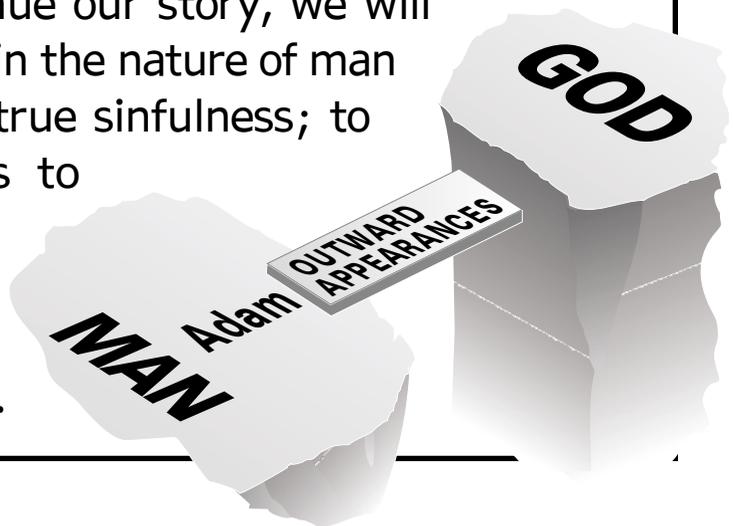


The relational bridge was broken when Adam and Eve believed Satan's word instead of the Lord's, and disobeyed God's clear instructions. The whole world changed. It became a place of guilt, sorrow and death.



After Adam and Eve sinned, they adjusted their outward appearance in an effort to look better than they really were. They tried to cover their sin. It didn't work. The gulf remained.

As we continue our story, we will see that it is in the nature of man to deny his true sinfulness; to devise ways to reach God; to seek a way back to a perfect world.



### WHAT HAVE GENETICISTS FOUND?

**“It makes us realize that all human beings, despite differences in external appearances, are really members of a single entity that’s had a very recent origin in one place. There is a kind of biological brotherhood that’s much more profound than we ever realized.”** So said the late Stephen Jay Gould, the Harvard paleontologist and essayist in a NEWSWEEK 1988 cover article entitled, **“The Search for Adam and Eve.”**<sup>4</sup>

According to the article, scientists “... trained in molecular biology ... looked at an international assortment of genes and picked up a trail of DNA that led them to a single woman from whom we all descended.” ... “There weren’t even telltale distinctions between races.”

The Bible says:

**Adam named his wife Eve, because she would become the mother of all the living.**

Genesis 3:20 NIV

Then in 1995, TIME<sup>5</sup> had a brief article saying there was scientific evidence that “...there was an ancestral ‘Adam,’ whose genetic material on the chromosome is common to every man now on earth.”

The Bible says:

**From one man he made every nation  
of men that they should inhabit the  
whole earth ...**

Acts 17:26 NIV

These studies of human DNA conclude that we all have one man and one woman in our ancestry. Some scientists agree; others disagree. Even those who agree are quick to point out that this may not be the biblical Adam and Eve. Whatever the case, it’s interesting to note that the findings are consistent with the Bible. This and other discoveries of modern molecular biology confirm what the Scripture has indicated for millennia, that we are all very closely related.

# CHAPTER FIVE

**1** A PARADOX

**2** ATONEMENT

**3** TWO BY TWO

**4** BABEL

# 1 A PARADOX

In these first few chapters we have learned a little of what God is like. As we progress, we will learn more, but we need to stop and compare a couple of God's characteristics with man's new predicament.

It is helpful to understand that just as God established physical laws to govern the universe, so he established spiritual laws that govern the relationship between God and man. And just as a knowledge of physics and chemistry helps us make sense of the world around us, so a knowledge of these spiritual laws helps us make sense of life and death. These spiritual laws are not difficult to understand. First, let's look at man's situation.

## MAN'S PROBLEM

Centuries ago in the Middle East, when one incurred a debt, an official certificate was drafted so that the parties involved would not forget the amount payable. Those who were unable to pay their debts were considered criminals under the full penalty of the law. In the same way, the Bible teaches that on the moral ledger, our sin incurs a



DEBTOR

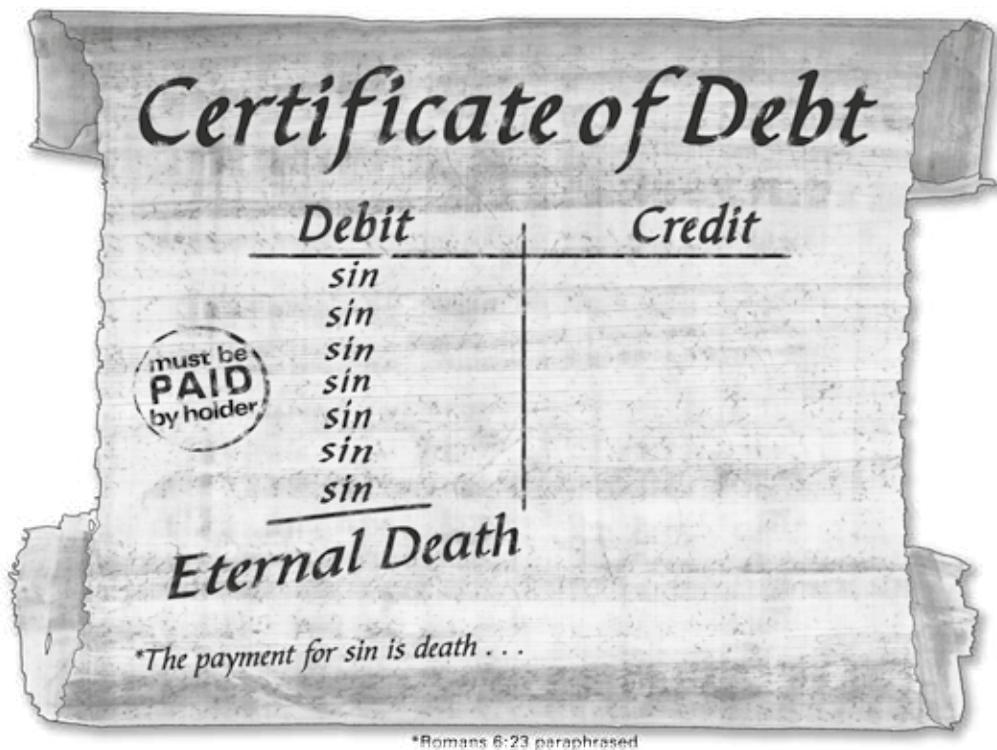
debt. There's a price to be paid. We are faced with ...

...the law of sin and death. Romans 8:2 ESV

That law says:

**The soul who sins shall die.**

Ezekiel 18:20 NKJV



The question then remains: Are we able to pay that debt? The answer is a qualified yes. However, since death exists for eternity, it's hard to call it paid—for the transaction is never completed. To pay it, we must bear the full

consequences of death in all its three-part meaning. Frankly, most thinking people find themselves very reluctant to pay. The problem is this—we must pay. It’s our debt. Mankind is in a dilemma.

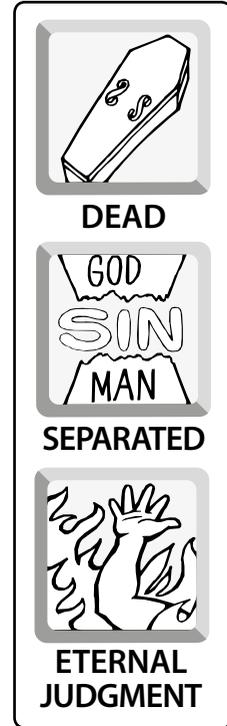
## TWO FACETS

This dilemma has two facets, like opposite sides of the same coin.

- ❖ **We have something we don’t want**—a sin problem. Because of our sin, we experience guilt, shame, pain, separation from God, and eventually the Second Death.
- ❖ **We need something we don’t have**—perfection. We need a level of goodness that makes us acceptable in God’s presence.

So the question is twofold: How can we get rid of our sin? And, how can we gain a righteousness that is equal to God’s righteousness, so that we can be accepted in his presence?

Here is another way of putting it. Mankind, by creation, was designed to live in God’s presence. But when man disobeyed God, his whole being



changed. He lost that sinless nature which made him acceptable to God. So, how can man gain back that perfection which allows him to live with God?

We will be keeping these questions in mind as we progress through the Bible.

## **GOD'S SITUATION**

To understand God's situation, we need to look at two different attributes that are part of his character.

### **1. Perfectly Just**

We have seen that the LORD is a perfect God, entirely without sin. To be sinless also means that God is honest and fair—just.

**He is the Rock; his deeds are perfect. Everything he does is just and fair. He is a faithful God who does no wrong; how just and upright he is!** Deuteronomy 32:4 NLT

We would say that God is a good judge because he does not treat one person one way, and another person another way. God enforces his rules equally and fairly. Here on earth a person may hide a crime, lie about it, bribe the judge,

or just simply not get caught. But with God, no perpetrator will get away with his sin. No one will escape God's justice.

**For God will bring every deed into judgment, including every hidden thing, whether it is good or evil.** Ecclesiastes 12:14 NIV

Honesty and fairness are fundamental to God's perfect nature.

**Righteousness and justice are the foundation of Your throne.** Psalm 89:14 NASB

Because God is perfect, we can count on him being absolutely fair. We like that. But here's the bad news. Perfect justice demands that sin be punished with a penalty equal to the offense. It's indicative of just how seriously God views sin by the penalty assigned to it. As we have seen, the Bible says that our sin-debt can only be paid with our death—in all its three-part meaning.

This is not good news. Fortunately, the other aspect of God's character comes into the picture.

## 2. Perfectly Loving

God is not only perfectly just, but he is also completely loving. By his very nature, God loves.

- ❖ God revealed a type of love when he created the world—a care and concern.
- ❖ But then God unveiled a deeper love—an undeserved love. This love is often referred to by using the words **grace, mercy, kindness and compassion**. As sinners, we don't deserve God's kindness, yet God loves us with a perfect love in spite of our sin. Because God is perfect, no one could be better than he at demonstrating grace and mercy.

### **PARADOX**

Now we find a paradox. To be completely **just**, God must enforce our payment of the sin-debt—we must die. But because God is **loving**, he has no desire to destroy us. Both qualities of his character are equal. God is not more **loving** than he is **just**. So how can God maintain **justice** and still be **loving**?

To begin with, God judges all sin, either here on the earth or after physical death. He is 100% consistent on that score. We all must die.

**Like water spilled on the ground, which cannot be recovered, so we must die.**

2 Samuel 14:14a NIV

But then the other attribute of God's nature comes into play. Because God is by nature loving ...

**...he devises ways so that a banished person may not remain estranged from him.**

2 Samuel 14:14b NIV

Although God allows our physical bodies to die, he lovingly provides a way whereby we can escape the eternal aspects of the death penalty. At the same time, God makes it possible for us to live in his presence again. So how does God judge sin and rescue us at the same time? How does God punish sin without punishing us? We will study that in the following chapters.

## **PRIDE**

One last thing before we move on. The Bible says that pride is what caused Satan to rebel. We often look at pride as being a good thing, but the Bible says pride is what keeps us from coming to God for help. We are often too proud to humble ourselves and say that we need the LORD.

**God opposes the proud but gives grace to the humble.**

1 Peter 5:5 ESV

## 2 ATONEMENT

After eating the fruit, the first thing that Adam and Eve did was to clothe themselves in fig leaves. In spite of having these clothes, Adam told God that he felt naked—exposed. There is a reason for this. The Bible tells us that...

**...The LORD does not look at the things man looks at. Man looks at the outward appearance, but the LORD looks at the heart.**

1 Samuel 16:7 NIV

God was looking right through their feeble attempts to clothe themselves. He could see their hearts.

The Bible tells us that God rejected Adam and Eve's attempts at self-improvement. The fig leaves covered their nakedness, but their hearts were full of sin. He wanted to teach them that man could do nothing, outwardly or inwardly, to remove the sin problem. So, he refused to accept their fig leaf clothes. Only God could supply them with clothing that was acceptable to him.

God took animals, killed them and...

**The LORD God made garments of skin for Adam and his wife, and clothed them.**

Genesis 3:21 NASB

This was a graphic illustration of the fact that **sin brings death**. Adam and Eve had never seen death before. If they watched, it must have been a jarring experience—seeing the blood spilled on the ground, the gasping for life, the light passing from the animal’s eye, comprehending the finality. Whatever the case, God made the awful reality of death understandable to them immediately. Animals died in order that they might be clothed.

### **BANISHED**

Although man had sinned, he still lived in the garden and had access to the tree of life. Eating of this tree would mean that man would live forever. So God removed man from the garden.

**And the LORD God said, “The man has now become like one of us, knowing good and evil. He must not be allowed to reach out his hand and take also from the tree of life and eat, and live forever.”**

**So the LORD God banished him from the Garden of Eden to work the ground from which he had been taken.**

**After he drove the man out, he placed on the east side of the Garden of Eden**

**cherubim and a flaming sword flashing back and forth to guard the way to the tree of life.**

Genesis 3:22–24 NIV

This was an act of mercy. God did not want men to live forever entrapped as sinners. Can you imagine what the world would be like if all the evil men and women down through the ages were still alive today? By putting man outside of the garden, God allowed the consequence of sin to take its eventual toll, namely physical death. But God was thinking beyond the grave. He was thinking of his plan to deliver man from the Second Death, a way to escape the Lake of Fire.

### **CAIN AND ABEL**

**Adam lay with his wife Eve, and she became pregnant and gave birth to Cain ... Later she gave birth to his brother Abel.**

Genesis 4:1–2 NIV

Both Cain and Abel were born outside of the garden. Because they had been conceived as a result of Adam's union with Eve, they had Adam's sin condition, and were separated from God. For God to be **just**, he must enforce his law. Cain and Abel also had to die for their sin.

But God loved them, so in his mercy he provided a way for them to escape judgment. That way had two dimensions:

### **INWARD—A FAITH IN GOD**

Cain and Abel were to simply trust God—believe that what the LORD said was true. For example, God had promised Adam and Eve that THE DELIVERER would crush Satan’s head and save them from sin’s consequences. **Was that possible? Was it true? Did God really mean it?** Cain and Abel individually had to decide for themselves whether or not to believe God.

### **OUTWARD—A VISUAL AID**

God also wanted to show them **what it would take** to remove sin. It involved a rather vivid visual aid.

A thorough study<sup>1</sup> of Scripture leads us to the understanding that God specifically told Cain and Abel to take an animal, kill it and let its blood run out on an \*altar. Why was this? The very thought of animal sacrifices strikes most of us as repulsive.

What conceivable reason would God have for such an explicit instruction? The Bible says...

\* Altars were stone or earthen platforms upon which sacrifices were made.

...without the shedding of blood there is  
no forgiveness. Hebrews 9:22 NET

God was saying that man's sin-debt could only be paid, or forgiven, if there was death. But why the blood?

For the life of a creature is in the blood, and I have given it to you to make atonement for yourselves on the altar; it is the blood that makes atonement for one's life.

Leviticus 17:11 NIV

This concept of a blood sacrifice has two aspects:

- ❖ **Substitution:** Normally, man would die for his own sin. But now, based on certain future events, God was saying that he would accept an innocent animal's death in man's place—as a substitute. It was a life for a life, the innocent dying in place of the guilty. The sacrifice pictured the law of sin and death being obeyed and justice being fulfilled. But could not a sacrifice be killed without the shedding of blood, perhaps by strangling?
- ❖ **Atonement:** God said that the blood would make atonement for sin. The word **atonement** means covering. The shed blood would *cover* man's sin, therefore when God looked at man, he would no longer see the sin. Man would be viewed

as **righteous** and therefore acceptable by God. The relationship would be restored. Man would still die physically, but the eternal consequences would no longer apply (i.e. separation from God forever in the Lake of Fire).

### **ATONEMENT—A COVERING FOR SIN**

The word **atonement** carries with it the idea of the **just, holy, righteous** side of God's nature being satisfied. God's law required death as the penalty for sin. When God saw the death of the innocent sacrifice, he was satisfied that the demands of his law had been carried out. Sacrificing an animal on an altar did not take away the sin. Man was still sinful. The sacrifice only pictured what was necessary for sin to be forgiven—death and shedding of blood. The blood provided an **atonement** or **covering** for sin. In effect, the same way that God covered the nakedness of Adam and Eve with acceptable clothing, so man's sin was covered by the blood and man found acceptance with God. It would be right to say that the LORD temporarily overlooked man's sin as if it had been obliterated.

Through faith in God, as illustrated by the substitutionary death and the atoning blood on the altar, man would find forgiveness for sin and a new relationship with God.

With God's instructions clear in our minds, we'll now return to the story of Cain and Abel and see what happens.

## **TWO SACRIFICES**

**Abel took care of the flocks, while Cain cultivated the ground. At the designated time Cain brought some of the fruit of the ground for an offering to the LORD. But Abel brought some of the firstborn of his flock—even the fattest.**    Genesis 4:2–4 NET

Cain and Abel both brought sacrifices to the LORD. One consisted of an animal, the other—vegetables. Cain and Abel brought these offerings, not because God was hungry, but because of specific instructions God had given them. At this point in the text those instructions are only alluded to, but later on they are given in detail.

Abel brought an animal which could be killed and its blood shed. That was good. But Cain brought garden produce. Vegetables do not shed

blood. Cain was offering a sacrifice, but it was the wrong one.<sup>1</sup> He had come up with his own version of the fig leaves.

## REJECTION

And the LORD was pleased with Abel and his offering, but with Cain and his offering he was not pleased.      Genesis 4:4–5 NET

God rejected Cain's sacrifice.  
Cain erred in two ways.



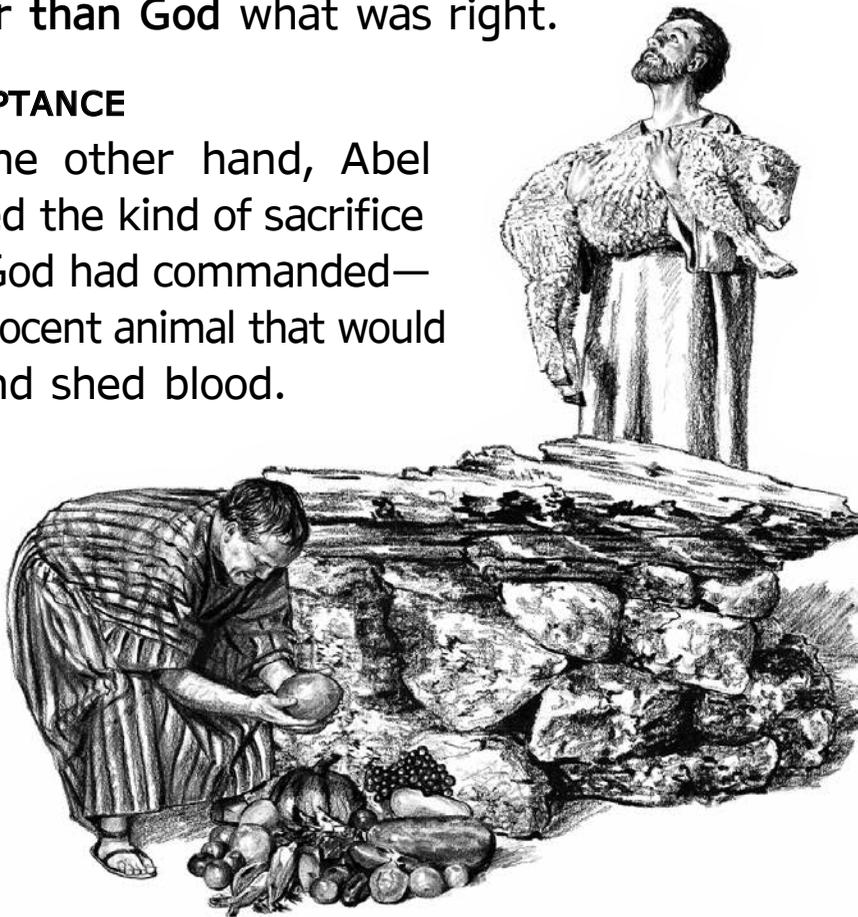
First, his actions revealed that he really didn't trust God. Secondly, Cain failed by doing things his own way. But God doesn't accept personal ideas on how to get right with him. Man may have the best intentions in the world, but sincerity is not enough—it does not bridge the gap.

We often look at independent thinking as a good thing, and there is some merit to that thought. However, we need to be careful. An independent spirit can also be very self-centered. When the **I'll-do-my-own-thing** mentality spills over into relationships—as to who's right and who's wrong, who gets and who doesn't, or even how we run entire countries—it can become very ugly.

Cain was doing his own thing. He felt he knew better than God what was right.

### **ACCEPTANCE**

On the other hand, Abel offered the kind of sacrifice that God had commanded—an innocent animal that would die and shed blood.



Abel deserved to die for his own sin, but God in his mercy allowed the animal to die in his place as a substitute. As Abel placed his sacrifice before the LORD, he was trusting God to keep his word—to send a DELIVERER—to somehow save him from sin’s awful penalty. It is doubtful if Abel knew how THE DELIVERER would accomplish his role, but it is clear that Abel was trusting God with the solution for sin.

**By faith Abel offered to God a more acceptable sacrifice than Cain, through which he was commended as righteous, God commending him by accepting his gifts ...**

Hebrews 11:4 ESV

As Abel approached God in faith, his sacrifice provided an atonement-covering for sin. When God looked at Abel, he did not see his sin. In a sense, God overlooked it. In God’s eyes, Abel was righteous or perfect, and could now be accepted in His presence.

### **GOD’S GENTLENESS**

As for Cain, he wasn’t happy with God.

**...Cain was very angry, and his face was downcast.**

Then the LORD said to Cain, "Why are you angry? Why is your face downcast? If you do what is right, will you not be accepted? But if you do not do what is right, sin is crouching at your door; it desires to have you, but you must master it." Genesis 4:5-7 NIV

God gently tried to show Cain that he was headed for trouble, that his sin nature would destroy him. He pointed out to Cain that he too would be accepted if he came the same way Abel had come. There is no record of Cain replying. He was sulking.

Cain said to his brother Abel, "Let's go out to the field." While they were in the field, Cain attacked his brother Abel and killed him.

Then the LORD said to Cain, "Where is your brother Abel?" Genesis 4:8-9 NET

Just like God quizzed Adam and Eve, now we see the LORD asking Cain questions. God didn't need to ask Cain what had happened. God knows everything; he knew exactly what had taken place. He was giving Cain a chance to come clean. But just like Adam and Eve, Cain's words revealed his heart:

**Cain: "I do not know. Am I my brother's keeper?"**

**God: "What have you done? The voice of your brother's blood cries out to Me from the ground."**      Genesis 4:9–10 NKJV

Sin cannot be hidden. Cain had murdered his brother and then had tried to wrangle his way out of a confession. God put his finger on Cain—You did it! There is no record of Cain ever expressing remorse for his actions. God could have destroyed him, but in his mercy, He moved him to another region. The human race had gotten off to a scandalous start.

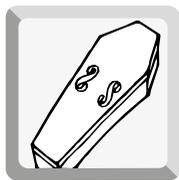
## **SETH**

**And Adam had marital relations with his wife again, and she gave birth to a son. She named him Seth, saying, "God has given me another child in place of Abel because Cain killed him." And a son was also born to Seth, whom he named Enosh.**      Genesis 4:25 NET

Although Seth was born with a sin nature, he trusted God just like Abel. It was through Seth and his descendants that God would send THE SAVIOUR. God was keeping his promise.

## DEATH

Well, it's time to leave Adam. The Bible says he had a large family and lived to be extremely old. Some scholars have proposed that a greenhouse effect in the original creation could have shielded man from harmful cosmic rays allowing for the incredible life spans recorded in early history. Others have noted that the accumulation of degenerative mutations would have been in its infancy, allowing for longer life spans. Though there may be merit in these theories, scientists increasingly believe that the length of one's life is the result of a genetically determined limit. Originally, that genetic limit could have been set much higher. We will see later what may have caused the change. Whatever the reason, the Bible says that God's word finally came true for Adam.



DEAD

**The length of time Adam lived after he became the father of Seth was 800 years; during this time he had other sons and daughters. The entire lifetime of Adam was 930 years, and then he died.**

Genesis 5:4–5 NET

### **WHO DID SETH AND CAIN MARRY?**

The Bible says Adam and Eve had other sons and daughters. It is implied that at this point in history brothers and sisters would have married each other. Because there had not been enough time for a significant number of mutant genes to arise in the genetic pool shared by the children, no harmful effects would have resulted from this kind of intermarriage. Later in the history of the Bible, we see this type of marriage forbidden.

## WHAT HAPPENED TO ABEL WHEN HE DIED?

Although the Bible does not explicitly mention where Abel's spirit went when he was murdered, we know from other Scriptures that those who died went to a place called **Paradise**, a place God prepared for believing men and women. Some Bible scholars would differentiate between Paradise and Heaven during this time in history, but all agree that they are now merged.

The Bible does not tell us a lot about Heaven, possibly because it's difficult to get our fog-bound mortal brains to comprehend it. One biblical writer who was given a peek at the place was left wanting for concrete words—he resorted to word pictures to get his point across. When you look at the world God created in six days, it's rather staggering to think about what he could do with eons of tinkering. The Bible does say that Heaven is a real place, with real people living there. It will be like Eden, only incomparably better.

Man's sin nature will be gone.

**Nothing impure will ever enter it, nor will anyone who does what is shameful or deceitful, but only those whose names are written in the... book of life.**

Revelation 21:27 NIV

Man will have a righteousness that is totally acceptable to God. In thinking of seeing the LORD, one biblical writer wrote...

**...in righteousness I will see your face... I will be satisfied with seeing your likeness.**

Psalm 17:15 NIV

Man's unique relationship with God will be restored.

**"Look! The residence of God is among human beings. He will live among them, and they will be his people, and God himself will be with them."**

Revelation 21:3 NET

Everything about life will be perfect.

**"[God] will wipe away every tear from their eyes, and death will not**

Continued...

**exist any more—or mourning, or crying, or pain, for the former things have ceased to exist.” And the one seated on the throne said: “Look! I am making all things new!”**

Revelation 21:4–5 NET

There will be no funerals or fractured relationships, no graves or broken-hearted good-byes, no hospitals or homelessness, no crippled bodies or ailing health, no crutches or canes.

Instead, Heaven will be a place of endless joy and pleasure.

**...you will fill me with joy in your presence, with eternal pleasures at your right hand.**

Psalms 16:11 NIV

Our bodies will not be limited by time or space. It seems we will be able to move about instantly. Evidently we will also be able to recognize people we have known or heard about here on earth.

At least part of Heaven will be occupied by a large city. It has been calculated that if

only 25% of the city was used, 20 billion people could be accommodated with plenty of room to spare. This city is called the New Jerusalem.

And he...showed me the holy city, Jerusalem,...having the glory of God. Her brilliance was like a very costly stone, as a stone of crystal-clear jasper. It had a great and high wall, with twelve gates, and at the gates twelve angels...

And the street of the city was pure gold, like transparent glass... And in the daytime (for there shall be no night there) its gates shall never be closed ... Revelation 21:10-12,21,25 NASB

Then [the angel] showed me a river of the water of life, clear as crystal, coming from the throne of God...

Revelation 22:1 NASB

This will be a city like none we have ever known—no pollution, no rust, no decay, no thieves, no crime, no fear—perfect in every

Continued...

detail. All residents of Heaven will live there for eternity.

**They will need no light of lamp or sun, for the Lord God will be their light, and they will reign forever and ever.**

Revelation 22:5 ESV



**ETERNAL  
LIFE**

**...I will dwell in the house of the LORD forever.**

Psalms 23:6 NASB

Perhaps we can end this section with the following verse which, though not limited to heavenly realms, certainly carries the idea of what God has in store.

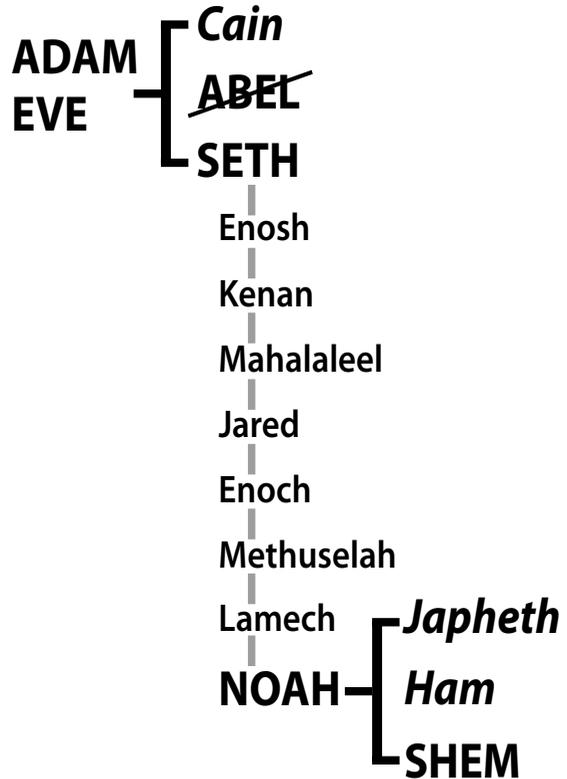
**“No eye has seen, no ear has heard, and no mind has imagined what God has prepared for those who love him.”**

1 Corinthians 2:9 NLT

### 3 TWO BY TWO

Many people view the Bible as a constant sequence of stunning miracles. Actually, miracles were very much the exception. Centuries would pass before anything earthshaking would happen. At this point in our story, the Bible records that no less than ten generations passed before the next big event unfolded in world history. Each one of those generations represents a long life span during which time the population of the world increased dramatically.

Hundreds of years passed, but God did not forget His commitment to send THE PROMISED DELIVERER. Each generation had those who believed God. Though the population of the world was increasing, the number who trusted



God did not increase at the same rate. The Bible records that all but a few turned their backs on him.

## **VIOLENCE**

Mankind had not only rejected God but was intent on following Satan with all the gusto man could muster. The Bible says:

**The LORD saw how great man's wickedness on the earth had become, and that every inclination of the thoughts of his heart was only evil all the time.**

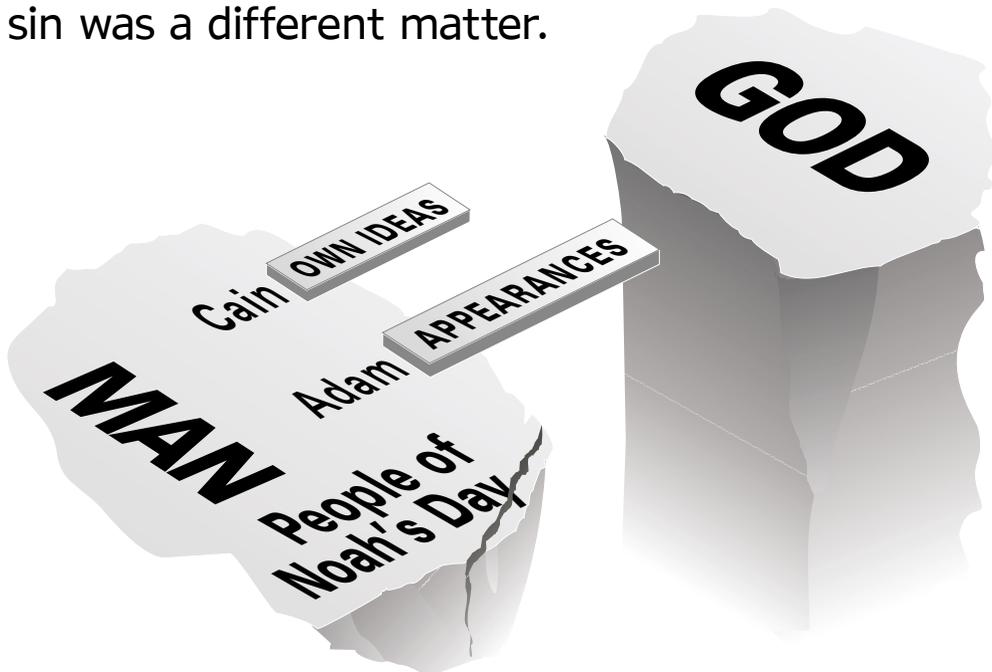
**Now the earth was corrupt in God's sight and was full of violence. God saw how corrupt the earth had become, for all the people on earth had corrupted their ways.**

Genesis 6:5,11-12 NIV

If you consider some of the nations of the world whose daily news fills our TV screens with accounts of anarchy, war, violence and rape, then you have an idea of what it must have been like. The Scripture says that man's thoughts were consumed with evil continually. Perversion and chaos reigned. The world had become a deadly place in which to live.

## LIVING FOR SELF

In addition, the Bible declares that the society of that day was focused on living for self.<sup>2</sup> What God said wasn't important anymore. Man had scorned God's plan and had developed a philosophy of life that excluded any desire to seek after him. Man wasn't even attempting to bridge the gap. Though righteousness was far from man's mind, sin was a different matter.



For although they knew God, they did not glorify him as God or give him thanks, but they became futile in their thoughts and their senseless hearts were darkened. Although they claimed to be

wise, they became fools and exchanged the glory of the immortal God for an image resembling mortal human beings or birds or four-footed animals or reptiles.

Therefore God gave them over in the desires of their hearts to impurity, to dishonor their bodies among themselves. They exchanged the truth of God for a lie and worshiped and served the creation rather than the Creator, who is blessed forever! Amen.

For this reason God gave them over to dishonorable passions. For their women exchanged the natural sexual relations for unnatural ones, and likewise the men also abandoned natural relations with women and were inflamed in their passions for one another. Men committed shameless acts with men and received in themselves the due penalty for their error.

And just as they did not see fit to acknowledge God, God gave them over to a depraved mind, to do what should not be done. They are filled with every

kind of unrighteousness, wickedness, covetousness, malice. They are rife with envy, murder, strife, deceit, hostility. They are gossips, slanderers, haters of God, insolent, arrogant, boastful, contrivers of all sorts of evil, disobedient to parents, senseless, covenant-breakers, heartless, ruthless. Although they fully know God's righteous decree that those who practice such things deserve to die, they not only do them but also approve of those who practice them.<sup>3</sup> Romans 1:21-32 NET

As we have seen before, sin has its consequences. It always does. Just as defying the law of gravity results in bruises and broken bones, so ignoring God's word has ramifications. God could not condone the sin. The Bible says God was grieved by it all.

So the LORD said, "I will destroy man whom I have created from the face of the earth ..."  
Genesis 6:7 NKJV

Man may have had a philosophy of life that excluded God, but God still held man accountable for his behavior.

**NOAH**

However, one man and his family were different.

**Noah found favor in the eyes of the LORD... Noah was a righteous man, blameless in his generation. Noah walked with God.**

Genesis 6:8–9 ESV

Though Noah was a good-living man, the Bible makes it plain that he still was a sinner. According to the law of sin and death, Noah had to die for that sin. But the Bible also indicates that Noah brought an animal sacrifice to God, evidence that he recognized the need to have an innocent substitute pay that death penalty for him. Noah believed that the LORD would somehow save him from sin's consequences. The Scripture says that because Noah trusted God, the LORD looked upon him as being righteous. Noah had a right relationship with the LORD, indicated by the words, "... he walked with God."

**So God said to Noah, "I have decided that all living creatures must die, for the earth is filled with violence because of them. Now I am about to destroy them and the earth. Make for yourself an ark of cypress wood. Make rooms in the ark, and cover it with pitch inside and out."**

Genesis 6:13–14 NET

## **THE WAY OF ESCAPE**

God told Noah to build an ark—a boat. This was no rowboat. It was a large ship, similar to modern ocean-going freighters. It had several decks, a built-in ventilation system and a door—only one door. The vessel was built of wood covered with a coat of tree pitch, a common means in past centuries of sealing a ship.<sup>4</sup> The Ark remained the largest vessel ever built until its size and ratio were almost duplicated in 1844 by the ship *Great Britain*. The dimensions of the Ark are still considered ideal for a large stable boat. It was not built for speed, only to preserve life. God told Noah:

**I am about to bring floodwaters on the earth to destroy from under the sky all the living creatures that have the breath of life in them... You will enter the ark—you, your sons, your wife, and your sons' wives with you.**

**You must bring into the ark two of every kind of living creature from all flesh, male and female, to keep them alive with you.**

**And Noah did all that God commanded him ...**

Genesis 6:17-19, 22 NET

## OBEDIENCE

Because Noah believed God, he obeyed him. That still didn't make God's directions any easier to follow. Noah had never built a boat before, certainly not one this size. And how would he explain the notion of a worldwide deluge to his neighbours?

God had said it would be 120 years before the Flood would take place.<sup>5</sup> During this time Noah not only oversaw the construction of the boat, but he also warned of coming judgment.<sup>6</sup>

The Bible tells us that before the Flood people lived to be hundreds of years old. Various theories have been suggested as to why this was so, but no reason is given in the Bible. It is simply stated as fact. Considering the long time people lived, 120 years for building the ark was well within the usual life span. After the Flood, life spans were shortened considerably so that a man of 90 was regarded as old.

Many excellent books have been written on the Flood regarding the impact it had on the world climate and geography. These books are reasoned theories based on the biblical account and scientific observations. With such detailed sources available, I have not attempted

to duplicate them. However, in the next few pages, I will briefly refer to some of these theories, with the hope that they will help your understanding without getting bogged down.

**The LORD then said to Noah, "Go into the ark, you and your whole family, because I have found you righteous in this generation."**

**And Noah did all that the LORD had commanded him.**

**...Noah and his sons, Shem, Ham and Japheth, together with his wife and the wives of his three sons, entered the ark.**

**They had with them every wild animal according to its kind, all livestock according to their kinds, every creature that moves along the ground according to its kind and every bird according to its kind, everything with wings. Pairs of all creatures that have the breath of life in them came to Noah and entered the ark. The animals going in were male and female of every living thing, as God had commanded Noah.**

**Then the LORD shut him in.**

Genesis 7:1,5,13-16 NIV

With a few exceptions, Noah only took one pair of each kind on board. Even allowing for extinct kinds, the ship had adequate room to house them all, with the animals occupying only an estimated 60% of the vessel.<sup>7</sup> The remaining space probably carried feed. Taking the young of large beasts may have been another space saver. To save on food, some may have hibernated. Of course, God was quite able to sustain them in any way he chose.

### **ONE DOOR**

After the loading was completed, God shut them in. When judgment came and the waters began to rise, no amount of banging on the ark could move Noah to open the hatch. Nor did Noah and his family need fear that the door might be torn open in the pounding deluge. They were perfectly safe because God had shut the door—the one and only door to safety. He had shut in those who believed and shut out the rebellious.

God is gracious. He had given mankind 120 years to turn from their sinful ways and take advantage of his mercy. Now their time was up. Judgment came, just as God had said it would.

Man sometimes threatens and never delivers, but God always keeps His Word.

**In the six hundredth year of Noah's life, on the seventeenth day of the second month—on that day all the springs of the great deep burst forth, and the floodgates of the heavens were opened. And rain fell on the earth forty days and forty nights.**

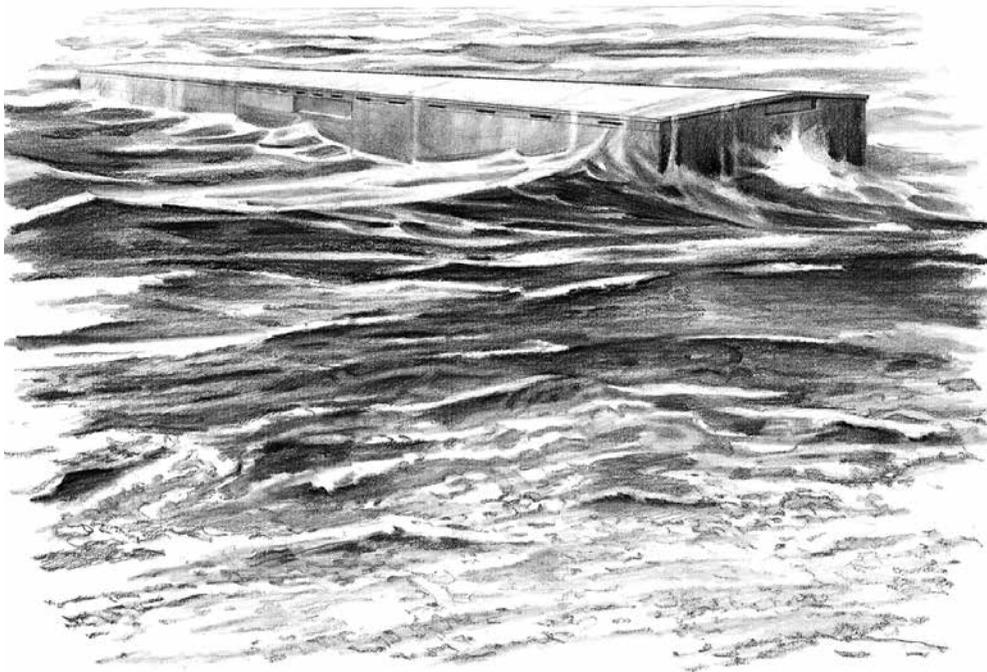
Genesis 7:11–12 NIV

## **THE SPRINGS AND FLOODGATES**

Cartoons have been drawn of an old man on a little houseboat, surrounded by animals, all getting soaked to the skin by a rain squall. Those efforts to illustrate the story are in error. You would have been crazy—and dead—to have remained outside in the storm that burst upon the earth.

First of all, the earth ruptured, releasing massive amounts of underground water. The Bible talks about **the springs of the great deep bursting forth**. It has been theorized that water under extreme pressure was spewed high into the sky. Then it, along with other water in the atmosphere, came down as **the floodgates of heaven were opened**. Such a rupturing of the

planet's crust had to have included enormous volcanic activity. It is possible that at this time the whole process known as **continental drift** occurred. Using super-computers, one of the world's leading researchers in plate tectonics has modeled in 3D the whole process of continental drift occurring in a few months.<sup>8</sup> As fissures tore open the crust of the earth, huge slabs of the surface were thrust deep into the earth's interior, recycling the ocean basins and continental land. The Hebrew word to describe this event means a **catastrophic deluge**. In the Bible, that word is solely used to describe this Flood. No other



inundation has ever come close to equaling it. Though many of the things that happened in the cataclysm can be explained by natural science, we must remember that an all-powerful God could create the Flood circumstances and the attending catastrophic results without any limitation.

The rain lasted for 40 days, but it seems from the text that water continued to flow out of the underground fountains for 150 days.

**For forty days the flood kept coming on the earth, and as the waters increased they lifted the ark high above the earth. The waters rose and increased greatly on the earth, and the ark floated on the surface of the water. They rose greatly on the earth, and all the high mountains under the entire heavens were covered.**

**Everything on dry land that had the breath of life in its nostrils died ... Only Noah was left, and those with him in the ark.**

Genesis 7:17-19, 22-23 NIV

**God remembered Noah ... and the waters receded.**

Genesis 8:1 NET

It is believed that prior to the Flood, the mountains were not as high as they are now. Today, if you

were able to take the surface of the globe and smooth it out, the water would cover the earth to a depth of approximately two miles (3 km). The Bible says that after the Flood, the mountains we see today rose up and the valleys sank down, presumably forming the ocean basins.

**The waters were standing above the mountains. At Your rebuke they fled ... The mountains rose; the valleys sank down to the place which You established for them. You set a boundary that they may not pass over, so that they will not return to cover the earth.** Psalm 104:6-9 NASB

## **A DIFFERENT PLANET**

Noah and his family were in the boat for 371 days before God opened the door and let them out. Long before that day, the waters had receded, and the ark had lodged in a mountainous region. When they left the ark, the ground was not only dry but producing again. It was a very different planet from before. It was the earth on which we now live.

**Then God said to Noah, "Come out of the ark, you and your wife and your sons**

and their wives. Bring out every kind of living creature that is with you ...so they can multiply on the earth..."

So Noah came out, together with his sons and his wife and his sons' wives. Then Noah built an altar to the LORD and ...he sacrificed burnt offerings on it.

Genesis 8:15-18,20-21 NIV

## **A PROMISE**

The first thing Noah did after leaving the ark was to build an altar and offer an innocent animal as a blood sacrifice to God. The sacrifice did not remove the sin, but it did picture what was necessary to pay the penalty—blood shed in death. It was evidence that Noah had confidence in God, believing that the LORD would keep his word, and somehow save him and his family from the consequences of sin. God was pleased.

Then God blessed Noah and his sons and said to them, "Be fruitful and multiply and fill the earth."  
Genesis 9:1 NET

"I now establish my covenant with you and with your descendants after you ... Never

again will all life be cut off by the waters of a flood; never again will there be a flood to destroy the earth.”

And God said, “This is the sign of the covenant I am making between me and you ...I have set my rainbow in the clouds, and it will be the sign of the covenant between me and the earth.”

Genesis 9:9,11–13 NIV

God promised to never destroy the earth with a flood again. Whenever it rained, the rainbow would be a reminder of that promise. Although thousands of years have passed since the Flood, God has kept his Word.

The sons of Noah who came out of the ark were Shem, Ham and Japheth. These were the three sons of Noah, and from them came the people who were scattered over the earth.

Genesis 9:18–19 NIV

Man now had a fresh start.

Noah lived 950 years, and then he died.

Genesis 9:29 NIV

## WHAT ABOUT DINOSAURS, FOSSILS, COAL, AND OIL?

We do not find the word dinosaur in the Bible—the word is recent, invented in 1841 by an English anatomist. However, the early books of the Bible do record references to animals that have no present parallels. Two of the larger animals mentioned have an intriguing resemblance to the fossil record.<sup>9</sup>

From what the Bible says, one can assume that the dinosaurs were created by God and lived with man from the beginning. Dinosaurs appear to have been reptiles, most of which continue to grow throughout their lifetime. If they had the long \*life spans humans had before the Flood, it could account for the huge size some attained.

\* Many people lived over 900 years.

The Bible indicates that two of every kind of land animal were ordered onto the Ark. It makes sense that only the young were taken, not only to conserve space, but also to maximize breeding time in the post-flood years. Since the average size of a dinosaur

Continued...

was that of a small pony, and even the largest dinosaurs at birth were no bigger than a football, calculations show that there was ample room for them on the Ark.

As to what caused their demise, we can only conjecture. In the last few decades, many creatures have become extinct, but even in these recent cases, it's hard to nail down the exact cause. Going back millennia makes it even harder. Since the climate seems to have changed radically after the Flood, it has been theorized that it would have been difficult for such animals to survive.

The conditions created by the deluge answer many questions we see in the natural world. For example, the massive amount of sediment created by the Flood, the extreme weight of the water, the tremendous amount of erosion—all could account for the deposits of coal, oil and fossils we now find. Many of the fossils show evidence that they were swiftly and catastrophically buried, frequently in vast fossil graveyards. The very existence of any well-preserved fossil, such as a fish, means it

was buried rapidly, with the encasing sediment hardening quickly before scavengers, bacteria and decay destroyed its features.

Many books have been written on the Creation-Flood perspective. If you have questions, consult the Appendix for resources.

## 4 BABEL

The tenth chapter of the book of Genesis is often called “**The Table of Nations.**” It tells us where the major ethnic groups came from, beginning with Noah’s three sons. The chapter ends with this verse:

**These are the clans of Noah’s sons, according to their lines of descent, within their nations. From these the nations spread out over the earth after the flood.**

Genesis 10:32 NIV

Once again, centuries of time passed and the population of the earth increased. Our story now moves on to what historians call the cradle of civilization: ancient Mesopotamia, now modern-day Iraq.



Now the whole world had one language and a common speech. As men moved eastward, they found a plain in Shinar and settled there.

They said to each other, "Come, let's make bricks and bake them thoroughly." They used brick instead of stone, and tar for mortar. Then they said, "Come, let us build ourselves a city, with a tower that reaches to the heavens, so that we may make a name for ourselves and not be scattered over the face of the whole earth."

Genesis 11:1-4 NIV

### **MAN'S AGENDA**

After the Flood, God had told man to...

**Be fruitful and increase in number and fill the earth.**

Genesis 9:1 NIV

But now man was not only trying to change the agenda, but to add something of his own.

**First:** Man felt that everyone should stay in one place and build a big city. This was in direct disobedience to God's instruction. Once again, man felt that he knew **better than God** what was right.

As you can see, man has a problem with obedience. Have you ever wondered why you don't need to teach little children to disobey Mom and Dad? It comes very naturally because defiance is natural to the human heart. Basically, as humans we don't want to be told what to do. We prefer to do our own thing. This was the problem with the people of Babel.

**Second:** Along with the city, man wanted to build a tower to bring honour to himself. The people were saying, "We want to...

**...make a name for ourselves ..."**

Genesis 11:4 ESV

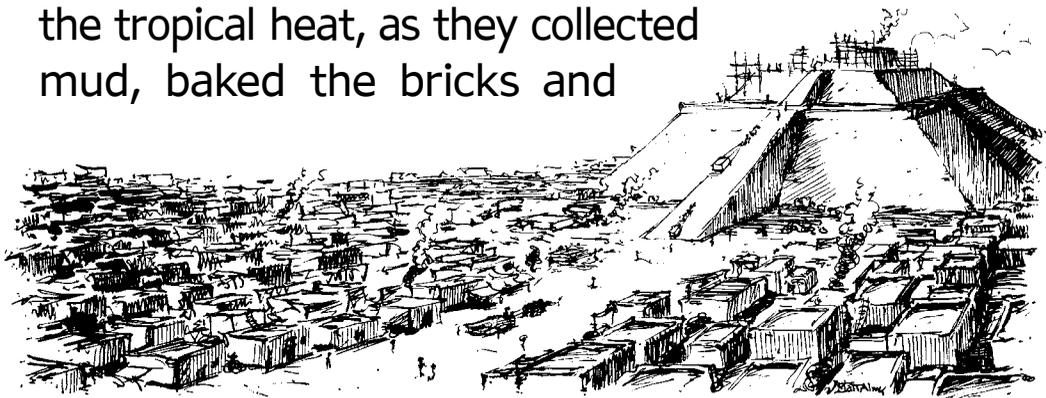
You can't help but hear the evil whisperings of Satan. That had been his ambition too.

It is noticeable that God didn't fit into any of the plans. When man is busy trying to be a **somebody**, to make a **name** for himself, then you can be

sure pride is involved. God will have to be left out of the picture. It's preposterous to attempt to exalt yourself when you're standing next to a God who is so resplendent, so supreme, so majestic, and so powerful. HE's going to cause any other name-maker to look ridiculous. As we have seen before, the Bible says that God is the only one worthy to have His name exalted.

So man's plans did not square with the LORD's instructions at all. Once again, man was functioning independently of the Most High God.

Babel is the first incident of an organized religion recorded in the Bible. Babel, or what became known as Babylon, is often used in the Scripture as an example of man's religious efforts. The people, in trying to build a tower to the heavens, were devising their own way of reaching God. You can imagine them slaving away in the tropical heat, as they collected mud, baked the bricks and

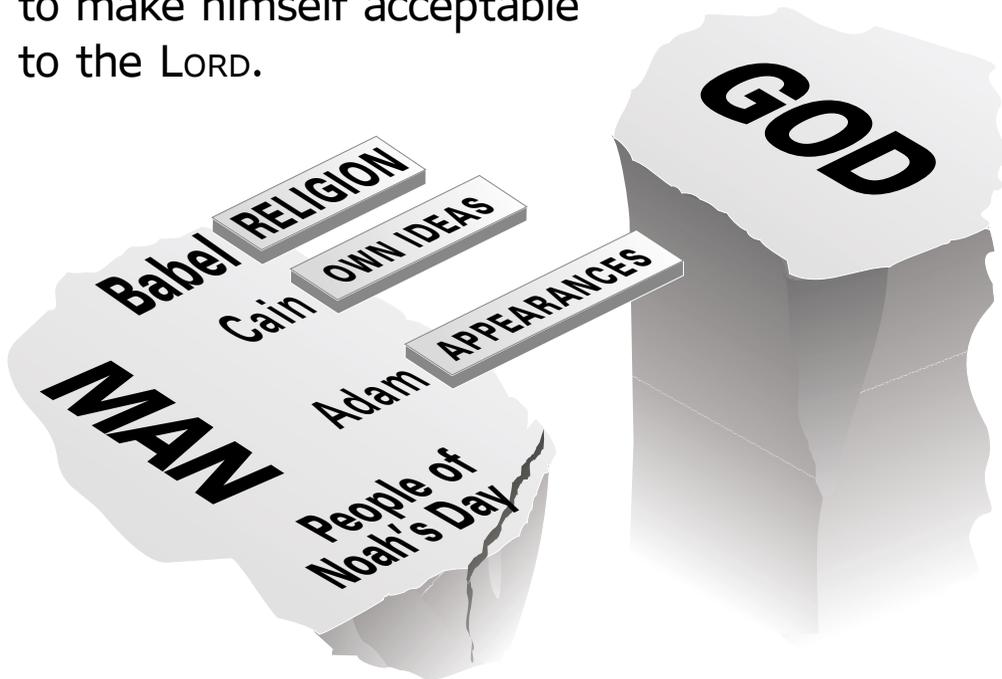


cemented them together with tar. It must have been dreadful toil, all so they could reach the heavens. But it didn't work. There is only one way to God—God's way.



LOST

A good definition for the word religion is this: **man's efforts to reach God**. Man, by nature, tends to be very religious. He is constantly searching for or creating new ways to find God. It's a hopeless pursuit. We will see that the Bible says that mankind is in a spiritual wilderness—he is LOST—and cannot find his way back to God on his own. Man can neither get rid of his sin nor find adequate righteousness to make himself acceptable to the LORD.



In contrast to religion, the Bible teaches that the only true way to God was provided by the LORD himself when, in his mercy, he reached down to man and provided man with a way to escape the punishment for sin. It is God who rescues us. He's the Saviour. The Bible makes it clear that it is the LORD who...

**...devises ways so that a banished person may not remain estranged from him.**

2 Samuel 14:14 NIV

The people of Babel ignored that fact. Of course, none of their impressive construction efforts escaped God's notice. God was fully aware of what was going on.

**But the LORD came down<sup>10</sup> to see the city and the tower that the men were building. The LORD said, "If as one people speaking the same language they have begun to do this, then nothing they plan to do will be impossible for them."** Genesis 11:5-6 NIV

God knew what history has proven to be true, that with a common language, man's progress in technology is much faster. It seems to be a pattern. The more advanced and comfortable

things are, the less man feels he needs God. Though God had given man a free will, he did not want man to live independently of him.

## **SCATTERED**

The story speaks for itself. God took action to confront man's defiance. God said ...

**"Come, let \*us go down and confuse their language so they will not understand each other."**

**So the LORD scattered them from there over all the earth, and they stopped building the city.**

Genesis 11:7-8 NIV

\* Once again, notice the word **us**. The Bible clearly states that there is only **one** God. So, just who is the Lord talking to when he says "**us**"? We will study that later.

The suggested migration of native North and South American tribal people across the Aleutian land bridge has never been well-founded. Though some language associations have been made, linguistically it has been impossible to prove. Why tiny, linguistically-isolated pockets of humanity should end up in such remote locations, from northern Greenland to the depths of the Amazon jungle, is beyond reasonable explanation. The

Bible says God scattered them—and it seems that’s just the way it happened. No doubt, he also equipped them with the knowledge of how to live in their new environments.

Whatever the case—whether via a land bridge or literally—when God scattered them, he gave them new languages. He did a thorough job. Anyone who has ever embarked on the formidable task of learning another tongue knows you don’t just create a new language on a whim. Some of the languages God created are so complex that it can take trained linguists years to grasp, and even then, they do not completely understand them.

The city the people were building didn’t disappear, but it did take on a name. It means **confusion**.

**That is why its name was called Babel—because there the LORD confused the language of the entire world, and from there the LORD scattered them across the face of the entire earth. Genesis 11:9 NET**

**WHERE DID ALL THE RACES ORIGINATE?<sup>11</sup>**

In one sense there is only one race—the human race. The Bible distinguishes people by national or tribal groupings, not by skin colour or by physical appearance. But those differences do exist. How could it have happened?

For the sake of explanation, we will choose skin colour, but the same would apply to eye and nose shape, hair texture, stature, etc.

We usually think of skin as having many colours, but actually skin essentially has only one colour: melanin. If we have only a little melanin, we are light-skinned; if we produce a large quantity, we are dark-skinned. There are a few other minor factors which contribute to skin colour, but they are not unique to any particular race, and the explanation below applies to them as well.

It has long been known that if a black person marries a white, the end result is a brown skin colour. If two of that offspring marry, their children can either be black,

Continued...

white, or any shade of colour in between. Why? Because the parents each possess the range of genes required to give the entire spectrum of colour.

Now if you take children that were born with pure black skin (from the above marriage) and they marry other offspring of the same colour, and migrate to an area where their children could not marry those of another colour, then their offspring would be consistently black. They would no longer have the genes required to produce white skin. Under similar circumstances, this would apply to those with white skin, who would no longer have the genes required to produce black skin. Such diversification in two different colour groups, which does not involve any new gene being added to those already created, can happen after only a few generations. Although the above explanation has been much abbreviated, one can see that it is not the problem as it may first appear.

The Bible says that all the nations of the earth came from Noah, his three sons and their wives, who were presumably brown, as they would have had genes enabling both white and black skin to appear in their descendants.

# CHAPTER SIX

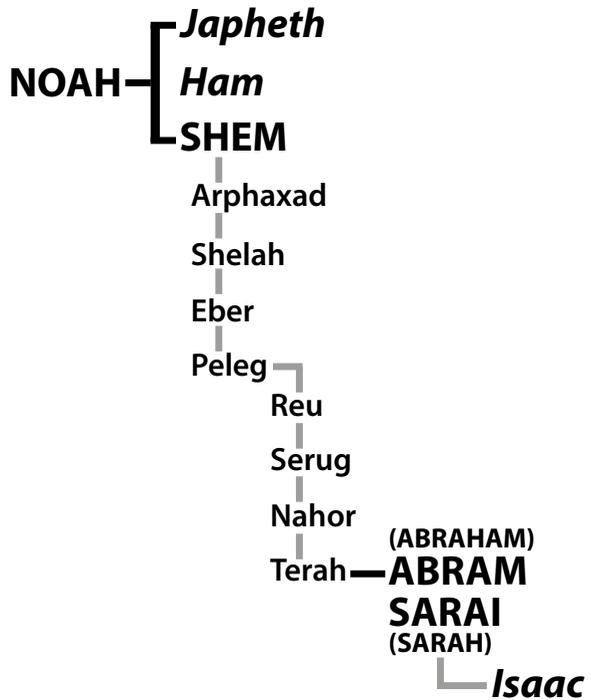
**1 ABRAHAM**

**2 BELIEF**

**3 ISAAC**

# 1 ABRAHAM

After the confusion of languages at Babel, many generations passed before the Bible records the next intervention by God in history. All through these passing years the LORD did not forget his promise to send a DELIVERER. Though the majority of people lived with little thought of God, each generation had those who believed his promises. One such couple was Abram and Sarai.



**Now Sarai was barren; she had no children.**

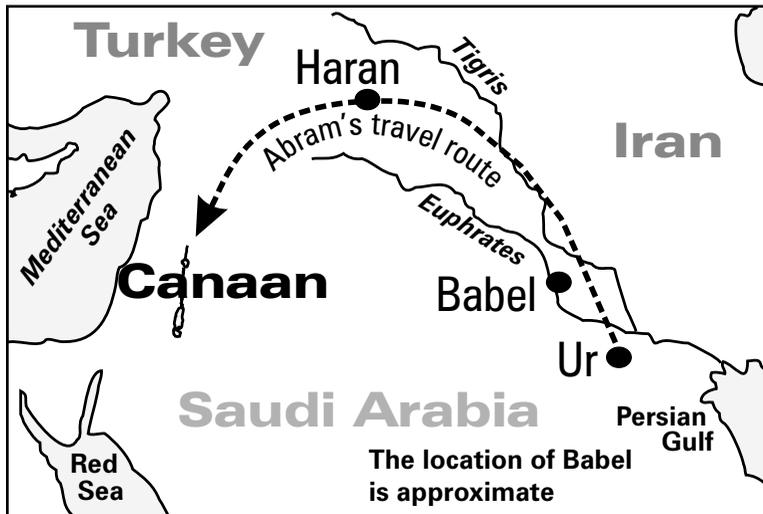
Genesis 11:30 NIV

Abram's home town was the city of Ur, just south of Babel. However, following the LORD's instructions, he left home and moved to Haran. It was here that God spoke to him a second time.

The LORD had said to Abram, "Leave your country,... and go to the land I will show you." So Abram left, as the LORD had told

him ... Abram was seventy-five years old<sup>1</sup>  
when he set out from Haran.

Genesis 12:1,4 NIV



For Abram this was a big step. He couldn't consult an atlas, research the country on the Web, or discuss plans with a travel agent. He didn't even know where he was going! God had not told him. As he travelled, he would have to trust God to lead him one day at a time. His unknown destination was Canaan, which is modern-day Israel.

**So they came to the land of Canaan. And there he built an altar to the LORD, who had appeared to him.** Genesis 12:5,7 NKJV

Because Abram believed God to be his Saviour from sin's consequences, he offered a blood

sacrifice on an altar as an **atonement-covering** for his sin. Although the animal offerings were only a picture of what was needed for sin to be removed, Abram's sacrifice was clear evidence that he recognized the need to have a substitute pay the death penalty for him. He was trusting God just as Abel, Noah and all the other righteous people had done in the ages past.

Abram lived a semi-nomadic life, so much so that the locals called him a **hebrew**, a name which carried the connotation of a **wanderer, the one from beyond**. From this time on, Abram and his descendants were referred to as **Hebrews**.

### **FOUR PROMISES**

God also gave Abram four specific promises:

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>1. <b>I will make you into a great nation ...<sup>2</sup></b></p>                                   | <p>When God <b>blesses</b>, he bestows favor and well-being.</p> |
| <p>2. <b>I will make your name great ...<sup>3</sup></b></p>   | <p>When God <b>curses</b>, he brings misfortune.</p>             |
| <p>3. <b>I will bless those who bless you, and whoever curses you I will curse ...<sup>4</sup></b></p> |  |
| <p>4. <b>...all peoples on earth will be blessed through you.</b></p>                                  |  |

Genesis 12:2-3 NIV

God's first promise was good news to Abram. In order to become a great nation, he would have to father children. However, since he had no offspring and Sarai was past childbearing age, he was perplexed as to how this would happen. But God had promised, so it must be true.

The last promise hinged on the first, and was a direct reference to THE DELIVERER. God was telling Abram that one of his descendants would be THE ANOINTED ONE, and that He would be a blessing to everyone. The Bible says Abram believed God and rejoiced at "the thought of seeing" the day of THE DELIVERER'S arrival.<sup>5</sup>

**After this, the word of the LORD came to Abram in a vision: "Do not be afraid, Abram. I am your shield, your very great reward."**

**But Abram said, "O Sovereign LORD, what can you give me since I remain childless...?"**

**God ...took him outside and said, "Look up at the heavens and count the stars—if indeed you can count them." Then he said to him, "So shall your offspring be."**

**Abram believed the LORD, and he credited it to him as righteousness.**

Genesis 15:1–2,5–6 NIV

This last sentence is loaded with meaning. We will look at three words that have far-reaching implications. They are the words **righteousness**, **credited** and **belief**. The last one is so important I will commit an entire section to it.

## **RIGHTEOUSNESS**

We saw earlier that the word **righteousness** is used in reference to God’s perfection, that he is flawless, holy, pure, clean, totally without blemish or sin.

## **CREDITED**

The word **credited** carries the thought of settling a monetary account through a payment. The term has common usage today in our financial world. We like seeing money **credited** to our bank account, as it shows we’ve been on the receiving end! But what does the Bible mean when it says,

**“Abram believed the LORD, and he credited it to him as righteousness.”**

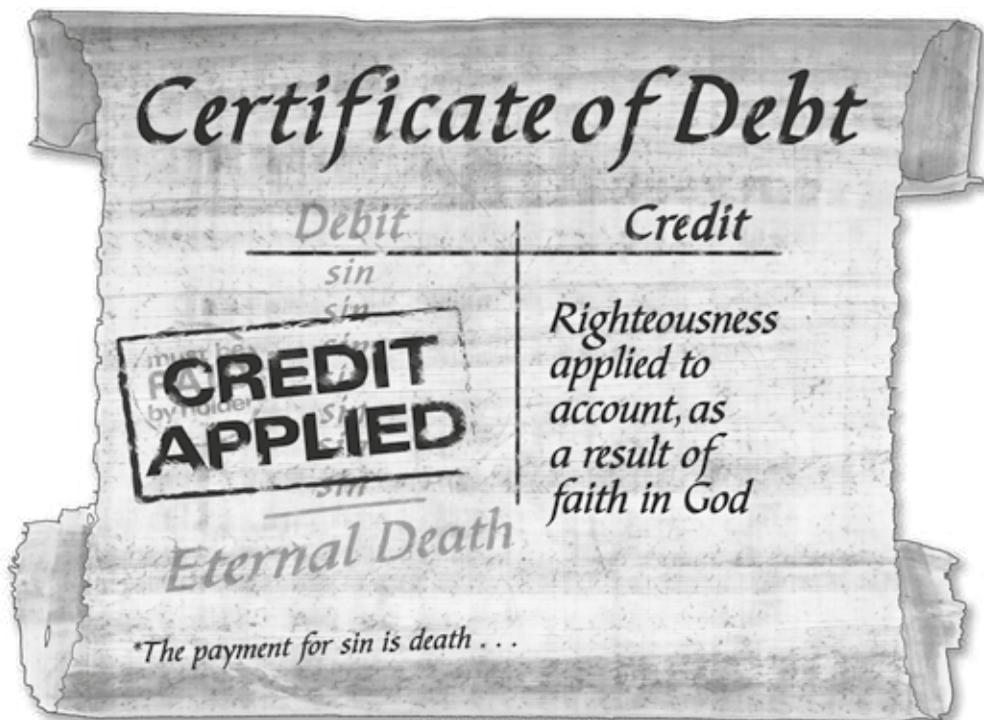
Genesis 15:6 NIV



DEBTOR

Remember that **Certificate of Debt** that every human has as a result of sin? Well, Abram had one too. But because Abram believed God's promises, God placed a credit on his account. He gave Abram **righteousness**.

It was like God was saying, "Abram, because you are trusting me, I'm going to make an advance payment on your sin account. I'm going to place my perfection on your ledger. Now you need to understand, my righteousness



\*Romans 6:23 paraphrased

far exceeds your sinfulness. What I am giving you will more than offset all your sin. You can consider your sin-debt as paid. And because what I am giving you is my righteousness, it will not only take care of your sin-debt, but it will fully provide you with all the perfection needed to live with me in Heaven.”

The Bible says Abram had such confidence in God keeping his word, that he...

**...was looking for the city which has foundations, whose architect and builder is God.**

Hebrews 11:10 NASB

Although Abram’s body would eventually die, Abram would not experience the horrific penalty associated with the second death. He knew he would live forever with God in Heaven.

Earlier on we asked that two-sides-of-the-same-coin question, “How can we get rid of our sin and gain a **righteousness equal to God’s righteousness** so we can be accepted in his presence?” For Abram, the answer was simple: trust the LORD, believe his promises, and God will provide.

## 2 BELIEF

This third word can be easily misunderstood. People have odd notions about faith, often confusing the biblical puzzle. But the Scripture uses the life of Abram to define exactly what the LORD means by “faith.” Here are some guidelines.

- ❖ The words or concepts of **belief**, **faith**, **trust** and **confidence** are often used interchangeably.

Abram <b>believed</b> the LORD.	He <b>believed</b> what God said.
Abram put <b>faith</b> in the LORD.	He had <b>faith</b> in His Word.
Abram <b>trusted</b> the LORD.	He knew God to be <b>trustworthy</b> .
Abram had <b>confidence</b> in the LORD.	His <b>confidence</b> was in God alone.

- ❖ True belief is built on fact, not feelings. When you sit in a chair, you trust that it will hold you up. You don't sit in it because you have a wonderful feeling or an overwhelming passion about chairs. Rather, you observe that the chair is substantial, and based on that fact, you rest yourself

upon it. Abram's faith rested on fact—God's promise. It was a matter of simple arithmetic:

God said, "You will have a son."

+ God is all-powerful and tells the truth.

= Abram will have a son.

- ❖ It's not the amount of faith<sup>6</sup> you have, but in whom you are placing your trust. Abram's faith may have wavered at times, but his confidence was firmly placed in God.

The old saying, "Never trust a stranger," is particularly applicable to the subject of faith. To trust someone you don't know is risky. In the Bible we see that Adam and Eve trusted a stranger (Satan) and it had terrible ramifications. Certainly on issues of life and death, faith that involves a "leap in the dark" is not desirable.

In contrast to blind faith, the Bible encourages us to check out God for ourselves. The LORD does not want to be a stranger—he wants to be a friend. A special promise is given to those seeking him. It says if we believe HE exists, and if we seek to know HIM, then he will reward us with additional information about HIMSELF.

**But without faith it is impossible to please Him, for he who comes to God must believe that He is, and that He is a rewarder of those who diligently seek Him.**

Hebrews 11:6 NKJV

In the Bible, Abram and Sarai are used as examples of faith. Their whole lives were marked by faith, but it wasn't a leap in the dark. They knew the LORD had a reliable history, and...

**...regarded the one who had given the promise to be trustworthy.**

Hebrews 11:11 NET

Some people talk about faith as if it were a gift that God gives you, like a present. But when you study the lives of Abram and Sarai, you see that their faith towards God functioned like any other day-to-day expression of trust. They believed the LORD was telling the truth and acted upon that belief.<sup>3</sup>

**By faith Abraham, when called to go to a place he would later receive as his inheritance, obeyed and went, even though he did not know where he was going.**

Hebrews 11:8 NIV

Abram's belief went beyond agreement. He staked his life, his reputation, and his actions on it. Because he believed, he was obedient to God and travelled to a foreign land. Because he believed, he offered sacrifices, trusting God to save him from sin's consequences.

It's important to understand that Abram's obedience wasn't an attempt to prove to God or to others the genuineness of his faith. Rather, because he trusted God, the natural result was that he did the things God wanted him to do. So when we read the words, "**Abram believed the LORD...**" we need to be thinking of all that is implied.

Because of Abram's faith, God changed his name to Abraham, which means **father of many**, and Sarai became Sarah, meaning **princess**. It was God's way of saying he would keep his promise, although they were both past childbearing age.

### **3 ISAAC**

Now the LORD was gracious to Sarah as he had said, and the LORD did for Sarah what he had promised. Sarah became pregnant and bore a son to Abraham in his old age,

at the very time God had promised him.  
Abraham gave the name Isaac to the son  
Sarah bore him. Genesis 21:1–3 NIV

God had kept his promise to Abraham and Sarah, even in their old age. He always keeps his word and he delights in doing the impossible.

Some time later God tested Abraham.  
He said to him, “Abraham!”

“Here I am,” he replied.

Then God said, “Take your son, your only son, Isaac, whom you love, and go to the region of Moriah. Sacrifice him there as a burnt offering on one of the mountains I will tell you about.”

Early the next morning Abraham got up and saddled his donkey. He took with him two of his servants and his son Isaac. When he had cut enough wood for the burnt offering, he set out for the place God had told him about. On the third day Abraham looked up and saw the place in the distance. He said to his servants, “Stay here with the donkey while I and the boy go over there. We will worship and then we will come back to you.”

Abraham took the wood for the burnt offering and placed it on his son Isaac, and he himself carried the fire and the knife. As the two of them went on together, Isaac spoke up and said to his father Abraham, "Father?"

"Yes, my son?" Abraham replied.

"The fire and wood are here," Isaac said, "but where is the lamb for the burnt offering?"

Abraham answered, "God himself will provide the lamb for the burnt offering, my son." And the two of them went on together.

When they reached the place God had told him about, Abraham built an altar there and arranged the wood on it. He bound his son Isaac and laid him on the altar, on top of the wood. Then he reached out his hand and took the knife to slay his son. But the

\*angel of the LORD called out to him from heaven, "Abraham! Abraham!"

"Here I am," he replied.

\*The Angel of the Lord—in this case a synonym for God. Compare Gen 22:15,16

“Do not lay a hand on the boy,” he said. “Do not do anything to him. Now I know that you fear God, because you have not withheld from me your son, your only son.”

Abraham looked up and there in a thicket he saw a ram caught by its horns. He went over and took the ram and sacrificed it as a burnt offering instead of his son. So Abraham called that place The LORD Will Provide. And to this day it is said, “On the mountain of the LORD it will be provided.”

The angel of the LORD called to Abraham from heaven a second time and said, “I swear by myself, declares the LORD, that because you have done this and have not withheld your son, your only son, I will surely bless you and make your descendants as numerous as the stars in the sky and as the sand on the seashore. Your descendants will take possession of the cities of their enemies, and through your offspring all nations on earth will be blessed, because you have obeyed me.”

Genesis 22:1–18 NIV

This is a most profound story. At first glance it appears that God is endorsing child sacrifice!! But look deeper.

### **YOUR ONLY SON**

The setting is simple. God asked Abraham to take his son and sacrifice him on an altar—to put him to death. This is no idle request. The LORD reminded Abraham that this was his only son. His memory hardly needed the assistance. For years he had waited for this child, and Isaac was the very son that God had promised would be the father of countless descendants. The LORD had been very specific about that and it was obvious that a dead son could have no offspring!

God's request must have bewildered Abraham. In all probability he had witnessed the human sacrifices practiced by other nations of his day and knew it was a common form of appeasing their gods. Yet God's command to sacrifice Isaac went against everything Abraham knew about the Creator. God, in his love, had promised Isaac as a descendant that would bear many children. There was no earthly way to harmonize God's previous promise with His present command.

How could God be so inconsistent? And yet Abraham had learned that the LORD was utterly trustworthy, so he did just as God requested. Calling his son, he saddled the family donkey and, taking the trappings for sacrifice-making, he set off to do the LORD's bidding. His heart must have been torn with anguish! Being obedient was an immense step for Abraham, but that step showed his absolute faith in God's goodness.

### **THE TEST**

The Bible does not leave us guessing Abraham's thoughts. It tells us that Abraham clung to God's promise, convinced that even if he sacrificed Isaac, the LORD would raise him from the dead.

**By faith Abraham, when God tested him, offered Isaac as a sacrifice... Abraham reasoned that God could raise the dead, and ... receive Isaac back from death.**

Hebrews 11:17,19 NIV

The Bible says that God was testing Abraham's faith. We'll understand the reason why in a few more pages. This ultimate test of offering his own son revealed to Abraham, and to us, his genuine confidence in the LORD.

## THE SACRIFICE

Abraham and Isaac, along with two other young men, headed off to the mountains of Moriah. When they got nearer, Abraham and Isaac went on alone with Isaac carrying the wood. Somewhere along the way Isaac queried his father. No doubt, Isaac had witnessed many sacrifices and it didn't take a college degree for him to realize that one of the essentials was missing—the sacrifice itself. Where was the lamb?

**“Here is the fire and the wood,” Isaac said, “but where is the lamb for the burnt offering?”**

Genesis 22:7 NET

One can't help but wonder if Isaac was thinking about the prevalence of child sacrifice in neighboring religions. He, too, was trusting in the LORD and in no small way! When his father replied that God Himself would provide the lamb, Isaac went on willingly. It says they went together.

God showed them the exact place to erect the altar on the mountains of Moriah. Many years later, the Jewish temple would be built on Mount Moriah, perhaps on the same site Isaac was offered.

## BOUND

When they came to the place of which God had told him, Abraham built the altar there and laid the wood in order and bound Isaac his son and laid him on the altar, on top of the wood. Genesis 22:9 ESV

Isaac was no infant. The Hebrew word translated boy was used of young males all the way up to military age. He was certainly old enough to put up a fight and, in spite of the fact that Abraham was not a young man, there is no record of a struggle. It is obvious that Isaac willingly submitted to his father, an act which showed implicit confidence in his dad, whom he knew to be a follower of God's Word.

Once bound on the altar, Isaac was helpless. He was under direct and specific orders from God to be slain. There was no way he could save himself. The Bible says Abraham stretched out his arm and took the knife. You can see the old man's hand shake. His jaw sags. His heart is about to break. This is his only son! The strain of the moment is incredible. Slowly the trembling arm is raised and in the somber light of the day, the cold metal of the knife glints. Deliberately, the

mind commits itself to the plunge, and then ... and then God intervened. The Angel of the LORD called to Abraham from heaven and said ...

**“Do not lay your hand on the lad, or do anything to him; for now I know that you fear God, since you have not withheld your son, your only son, from Me.”**

Genesis 22:12 NKJV



There must have been tears. You can see Dad and son weeping in overwhelming relief. God had intervened. The sentence of death was gone!—at least for Isaac it was gone. But still there was a death.

## **A SUBSTITUTE**

The Bible says that God provided an animal.

**Then Abraham looked up and saw a ram caught by its horns in a thicket.**

Genesis 22:13 NLT

Entangled in this way, the sheep could not injure itself in an effort to be freed.

**So he took the ram and sacrificed it as a burnt offering in place of his son.**

Genesis 22:13 NLT

There was death all right, but it was the ram's death instead of Isaac's. Isaac went free because a ram died. God had provided a substitute. This event so imprinted itself on Abraham's mind that he named the mountain as a reminder of what God is like.

**So Abraham called that place The LORD Will Provide. And to this day it is said, "On the mountain of the LORD it will be provided."**

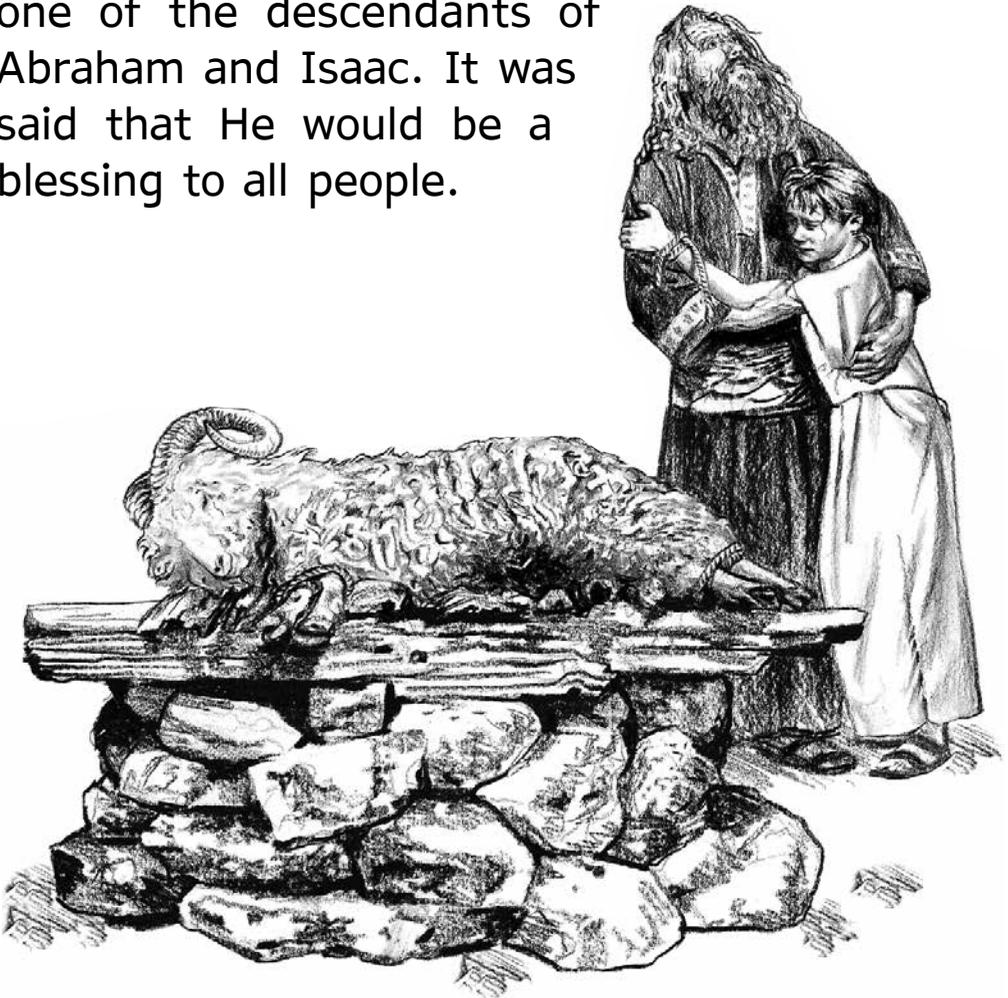
Genesis 22:14 NIV

Abraham found that God is truly a...

... Savior in time of distress ...

Jeremiah 14:8 NASB

The story ends with God reaffirming his promise to Abraham. His offspring would be many—the whole nation of Israel. Included in God's promise was the fact that THE ANOINTED ONE would be one of the descendants of Abraham and Isaac. It was said that He would be a blessing to all people.



**“I swear by myself,” declares the LORD... “through your offspring all nations on earth will be blessed, because you have obeyed me.”**      Genesis 22:16,18 NIV

God’s request of Abraham to sacrifice Isaac was a **once-in-a-lifetime, once-in-the-history-of-man** sort of request. God wanted to communicate certain truths not only to Abraham, but also to us—truths having to do with judgment, faith, and deliverance through a substitute.

Just as Isaac was under God’s direct order to die, so all mankind is under the sentence of death.<sup>7</sup> Isaac could not save himself. But Abraham trusted the LORD, believing that somehow his loving God would make the difference. And God did intervene. He provided a way of escape through a substitute. It was a life for a life—the innocent dying for the guilty.

Just as Abel had offered a sacrifice to die in his place, so the ram had died in Isaac’s place. And just as God had viewed Abel’s sacrifice as acceptable, so God saw fit to provide a ram as an acceptable sacrifice in Isaac’s place. It was God’s idea. It was man coming to God in God’s way, believing that His Word was true.



# CHAPTER SEVEN

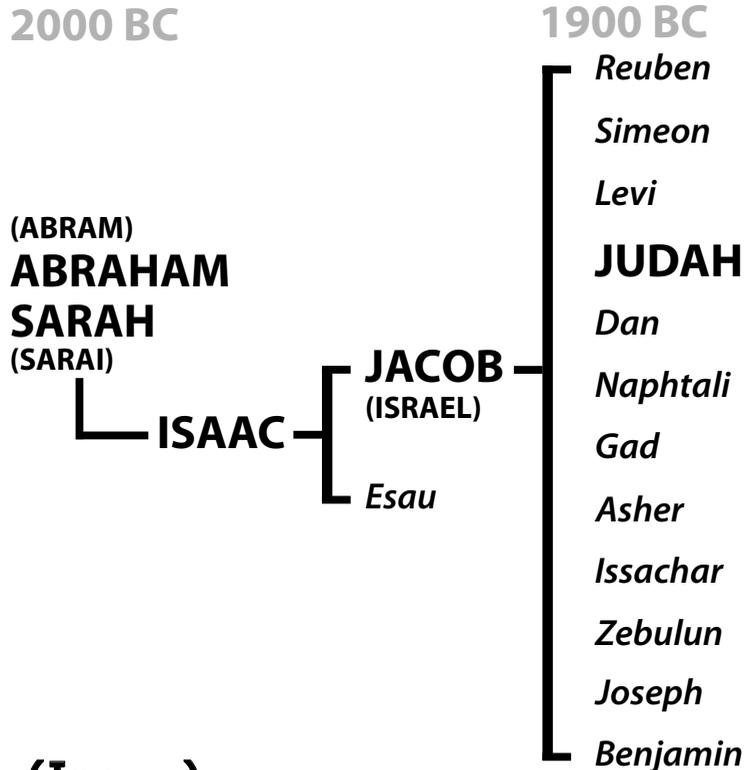
**1** ISRAEL AND JUDAH

**2** MOSES

**3** PHARAOH AND THE PASSOVER

# 1 ISRAEL AND JUDAH

God had promised both Abraham and Isaac that THE DELIVERER would be one of their descendants. Both these men lived long lives and died.



## JACOB (ISRAEL)

Isaac had two sons: Esau and Jacob. Esau was like Cain, patterning his life around his own ideas, doing his own thing. On the other hand, Jacob trusted God and, because of that, the LORD considered him righteous. Jacob often came to God offering blood sacrifices on an altar.

**So Jacob ... built an altar there ... because there God appeared to him.**

Genesis 35:6–7 NKJV

Jacob believed the principles found in God's Word, that...

**...without the shedding of blood there is no forgiveness.**

Hebrews 9:22 NIV

**For the life of a creature is in the blood, and I have given it to you to make atonement for yourselves on the altar; it is the blood that makes atonement for one's life.**

Leviticus 17:11 NIV

Although Jacob often failed in life, God was the ultimate focus of his trust. Later his name was changed to **Israel**, which means **God prevails**. Today the nation of Israel, which descends directly from Jacob, has named itself after this man.

God also renewed his promise with Jacob, the same promise he had made to Abraham and Isaac. The LORD told Jacob...

**"I am the LORD, the God of your father Abraham and the God of Isaac...in you and in your descendants shall all the families of the earth be blessed."**

Genesis 28:13–14 NASB

God was saying that one of Jacob's descendants would be a blessing to every nation—a reference to THE PROMISED DELIVERER.

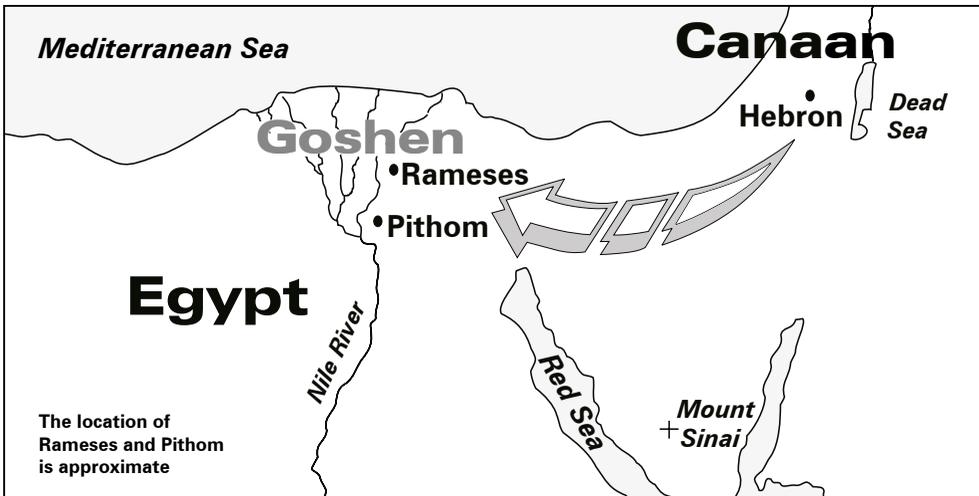
Jacob (or Israel) had twelve sons from whom descended twelve tribes.<sup>1</sup> Before Jacob died, he told his son Judah that it would be through his tribe that THE DELIVERER would come.

## EGYPT

Abraham, Isaac and Jacob lived semi-nomadic lives in Canaan (what we know today as Israel). In the final years of Jacob's life, famine hit the country and he, along with his sons and their families, moved into Egypt. At the time, this ragtag band numbered only seventy souls. Egypt received and treated them well.

Three hundred and fifty years later they were still in Egypt, but by then it is estimated that there were two and a half million Israelites. The descendants of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob had indeed become a great nation but there was a problem—they were in the wrong country. They had been promised the land of Canaan, not Egypt. However, the LORD had told Jacob long before the seventy had fled the famine in Canaan ...

**“I am with you! I will protect you wherever you go and will bring you back to this land. I will not leave you until I have done what I promised you!”**      Genesis 28:15 NET



## 2 MOSES

Two and a half million Israelites in Egypt could hardly be ignored. The Egyptian king (or Pharaoh) came up with an idea.

**“Look,”** he said to his people, **“the Israelites have become much too numerous for us. Come, we must deal shrewdly with them or they will become even more numerous and, if war breaks out, will join our enemies, fight against us and leave the country.”**

**So they put slave masters over them to oppress them with forced labor, and they built Pithom and Rameses as store cities for Pharaoh.**

Exodus 1:9–11 NIV

Not only were the Israelites enslaved, they were slaves condemned to hard labour.

**But the more they were oppressed, the more they multiplied and the more they spread abroad. And the Egyptians were in dread of the people of Israel. So they ruthlessly made the people of Israel work as slaves and made their lives bitter with hard service, in mortar and brick, and in all kinds of work in the field.**

Exodus 1:12–14 ESV

But God had not forgotten his promises. The Bible says...

**God heard their groaning and he remembered his covenant with Abraham, with Isaac and with Jacob. So God looked on the Israelites and was concerned about them.**

Exodus 2:24–25 NIV

The time had come for them to leave. The LORD had his man in place, an Israelite named Moses.

Moses had been born in Egypt to Israelite parents. At birth, he was condemned to die. Providentially, he was rescued and raised as a member of Pharaoh's household with access to the best education in the land. As an adult, he murdered an Egyptian in defense of an Israelite, and then fled for his life into the desert. It was here that he became a shepherd, and for the next forty years learned to lead sheep. It was an education designed by God.

**Now Moses ... led the flock to the far side of the desert and came to the mountain of God, to Horeb. The angel of the LORD appeared to him in a flame of fire from within a bush. He looked—and the bush was ablaze with fire, but it was not being consumed!**

Exodus 3:1–2 NET

One can't help but think that Moses stood staring at the bush for some time. He must have been perplexed. What's going on here?! Wouldn't his wife be glad to hear about this—a wood that burned yet wasn't consumed would make great fuel for her kitchen stove!

**So Moses thought, "I will go over and see this strange sight—why the bush does not burn up."**

When the LORD saw that he had gone over to look, God called to him from within the bush, "Moses! Moses!" Exodus 3:3-4 NIV

A talking tree no less! One can imagine Moses looking around, all in a sweat, hoping no one was listening. What would he look like, carrying on a conversation with a shrub?!

And Moses said, "Here I am."

"Do not come any closer," God said. "Take off your sandals, for the place where you are standing is holy ground." Then he said, "I am the God of your father, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac and the God of Jacob." Exodus 3:4-6 NIV

Moses' blood must have chilled. He knew all about the eternal Most High God. He knew that God was the Creator-Owner of all living. He knew that the LORD was a holy God who separated himself from mankind because of their sin. Moses himself was a sinner—a murderer.

Moses hid his face, because he was afraid to look at God.

The LORD said, "I have indeed seen the misery of my people in Egypt. I have

heard them crying out because of their slave drivers, and I am concerned about their suffering.

So now, go. I am sending you to Pharaoh to bring my people the Israelites out of Egypt.”

Exodus 3:6–7,10 NIV

Moses must have sighed with relief. God was not coming to judge his sin, but to give him a job. But there was a problem. Moses was a shepherd and the task looked formidable. Who was he anyway? People wouldn't put reams of confidence in a fellow who said he spoke to a burning bush. Moses said to God,

“If I come to the people of Israel and say to them, ‘The God of your fathers has sent me to you,’ and they ask me, ‘What is his name?’ what shall I say to them?”

God said to Moses, “I AM WHO I AM.” And he said, “Say this to the people of Israel, ‘I AM has sent me to you.’”

Exodus 3:13–14 ESV

I AM means the self-existent one, the God who exists by his own power.

**“This is my eternal name, my name to remember for all generations. Now go and call together all the elders of Israel. Tell them, ‘The LORD, the God of your ancestors—the God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob—has appeared to me. He told me, “I have been watching closely, and I see how the Egyptians are treating you. I have promised to rescue you from your oppression in Egypt. I will lead you to a land flowing with milk and honey ...”””**

**“The elders of Israel will accept your message.”**

Exodus 3:15–18 NLT

Though Moses struggled with misgivings, he also knew that when God made a promise, he always kept His Word. So Moses packed his bags and headed back to Egypt, back to Pharaoh and the Israelite slaves. On the way, he met his brother Aaron whom God had sent to be his spokesman.

**Moses and Aaron brought together all the elders of the Israelites, and Aaron told them everything the LORD had said to Moses.**

**...and they believed. And when they heard that the LORD was concerned about them**

**and had seen their misery, they bowed down and worshiped.** Exodus 4:29–31 NIV

It happened just the way that God said it would. The people believed and worshipped the LORD. God was keeping his promise.

### **3 PHARAOH AND THE PASSOVER**

It was one thing for Moses and Aaron to convince the leaders of Israel that God had spoken, but the whole effort of selling Pharaoh on the idea conjured up a quagmire of nightmarish problems.

**... Moses and Aaron went to Pharaoh and said, “Thus says the LORD, the God of Israel, ‘Release my people ...’”**

**But Pharaoh said, “Who is the LORD that I should obey him by releasing Israel? I do not know the LORD, and I will not release Israel!”** Exodus 5:1–2 NET

Well, Pharaoh was right on one account—he did not know the LORD. Egypt venerated a plethora of gods—the sun-god, the god of storms, the Nile River—even Pharaoh was a god. Each god was represented by a different symbol: the vulture, the frog, the scorpion, and so on. The Egyptians

worshiped the creation rather than the Creator. Not only was Pharaoh ignorant of the true God, he was closed to the whole idea of becoming acquainted. For him to worship the Creator would mean a considerable loss of power and status, and letting the Israelites go would be hard on the economy—a major loss of free labor. Pharaoh was adamantly opposed to such an idea.

**But the LORD said to Moses, "Now you shall see what I will do to Pharaoh ... I will bring you out from under the burdens of the Egyptians, and I will deliver you from slavery to them ... with great acts of judgment."**

Exodus 6:1,6 ESV

God told Moses that He would bring judgments on Egypt in the form of plagues. Only under these conditions would Pharaoh let the Israelites go. Such news was rather disconcerting. If God brought plagues on Egypt, what would Pharaoh do in retaliation? The LORD encouraged the Israelites by reminding them of his promise to their forefathers.

**"I will take you to be my people, and I will be your God ... I will bring you into**

the land that I swore [or pledged] to give to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob. I will give it to you for a possession. I am the LORD.”

Exodus 6:7-8 ESV

## **GOD'S PEOPLE**

God said the Israelites would be his people. This did not mean that only the people of Israel could follow the true God, but it did mean that the LORD was making it easier for the different nations of the earth to know just what God was like and how he related to man. All that the world would need to do is look at Israel and they would see a full-colour, surround-sound, living lesson of how God dealt with mankind!

God had said he would bring plagues on Egypt in order to deliver Israel. In the process, he would teach both nations something about himself.

Israelites: The lesson to be learned ...

**Then you will know that I am the LORD your God, who brought you out from your enslavement to the Egyptians.**

Exodus 6:7 NET

Egyptians: The lesson to be learned ...

**“And the Egyptians will know that I am the LORD when I stretch out my hand against Egypt and bring the Israelites out of it.”**

Exodus 7:5 NIV

God was going to teach both nations the same thing: that He alone is God. However, Pharaoh would have nothing to do with Moses and Aaron. So God told them:

**“Go to Pharaoh in the morning, as he is going out to the water. Stand on the bank of the Nile to meet him... And you shall say to him, ‘The LORD, the God of the Hebrews, sent me to you, saying, “Let my people go... But so far, you have not obeyed.”’**

**Thus says the LORD, “By this you shall know that I am the LORD... I will strike the water that is in the Nile, and it shall turn into blood. The fish in the Nile shall die, and the Nile will stink, and the Egyptians will grow weary of drinking water from the Nile.””**

Exodus 7:15–18 ESV

And that’s exactly what happened. God struck right at the heart of the Egyptian religion by making one of their gods, the Nile, turn to blood.

God made their god stink. He made the river abhorrent to them! But...

...Pharaoh's heart became hard; he would not listen to Moses and Aaron ... and did not take even this to heart.

Exodus 7:22–23 NIV

## **GOD VERSUS GODS**

And so a cycle began. God would warn Pharaoh to let the Israelites go; Pharaoh would say NO; and God would bring a plague, each one targeting another of the Egyptian gods.

First the Nile was turned to **blood**.

Then God sent a scourge of **frogs**—in every nook and cranny. In food, in beds—everywhere.

This was followed by swarms of aggressive **gnats**.<sup>2</sup>

**Flies** supplanted the gnats.

Then an epidemic struck the **cattle**—they all died.

After that, the people were tormented with festering **boils**.

Then a massive **hail** storm ravaged their crops.

What the hail left behind was devoured by a horde of **locusts**.

Finally, the true God struck at the false god, the sun, with a curse of darkness so thick it could be felt.

## THE TENTH PLAGUE

In all, God sent ten plagues—the last and most devastating one was yet to come. God spoke to Moses and Aaron:

The LORD said to Moses, “I will bring one more plague on Pharaoh and on Egypt; after that he will release you from this place. When he releases you, he will drive you out completely from this place.”

Moses said, “Thus says the LORD: ‘About midnight I will go throughout Egypt, and all the firstborn in the land of Egypt will die, from the firstborn son of Pharaoh who sits on his throne, to the firstborn son of the slave girl who is at her hand mill...’”

Exodus 11:1,4–5 NET

The last plague was indeed the worst, falling on Egyptians and Israelites alike if they did not follow God’s instructions. God, as a just God, was bringing judgment on sin, but as a God of love, he was also mercifully providing a way of escape.

## Take a lamb...

The LORD said to Moses and Aaron in the land of Egypt...“the tenth day of this month they each must take a lamb for themselves according to their families—a lamb for each household.” Exodus 12:1,3 NET

A male, without blemish. It couldn't be deformed or defective in any way. God was asking for a perfect lamb.

“The animal you select must be a one-year-old male, either a sheep or a goat, with no defects.” Exodus 12:5 NLT

## Kill the lamb at the appointed time.

“Take special care of this chosen animal until the evening of the fourteenth day of this first month. Then the whole assembly of the community of Israel must slaughter their lamb or young goat at twilight.” Exodus 12:6 NLT

## Apply the blood to the door posts and the lintel.

“They will take some of the blood and put it on the two side posts and top of the doorframe of the houses where they will eat it.” Exodus 12:7 NET

Stay inside the house until morning.

**“None of you shall go out of the door of his house until the morning.”**

Exodus 12:22 ESV

Do not break any of the bones.

**“Each Passover lamb must be eaten in one house. Do not carry any of its meat outside, and do not break any of its bones.”**

Exodus 12:46 NLT



I will pass over.

“On that same night I will pass through Egypt and strike down every firstborn—both men and animals—and I will bring judgment on all the gods of Egypt. I am the LORD.

The blood will be a sign for you on the houses where you are; and when I see the blood, I will pass over you. No destructive plague will touch you when I strike Egypt.”

Exodus 12:12–13 NIV

When God came in judgment to kill the firstborn, He would pass over every house where the blood was applied.

So the people of Israel did just as the LORD had commanded through Moses and Aaron.

Exodus 12:28 NLT

Their obedience was outward evidence that they trusted God, believing what he said was true.

### **CONSIDER**

You can imagine what would have happened if a fellow had reasoned to himself: “This is ridiculous, killing the best lamb. I have an old cripple, it will do.”

Or, if one called to his friends, “Hey guys, it’s a beautiful night. Let’s have our party outside.”

Or, if another said, “No way am I going to mess up my door posts with blood—gross! I’ll dump it on the ground outside the back door.”

Would God have passed over? Obviously not. They may have done it with the best of intentions, but they would not be following God’s instructions. They would be **doing their own thing**—just like Cain, and the people of Noah’s day. The LORD would judge them along with the Egyptians because they refused to trust him. They would be getting just what they deserved.

On the other hand, what if an Egyptian happened by, and heard that God was going to send a final plague? And that Egyptian got to thinking: “You know, our gods are false. The Israelites worship the only true God. I want that God to be my God. What does the LORD require of me?” And then that same Egyptian, putting his faith solely in God, followed the instructions for the Passover. Would God **pass over** his house that night? Would he escape punishment? Yes, he would—because he believed the LORD and was coming to God in

God's way. His faith would be honoured by God who would extend to him grace and mercy.

And that night at midnight, the LORD struck down all the firstborn sons in the land of Egypt, from the firstborn son of Pharaoh, who sat on his throne, to the firstborn son of the prisoner in the dungeon. Even the firstborn of their livestock were killed. Pharaoh and all his officials and all the people of Egypt woke up during the night, and loud wailing was heard throughout the land of Egypt. There was not a single house where someone had not died.

Pharaoh sent for Moses and Aaron during the night. "Get out!" he ordered. "Leave my people—and take the rest of the Israelites with you! Go and worship the LORD as you have requested. Take your flocks and herds, as you said, and be gone. Go, but bless me as you leave." All the Egyptians urged the people of Israel to get out of the land as quickly as possible, for they thought, "We will all die!"

On that very day the LORD brought the people of Israel out of the land of Egypt... Exodus 12:29–33,51 NLT

## **GOD KEEPS HIS WORD**

God had been gracious with Pharaoh. He had given him many chances to let the Israelites go, but Pharaoh had continued to refuse. God said he would judge the Egyptians, and he did just that. God is not like us. We may threaten to discipline our children, but may never follow through. But God always keeps His Word. The Egyptians were judged.

On the other hand, the Israelites experienced the LORD'S kindness because they believed him. When he came in judgment, wherever he saw the blood applied, he passed over. The firstborn lived—but only because a lamb died. It had been this way from the very beginning. God had accepted Abel's sacrifice as a death payment in Abel's place. When Abraham offered Isaac as a sacrifice, the ram died in Isaac's place. Now with the Passover, the lamb died in the place of the firstborn.

These substitutionary sacrifices were visible statements of each person's trust in God as their Saviour. Because they believed the LORD, they obeyed him.

This feast was to become a tradition for the Israelites. Every year they were to eat the Passover as a reminder of how God had delivered them from slavery.

**"This is a day to remember. Each year, from generation to generation, you must celebrate it as a special festival to the LORD."**

Exodus 12:14 NLT

And so the Israelites were freed from their bondage and thrust out of the land by their former masters. God had kept his promise—it happened just the way he had said it would.



# CHAPTER EIGHT

**1 BREAD, QUAIL AND WATER**

**2 TEN RULES**

**3 THE COURTROOM**

# 1 BREAD, QUAIL AND WATER

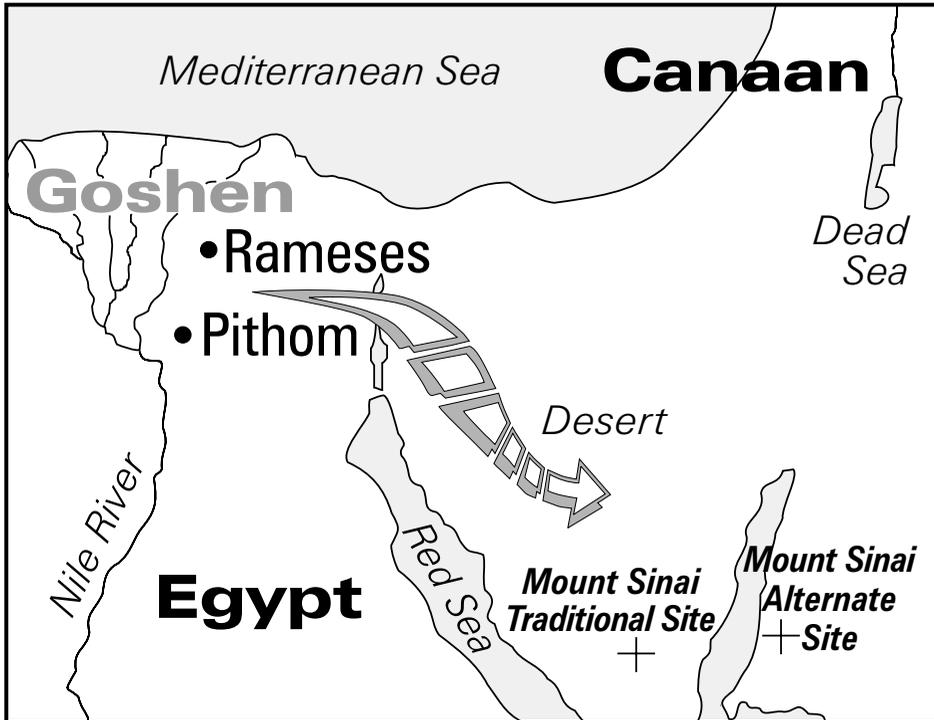
The Israelites were a disheveled crowd as they started off on their long journey. The Egyptians sped their departure by loading them down with valuables and, with no time to pack in an orderly fashion, they left in a mighty rush, driving their livestock before them. Multiply those factors with their approximate number—2 ½ million—and you have confusion! Moses was the leader, but how do you yell, “This way!” to such a multitude? God solved the dilemma.

**And the LORD went before them by day in a pillar of cloud to lead them along the way, and by night in a pillar of fire to give them light, that they might travel by day and by night.** Exodus 13:21 ESV

With a trailblazing beacon, all were able to organize themselves immediately. All they had to do was look ahead and follow the special cloud, trusting the LORD to guide them. They could even travel at night, courtesy of God’s pillar of fire. This was crowd-control on a grand scale!

**God did not lead them on the road through the Philistine country, though**

that was shorter. For God said, “If they face war, they might change their minds and return to Egypt.” So God led the people around by the desert road toward the Red Sea. Exodus 13:17,18 NIV



God was watching out for the Israelites. He led them out into the Sinai wilderness where virtually no one lived. This desolate wasteland was devoid of enemies, but there was also very little food. So the people let loose with a massive grumble session.

Then the whole congregation of the children of Israel complained against Moses and Aaron in the wilderness. And the children of Israel said to them, "Oh, that we had died by the hand of the LORD in the land of Egypt, when we sat by the pots of meat and when we ate bread to the full! For you have brought us out into this wilderness to kill this whole assembly with hunger."

Exodus 16:2-3 NKJV

The people complained and even wanted to return to slavery. Their cynical attitude towards God's provision was saddening, for the LORD had shown vigilant care for them and he wasn't about to abandon them. They should have asked God for food, for he wanted to be their provider. But no, they grumbled!

### **BREAD AND QUAIL**

And the Lord said to Moses, "I have heard the grumbling of the people of Israel. Say to them, 'At twilight you shall eat meat, and in the morning you shall be filled with bread. Then you shall know that I am the Lord your God.'"

In the evening quail came up and covered the camp, and in the morning dew lay around the camp. And when the dew had gone up, there was on the face of the wilderness a fine, flake-like thing, fine as frost on the ground. When the people of Israel saw it, they said to one another, \**“What is it?”* For they did not know what it was. And Moses said to them, *“It is the bread that the Lord has given you to eat.”*

Exodus 16:11–15 ESV

\* *What is it?* is a literal rendering of the word *manna*. Some translations use the word *manna*.

God provided them with meat and bread and they didn't even have to work for it. Every day the bread was available to be gathered and every day they would be reminded: **it is God who provides.** They must have felt a little embarrassed for having griped in the first place. God was teaching the Israelites yet another lesson.

## **A SIMPLE LESSON**

The bread had a purpose greater than food. God said ...

**"I will test them in this to see whether or not they will follow my instructions."**

Exodus 16:4 NLT

God told Moses to tell the people to gather only as much bread as they could eat in one day. It was an easy instruction...

**But they did not listen to Moses; some kept part of it until morning, and it was full of worms and began to stink, and Moses was angry with them.**

Exodus 16:20 NET

It was a simple lesson and no one was hurt, but through it the people learned that the LORD meant what he said and was to be trusted. Disobedience was fraught with hazards.

## **GRIPING**

**At the LORD's command, the whole community of Israel left the wilderness of Sin and moved from place to place. Eventually they camped at Rephidim, but there was no water there for the people to drink. So once more the people complained against Moses. "Give us water to drink!... Why did you bring us out**

of Egypt? Are you trying to kill us, our children, and our livestock with thirst?"

Then Moses cried out to the LORD, "What should I do with these people? They are ready to stone me!" Exodus 17:1-4 NLT

So much for learning from past mistakes. The people were back in the grumble and gripe mode, only this time it had to do with water.

Then the LORD said to Moses, "Pass before the people and take with you some of the elders of Israel; and take in your hand your staff... I will stand before you there on the rock at Horeb; and you shall strike the rock, and water will come out of it, that the people may drink."

And Moses did so in the sight of the elders of Israel. Exodus 17:5-6 NASB

## **W**ATER

On occasion you see an artist's rendition of this miracle. Moses is portrayed as standing by a rock holding his staff, and a little stream of water about the size you'd expect from your kitchen faucet is spurting out onto the ground. The truth of the matter is, there must have

been quite a gush. There was a vast throng of thirsty people to water, plus all their livestock. This was not a trickle, but a mighty torrent! The Bible says:

**He opened the rock, and water gushed out;  
it flowed through the desert like a river.**

Psalm 105:41 ESV

Again, the LORD provided for the people's needs even though they really didn't deserve it. God, as their Creator-Owner, could have cracked the whip; told them to sit up and behave themselves. After all, sin does have consequences. But God was patient and gentle. He showed them grace—undeserved kindness. As a sinner, man does not deserve God's gracious love, but God cares for man in spite of his sin.

## **2 TEN RULES**

The LORD had said that the Israelites were His people, and as such, they were to be an example to the rest of the world of God's relationship to man and man's relationship to God. But the Israelites had a lot to learn about the LORD. God's process of revealing himself was continuing, and the next major revelation of his character was about to begin.

In the third month after the Israelites left Egypt...they entered the Desert of Sinai, and Israel camped there...in front of the mountain.

Then Moses went up to God, and the LORD called to him from the mountain and said, "This is what you are to say to...the people of Israel: 'You yourselves have seen what I did to Egypt, and how I carried you on eagles' wings and brought you to myself. Now if you obey me fully and keep my covenant, then out of all nations you will be my treasured possession. Although the whole earth is mine, you will be for me a kingdom of priests and a holy nation.' These are the words you are to speak to the Israelites."

Exodus 19:1-6 NIV

### **IF... THEN**

In simple terms God was saying, "If you obey me, then you will be accepted by me, and you will be a statement to all the other nations of what I am like." The one condition—the big catch phrase was, "if you obey me, then..."

So far the Israelites had a miserable track record. They gathered more bread than they needed,

even when the LORD clearly told them not to. They grumbled rather than trusted. An honest response to God's words would have gone like this: "God, we are failures at following your word. You are holy and we are sinful. If you are looking for us to be holy priests—if you are going to accept us on the basis of how well we obey You—we're in trouble!"

### **No Problem**

But when Moses gathered all the people together and asked them how they felt about God's declaration, he received an enthusiastic green light.

**...and all the people answered together,  
"All that the LORD has commanded we  
will do!" So Moses brought the words  
of the people back to the LORD.**

Exodus 19:8 NET

They all echoed with a hearty, "Sure God, anything you ask us is fine. We will make great priests. Holiness is no problem either. We will make the best holy nation you have ever seen. We can do it!" Well, maybe that is a little exaggerated, but you get the idea. The truth of the matter was that man, at this time, could

not fully understand holiness or righteousness, so God was going to spell it out in detail.

## **VISUAL AIDS**

The lesson started with some visual aids.

**Then the LORD said to Moses, "Go to the people and consecrate them today and tomorrow, and let them wash their clothes. And let them be ready for the third day. For on the third day the LORD will come down upon Mount Sinai in the sight of all the people."**

Exodus 19:10–11 NKJV

God told Moses they were to be **consecrated**, or separated. This visual aid helped Israel realize the need to be **untouched** by sin. The washing of their clothes demonstrated cleanliness or purity before the LORD. In themselves, these actions had no intrinsic value, but they helped the people to understand that spiritual purity was an important aspect of righteousness.

God wasn't done with his visual aids. He told Moses to...

**"Mark off a boundary all around the mountain. Warn the people, 'Be careful! Do**

not go up on the mountain or even touch its boundaries. Anyone who touches the mountain will certainly be put to death.”

Exodus 19:12 NLT

The boundary line was a graphic picture of the separation that exists between God and man because of sin. Man was warned not to approach God, for he is holy, and sinful man cannot live in his presence. It was a reminder that death is the consequence of sin.



On the morning of the third day there was thunder and lightning, with a thick cloud over the mountain, and a very loud trumpet blast. Everyone in the camp trembled. Then Moses led the people out of the camp to meet with God, and they stood at the foot of the mountain.

Mount Sinai was covered with smoke, because the LORD descended on it in fire... Then Moses spoke and the voice of God answered him. Exodus 19:16–19 NIV

God’s final visual aids were frighteningly impressive—thunder, lightning, a thick cloud, the blast of a loud trumpet, smoke and fire. All the

people shook! As sinful people, man had good reason to tremble in the presence of a holy God. The LORD was getting his point across.

In the next few minutes, man would make a quantum leap in the available knowledge of what God was like. God was about to define what he meant by the words **holy** and **righteous**. It was like the LORD was saying, "You have seen with your own eyes that I am a God who cares for you. Now I have never done this before—I've never laid things out so clearly before—but if you will obey the ten rules that I will give you, then you will be a holy people—a special people with a special relationship, belonging just to me. You will know how to live together in a pleasing and orderly fashion. All other nations will be able to see that fact."<sup>1</sup>

Then God spoke:



### Rule #1

**"I am the LORD your God ... You shall have no other gods before Me."**

Exodus 20:2-3 NASB

The LORD was telling man not to worship anyone or anything else. The reason given was clear:

**“I am the LORD, and there is no other;  
Besides Me there is no God.”**

Isaiah 45:5 NASB

There was only one God to be honoured. It wasn't just a matter of trusting a god, it had to be the God—the true God. Those who desired to be righteous must only worship the LORD.

People often feel comfortable thinking that they have kept this rule because they do not worship a pagan god. But the implication of the command is this: If family, status, work, appearance, money, recreation, retirement or anything else is more important to you than God, then you have broken this command.



## Rule #2

**“You shall not make for yourself an idol in the form of anything in heaven above or on the earth beneath or in the waters below. You shall not bow down to them or worship them...”**

Exodus 20:4–5 NIV

The first rule said we should not worship another god. In the second command, man was directed not to worship an image or idol of **any** god, whether it be true or false. God didn't even want mankind bowing down to images, icons, or pictures which represented himself. Since the LORD is a spirit, there is no need for man to form a physical image of him. No man-made image is worthy of worship—only the true God is.

**“I am the LORD; that is my name! I will not give my glory to anyone else, nor share my praise with carved idols.”**

Isaiah 42:8 NLT

Another of God's requirements for holiness—to be accepted by the Creator God—was that one must not worship any image or picture of him or his creation.



### Rule #3

**“You must not misuse the name of the LORD your God. The LORD will not let you go unpunished if you misuse his name.”** Exodus 20:7 NLT

God was telling man that He should always be respected. As the Sovereign God, even his name

is not to be used lightly. As the Judge of all the earth, he deserves reverence. As King, he is worthy of our utmost honor. Rule # 3 was clear. To be righteous, one must also esteem the Most High God.

Our culture is permeated with disrespect for God. At every turn he is treated flippantly and his name is used as a verbal punctuation mark. If you have ever used God's name as a swear word, then you have broken this command.



#### Rule #4

**“Remember the Sabbath day, to keep it holy. Six days you shall labor, and do all your work, but the seventh day is a Sabbath to the LORD your God. On it you shall not do any work...”**

Exodus 20:8-10 ESV

God was telling the Israelites that they were to keep the seventh day, Saturday, as a rest day. This special day would show the rest of

the world that God had established a distinct relationship with them. The Bible says:

**“Say to the Israelites, ‘You must observe my Sabbaths. This will be a sign between me and you for the generations to come, so you may know that I am the LORD, who makes you holy.’”**

Exodus 31:13 NIV

God wanted the Israelites to know that to be holy they must honor the Sabbath as a special sign of distinction.



### **Rule #5**

**“Honor your father and your mother ...”**

Exodus 20:12 ESV

In this command, God said that children should esteem their parents. God says that the normal family should be a place of peace, not hostility. Children are to be respectful and obedient. In this context, parents are assumed to be looking out for the best interests of their family.

God was telling all children that holiness demands that they have an honourable relationship with their parents. The LORD wanted families to be places of order and respect, not chaos and anger.

Talking back, ignoring, arguing, pouting, the silent treatment, criticism—all are ways of being disrespectful.



## Rule #6

**“You shall not murder.”**

Exodus 20:13 ESV

God had given life to man, and so it was wrong for one man to take the life of another. But the LORD had more than the action of murder in mind. He was also targeting the intent behind the action.

The Bible tells us that...

**God ...judges the thoughts and attitudes of the heart.**

**... Nothing in all creation is hidden from God’s sight. Everything is uncovered and laid bare before the eyes of him to whom we must give account.**

Hebrews 4:12–13 NIV

Because God looks on the heart, he interprets murder on a much broader plane than we do. The LORD considers certain types of anger as murder.

**“You have heard that it was said to the people long ago, ‘Do not murder, and anyone who murders will be subject to judgment.’**

**But I tell you that anyone who is angry with his brother will be subject to judgment... anyone who says, ‘You fool!’ will be in danger of the fire of hell.”**

Matthew 5:21–22 NIV

To meet God’s standard of righteousness, one must not lose his temper, or be angry without just cause.



### **Rule #7**

**“You shall not commit adultery.”**

Exodus 20:14 ESV

God was saying that the only acceptable time to have sex is after you are married, and the only rightful person to share that intimacy with is your marriage partner.

But then the LORD goes one step further. Because he looks at the heart, he knows when someone has sinful thoughts.

**“You have heard that it was said, ‘You shall not commit adultery.’ But I say**

to you that everyone who looks at a woman with lustful intent has already committed adultery with her in his heart.”

Matthew 5:27,28 ESV

To look at someone to whom you are not married with the desire to have sex, means you have broken this law. To be holy means one must have a pure mind as well as pure actions.



### Rule #8

**“You shall not steal.”**

Exodus 20:15 ESV

God does not want anyone to take things that belong to others. God is the one who gives each person the right to own property. To steal is to disobey the LORD, and one who has stolen cannot be considered righteous.

Theft includes cheating—whether on an exam or on taxes.



### Rule #9

**“You shall not give false testimony against your neighbor.”**

Exodus 20:16 NET

Man should always be honest, for God will have no part in deceitfulness. Earlier we saw that Satan is a liar, that by his very nature he is deceitful. But God is the direct opposite. Truth comes from God's nature—it's his very essence. He is the...

**... God, who cannot lie ...** Titus 1:2 NKJV

When the LORD tells us something, we can count on it being true, because...

**...it is impossible for God to lie ...**

Hebrews 6:18 NASB

Because God is true, to him all lying is a defiant slap in the face. Satan is the father of lies, and anyone who tells a lie is following Satan's agenda. False accusations, slander, libel, gossip—all of these are sinful according to his law.



### **Rule #10**

**"You shall not covet your neighbor's house; you shall not covet your neighbor's wife or his male servant or his female servant or his ox or his donkey or anything that belongs to your neighbor."**

Exodus 20:17 NASB

Man must not envy other people's possessions, their abilities, their looks, or whatever they may have.

Satan had said, **"I will be like the Most High,"** coveting God's position. To covet, to be greedy or jealous, is sin and totally unacceptable to the LORD. It's the path that Satan followed.

In our society we **bump** the parameters of this law all the time. It's very subtle. Many have a craving to upgrade, a **keep-up-with-the-Jones'** mentality. We are told we **deserve** it, which is an appeal to our pride—another sin.

### **Now I Know**

So the giving of the ten commands was concluded. God had them written on stone, probably to signify that his law does not change. Over the process of time, man might convince himself that cheating was okay, but the Law would still say it was wrong.

Now man knew what the LORD considered to be sin. One of the biblical writers reflecting on this truth wrote...

Indeed I would not have known what sin was except through the law. For I would not have known what coveting really was if the law had not said, "Do not covet."

Romans 7:7 NIV

But questions remained. Just how strict was God about following these rules? Would it be acceptable if a person broke one occasionally? What did God expect?



### 3 THE COURTROOM

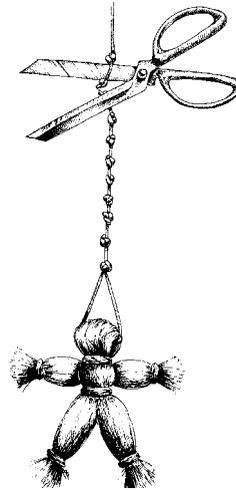
The Ten Commandments might be thought vague unless one knows **how** and **when** the rules need to be obeyed. Are there any exceptions? Suppose a person had committed adultery sometime in the past. Would God hold that against him forever? What would a perfect lawgiver expect?

To begin with, God tells us that to be accepted by him, we must keep all ten of the commandments—every one of them!

**I testify again to every man...that he is obligated to obey the whole law.<sup>2</sup>**

Galatians 5:3 NET

We can't pick four and ignore the rest. God is very specific. We are required to obey **all** of them. Not only that, but...



Breaking the Law is like cutting a string with ten knots. You only have to cut one knot for the whole string to be broken. In the same way, you only have to break one law to be guilty of violating God's entire standard of right and wrong.

**... the one who obeys the whole law but fails in one point has become guilty of all of it.**

James 2:10 NET

If we disobey just one command—only ONCE—it's like we have violated all of them. We are no longer perfect. God cannot accept us into his holy presence.

The LORD is utterly perfect in his holiness, and he can only accept those who are perfect in their righteousness. **Man's righteousness must equal God's righteousness** or the relationship cannot be restored.

Not only must we keep the whole Law, but God holds us accountable for all sin, even the sin of which we are not aware.

**If a person sins and does what is forbidden in any of the LORD's commands, even though he does not know it, he is guilty and will be held responsible.**

Leviticus 5:17 NIV

On one occasion I was teaching this subject to a young couple. As I reached this point in the lesson, the fellow banged his fist on the table and swore. (His girlfriend pointed out to him that he had just broken one of God's laws by misusing

God's name. It was bad timing!) He said, "God is not fair! If this is the only way I can be accepted by God, he's made it impossible. There is no way I can keep that list of rules perfectly!" His frustration was very evident.

### **THE KNOWLEDGE OF SIN**

God knew that man could not keep this list of rules flawlessly. It was no surprise to him. His intention in giving the Ten Commandments is clear.

**Now we know that whatever the law says, it says ... that every mouth may be stopped [or silenced], and all the world may become guilty [or accountable] before God.**

Romans 3:19 NKJV

This verse is saying two things:

1. The Law silences those who say their lives are good enough to be accepted by God. No one can candidly study these ten rules without sensing their sinfulness.
2. The ten commands show us that we are indeed law-breakers. In the beginning man had been God's friend, innocent of all evil. But when Adam and Eve disobeyed God's instructions, God laid aside the mantle of friendship and

donned the magistrate's cloak. Now, instead of God being a friend of man, He was a judge, summoning man to the courtroom bench. No lawyer rose to defend man's cause. None could. No advocate, no matter how clever, could lead the court into thinking that the condemned was anything but what he was. There would be no hung jury. No bribes. The perfect Judge spoke. The verdict was in. Man was GUILTY of breaking God's Law.



GUILTY

Therefore no one will be declared righteous in his sight by observing the law; rather, through the law we become conscious of sin.

Romans 3:20 NIV

The purpose of the ten laws is to make us aware or conscious that we are sinners. It shows us God's holiness and our sinfulness. It's a simple measure of what's right and what's wrong. The Ten Commandments are like a thermometer—it can show us that we are sick, but it does not contribute to making us better.

## **A MIRROR**

In many ways, the Ten Commandments are to us as a mirror is to a dirty face. If you are alone,

you can't tell whether or not your face is clean. Someone could point at you and say, "Your face is dirty," but you could deny it outright and say, "My face isn't dirty—I don't see anything!" and you might truly believe that. But if given a mirror, you could see that your face was indeed grimy and you would no longer be able to deny the fact. Your mouth would be **silenced**. You would realize you were **guilty** of having a dirty face.

It's the same way with sin. We did not really know what sin was until God gave us the Law. Just as the mirror exposed the dirt, so the ten rules made us aware of sin.

The ten commands were **not** given as a list of rules to keep in order to make us right with God. That wasn't the Law's purpose. It would be like trying to rub the dirt off your face with a mirror! Mirrors are designed for reflecting, not cleaning. In fact, there's a good chance that, in the process of trying to clean yourself with the mirror, you would smudge the glass, thus hampering its ability to give a clear reflection. People who try to be accepted by God by keeping the Ten Commandments usually modify or minimize the commands so that they will not look so bad.

## GOD'S VIEWPOINT

There is another way of looking at this. Remember how we compared our view of a maggot-infested rat to God's viewpoint on sin? Well, trying to please the LORD by keeping the Ten Commandments is comparable to spraying perfume on the rotten rat—it doesn't make it any more appealing to us. **The rat is still rotten.** In the same way, keeping the Ten Commandments doesn't make us any more acceptable to God. **We're still sinners.**

This brings us back to the reason for the ten commands. God gave the Law ...

**...so that through the commandment  
sin would become utterly sinful.**

Romans 7:13 NASB

God wants us to see all sin, big or small, the way he sees it—utterly sinful, totally destructive, grossly offensive, thoroughly repulsive, appalling, malignant, filthy. He wants us to comprehend that his purity far exceeds any righteousness we might achieve on our own. He wants us to understand that even at the best of times, **our goodness is not equal to his holiness.** It doesn't even come close.

Until this time a man could have boasted that God loved him more than another, because he thought himself to be a better person. But with the giving of the Law, God was bringing everyone to the point of realizing that...

**Surely I was sinful at birth, sinful from the time my mother conceived me.**

Psalm 51:5 NIV

Now, not only could man know his true sinfulness, but he could catch a glimpse of the LORD'S perfection. God'S holiness—his righteousness—was beyond man'S reach, unattainable. The chasm caused by sin was wider than man expected. Because no one could keep the Law perfectly, the Law could not bridge the gap.



## TWO GROUPS

The Israelites' reaction to the first reading of the Ten Commandments undoubtedly reflects the thinking of many people today. The Bible says that all the Israelites shook with fear, but probably the great majority were only terrified by the thunder and lightning. They were caught up in the externals, alarmed only by the tremendous display of power. As for the ten rules, they missed the point—they felt they could obey them just fine. So do many people today. They focus on obeying the commands and miss their purpose.

On the other hand, there were those Israelites who had just gained a deep awareness of God's righteousness. They now knew what God meant when He said holiness equals sinlessness. They feared too, but for another reason. They knew they could never keep such a set of laws perfectly.

For whatever reason, the Bible says the Israelites trembled.

**Then they said to Moses, "Speak to us yourself and we will listen; but let not God speak to us, or we will die."**

Exodus 20:19 NASB

Now the LORD said to Moses, "Come up to Me on the mountain and remain there, and I will give you the stone tablets with the law and the commandment which I have written for their instruction."

Exodus 24:12 NASB

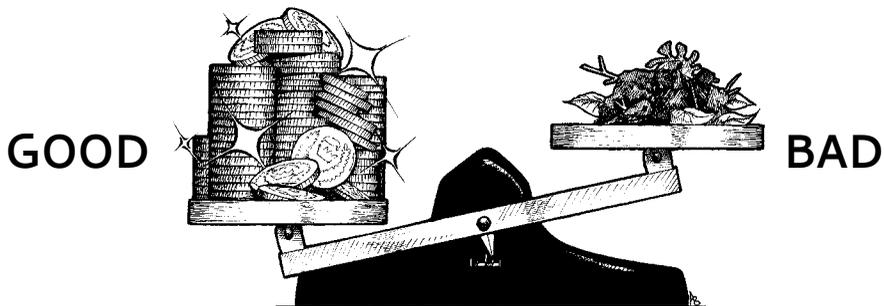
The Ten Commandments were now in force and the Israelites were accountable to keep them as a moral standard. But for those who were honest with themselves, they now knew that if they were going to be accepted by God, they would have to come another way.

## WHAT KIND ARE YOU?

Most people will agree that they are sinners. However, few will readily admit that they are **helpless sinners**. There is a big difference.

- ❖ Sinners believe that there is something they can do to make themselves acceptable to God. They may believe that God wants them to observe the Ten Commandments, keep the Golden Rule, go to church, pray, be baptized, give to charity or be nice to their neighbors. They think that doing any one of these things will make them pleasing to God.

The notion that a person's **good** can outweigh his **bad**, and therefore merit God's acceptance, is totally foreign to the Bible. To do **good** is commendable, but the Bible teaches that none of these deeds can restore our broken relationship with God. We have a deep problem we can't get rid of—it's the **sin condition**.



## CONCEPT NOT FOUND IN THE BIBLE

- ❖ On the other hand, a **helpless sinner** knows there is nothing he can do to make himself acceptable to God. He cannot get rid of that dead rat of sin contaminating his life. The Bible says we are totally helpless.

All of us have become like one who is unclean, and all our righteous acts are like filthy rags; we all shrivel up like a leaf, and like the wind our sins sweep us away. Isaiah 64:6 NIV

Even our goodness falls far short of God's holiness. For illustrative purposes, one could say **all our righteous acts are like filthy rats**. Just as a rotten rat is repulsive to us, so all sin is offensive to a pure, holy God.

## THE TEN SUGGESTIONS?

The Ten Commandments are sometimes referred to as the Moral Law, as they are concerned with ethical and moral behavior.

Just because the Moral Law is unable to restore the broken relationship with God does not mean it is without value. Just as physical laws create order in the universe, so spiritual laws create order in a nation.

Many countries have rejected the biblical code of conduct at the risk of living in a morally-neutral society. No such society truly exists. No such civilization has ever survived. To take no stand is, in effect, to take a position.

The rejection of biblical absolutes has resulted in a callousness towards wrong, with each generation becoming more comfortable with sin. The Bible teaches that this will eventually lead to chaos.



# CHAPTER NINE

**1** TABERNACLE

**2** UNBELIEF

**3** JUDGES, KINGS AND PROPHETS

# 1 THE TABERNACLE

At Mount Sinai, the LORD revealed the impossibility of following rules to restore the broken friendship with God. Now the people were ready to learn God's way to acceptance.

**Then the LORD spoke to Moses, saying, "...let them make Me a sanctuary, that I may dwell among them."**

Exodus 25:1,8 NKJV

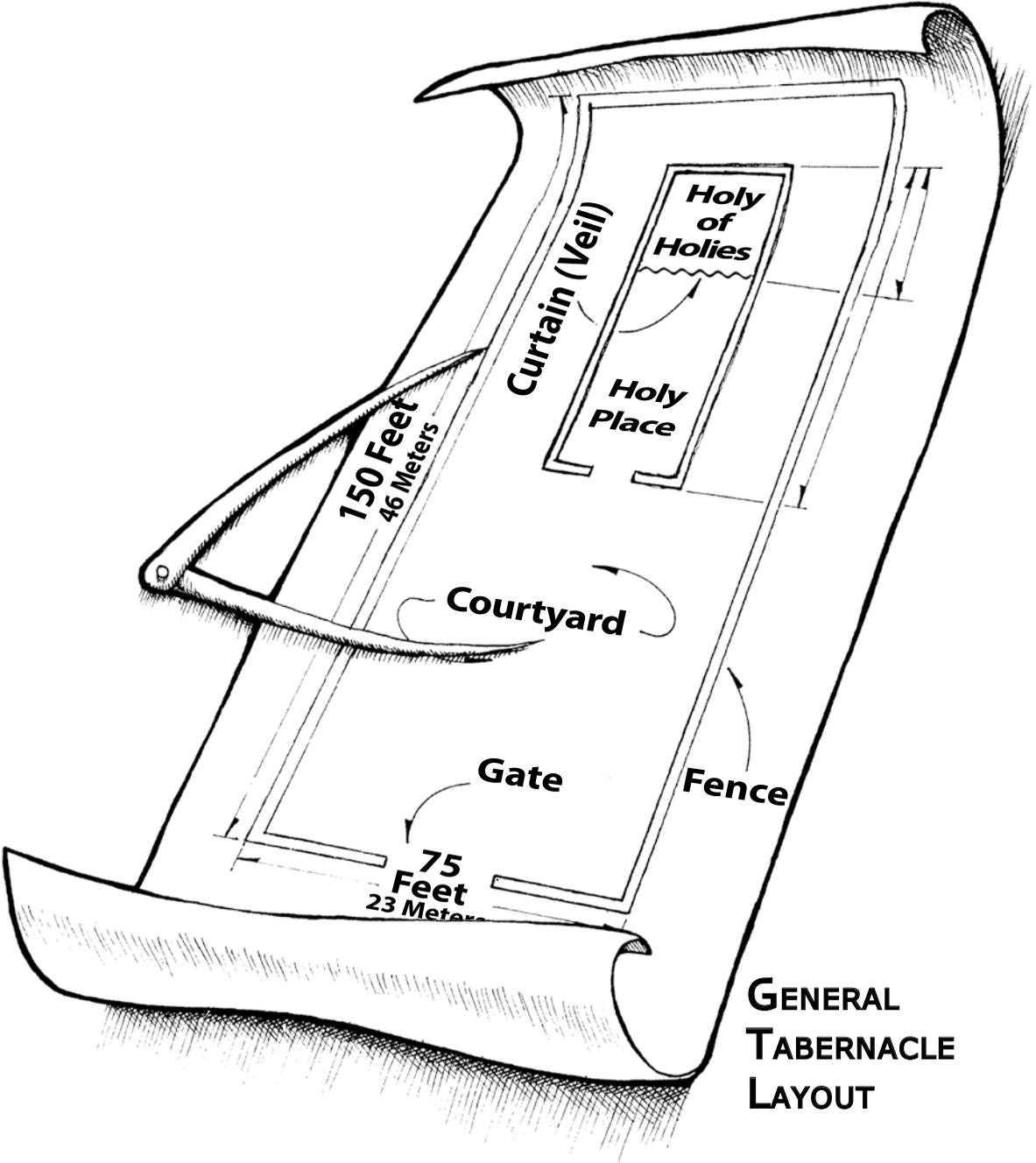
The Israelites were to build a sanctuary,\* a sacred place called the **Tabernacle** or the **tent of meeting**. God was not asking them to do this because he needed a house.

\* Not to be confused with a church. They are unrelated.

**The God who made the world and everything in it, who is Lord of heaven and earth, does not live in temples built by hands.**

Acts 17:24 NET

Rather, the LORD was creating an elaborate visual aid to help explain what it would take to remove the sin-penalty.



**GENERAL  
TABERNACLE  
LAYOUT**

**“You must make this Tabernacle and its furnishings exactly according to the plans I will show you.”**  
Exodus 25:9 NLT

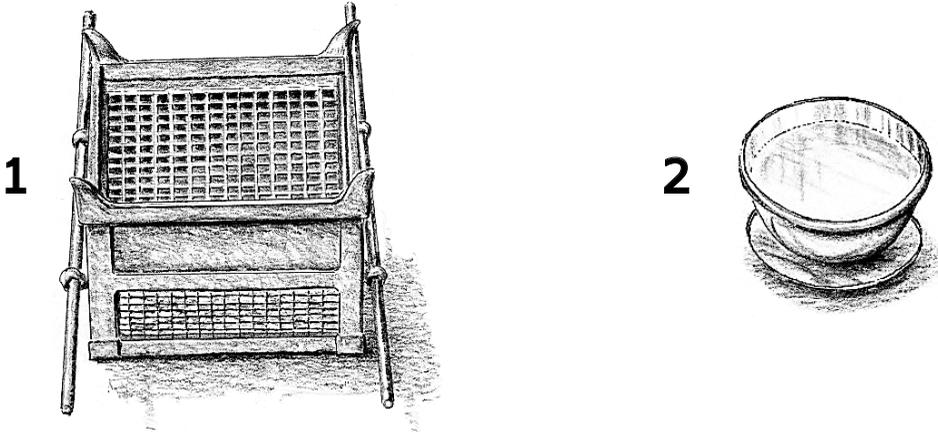
The Tabernacle could be disassembled and moved. The tent-like portion had solid walls with rug-like coverings for the roof. It was divided into two parts: one-third forming a room called the **Holy of Holies** or the **Most Holy Place**, and the other two-thirds forming the **Holy Place**. A heavy curtain, sometimes referred to as the **veil**, was used to ...

**...separate the Holy Place from the Most Holy Place.**  
Exodus 26:33 NLT

The Tabernacle was completed with an external courtyard which, in turn, was surrounded by a fence two metres (7 feet) in height. Access to the entire compound was gained through a single gate.

There were seven pieces of furniture inside the tent and outside in the courtyard.<sup>1</sup>

## THE COURTYARD



### 1. The Bronze Altar:

Just inside the courtyard gate was the first piece of furniture. It was quite large, made of wood overlaid with bronze, having four horns on the corners, and long poles on each side so that it could be carried.

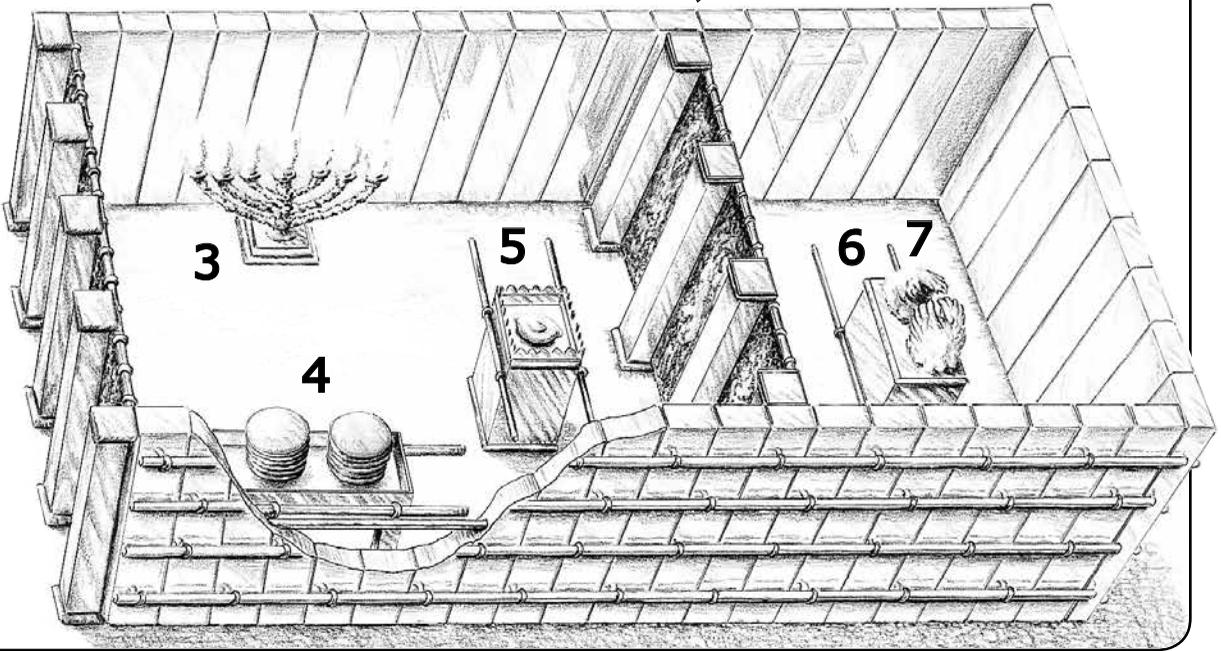
### 2. The Basin:

This large bronze bowl was situated halfway between the Bronze Altar and The Holy Place. Filled with water, it was used for ceremonial washing, and signified that man must be pure when he approached God.

## The Curtain (Veil)

THE HOLY PLACE

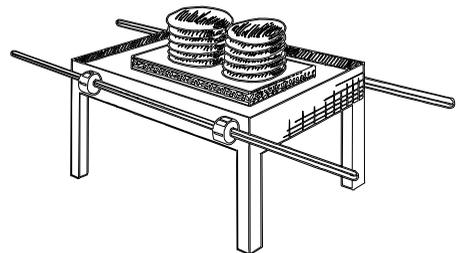
THE HOLY OF HOLIES

**3. The Lampstand:**

The size of the lampstand was not defined by God, but we know its shape. It had a main shaft branching into seven arms. The fact that it was made of pure gold undoubtedly limited its size.

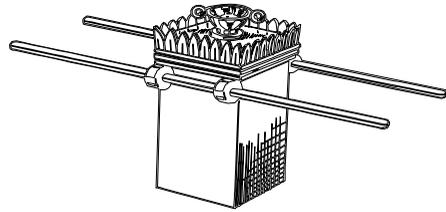
**4. The Table with the Bread:**

On this special table were placed twelve loaves of bread, each representing one of the tribes of Israel.



**5. The Altar of Incense:**

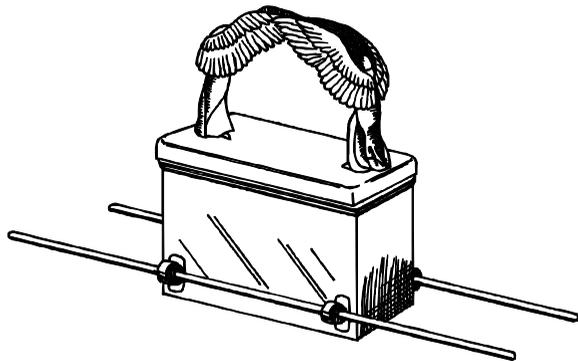
This altar was placed squarely before the curtain that divided The Holy of Holies from The Holy Place. Incense was offered on it as the Israelites gathered outside to pray. The scent wafting toward the sky was symbolic of prayers going up to God.



Incense was offered on it as the Israelites gathered outside to pray. The scent wafting toward the sky was symbolic of prayers going up to God.

**6. The Ark of the Covenant:**

This small wooden box overlaid with pure gold was designed in part to function as a chest. A couple of



of the objects it held are already familiar to us—the tablets with the Ten Commandments written on them and a pot containing a sample of the bread God was providing for them in the desert.

**7. The Atonement Cover:**

The Ark of the Covenant had an intricate gold lid or cover comprised of two angels with outstretched wings.

The Ark and its Atonement Cover were the only pieces of furniture placed in the Holy of Holies. God said ...

**“There, above the [atonement] cover between the two cherubim that are over the ark of the Testimony, I will meet with you and give you all my commands for the Israelites.”**

Exodus 25:22 NIV

## **THE PRIESTS**

**“Now take Aaron your brother, and his sons with him, from among the children of Israel, that he may minister to Me as priest ...”**

Exodus 28:1 NKJV

God asked Moses to appoint Aaron and his sons as **priests** in the Tabernacle with Aaron appointed as the **High Priest**. God set these men apart from the others, not because they were special in themselves, but because the LORD wanted the people to respect His holiness. God didn't want an unorganized rabble taking care of the Tabernacle. The priests were specially trained to perform God's instructions and they functioned as custodians, taking care of the Tabernacle as the nomadic Israelites moved from one place to another.

## **THE TABERNACLE COMPLETED**

The entire structure was finished nine months after the Israelites arrived at Mount Sinai.

**Then Moses looked over all the work, and indeed they had done it; as the LORD had commanded ...**

Exodus 39:43 NKJV

With the Tabernacle completed, the cloud that led the Israelites moved into position above the Holy of Holies. It signified God's presence in the midst of his people.

**Then the cloud covered the tent of meeting ... Moses was not able to enter the tent of meeting because the cloud settled on it and the glory of the LORD filled the tabernacle.**

Exodus 40:34–35 NET

## **THE VISUAL AID IMPLEMENTED**

With the Tabernacle in place, it was time to implement this large visual aid. God said to Moses ...

**"Speak to the Israelites and say to them: 'When any of you brings an offering to the LORD, bring as your offering an animal from either the herd or the flock ...'"**

Leviticus 1:2 NIV

God was telling man to bring a sacrifice to the Tabernacle.

It had to be “...from the herd...”

Leviticus 1:3 ESV

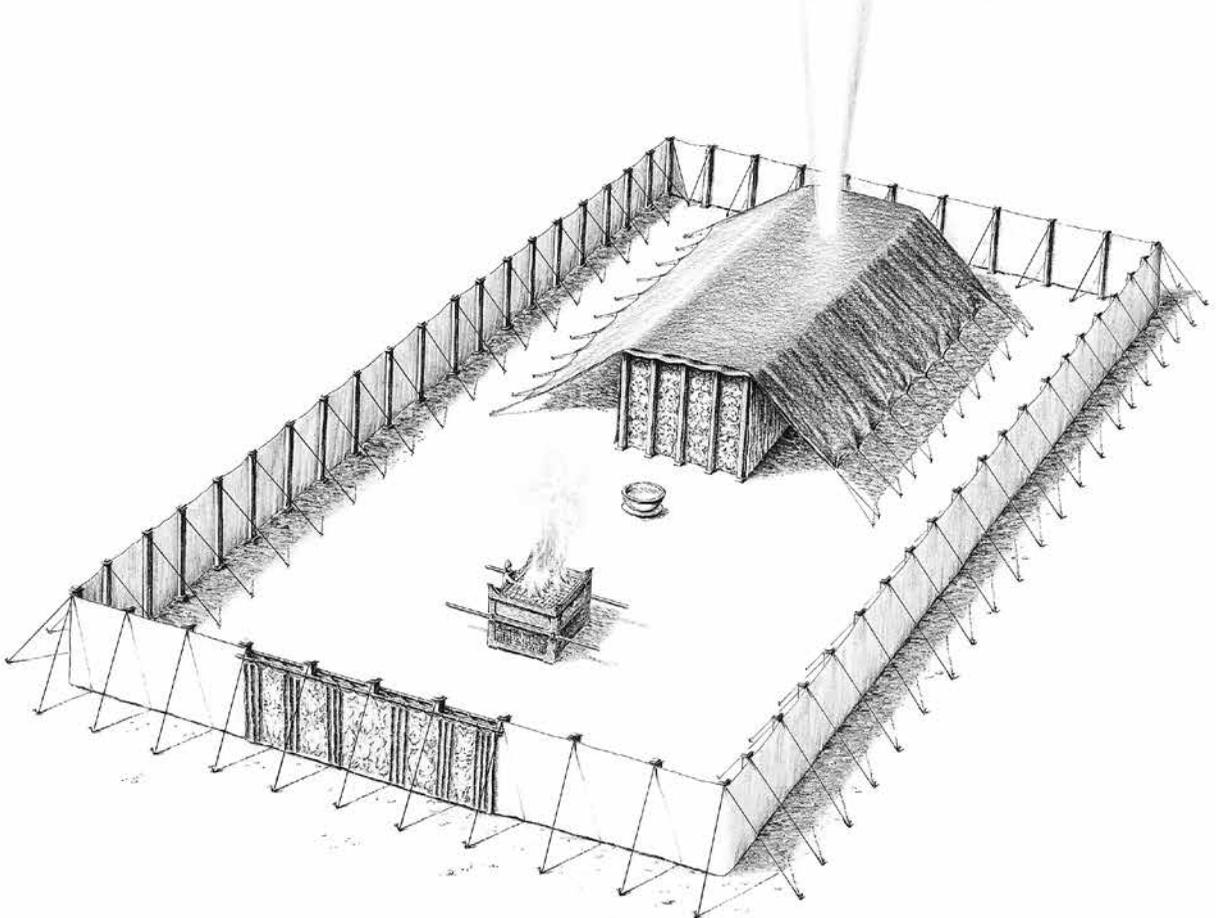
It could be a sheep, goat or bullock, but it could not be any other animal such as a pig, horse or camel.

They were to “...offer a male...”

Leviticus 1:3 ESV

It was to be “...without defect...”

Leviticus 1:3 ESV



There could be no disease nor lameness.

**“... He shall bring it to the entrance of the tent of meeting, that he may be accepted before the LORD.”**

Leviticus 1:3 ESV

The sacrifice was to be offered just inside the door of the courtyard on the Bronze Altar. In addition to acknowledging oneself as a helpless sinner, this was the first step in approaching God. The individual bringing it was...

**“...to lay his hand on the head of the burnt offering, and it [would] be accepted on his behalf to make atonement for him ...”**

Leviticus 1:4 NIV



In placing his hand on the head of the offering, the man identified himself with the sacrifice. The hand on the head symbolized the individual's sin and guilt being moved from the man onto the animal. Because the animal now carried the man's sin, it had to die. **Death is the penalty for sin.** The one offering the sacrifice slit its throat, a final acknowledgment that it was his sin that caused the death of the animal. It was a case of **the innocent dying in the place of the guilty**—as a substitute. The Bible says that God accepted the sacrifice on his behalf.

This must have sounded very familiar to the Israelites. Had not their forefathers come to God offering sacrifices? Indeed they had.

### **A RIGHTEOUS SAVIOUR**

Once again, the LORD was reminding his people that the only way to acceptance was to believe that he is...

**...A righteous God and a Savior ...**

Isaiah 45:21 NASB

In offering the animal sacrifice, the people were giving outward evidence of an inner trust in God—it showed they believed the LORD.

Because death is the penalty for sin, the sacrifice pictured what was necessary for sin to be forgiven.

**...without the shedding of blood there is no forgiveness.**

Hebrews 9:22 NET

**“For the life of a creature is in the blood, and I have given it to you to make atonement for yourselves on the altar; it is the blood that makes atonement for one’s life.”**

Leviticus 17:11 NIV

When God saw the death of the animal, he was satisfied that the requirement of the law of sin and death had been justly met—there had been a **death payment** for sin. God would not hold man’s sin-debt against him; man would not be judged; the eternal consequences would no longer apply. Instead, the LORD would honour the person’s trust in him and credit righteousness to his account, just as he had to Abraham.



DEBTOR

**“Abraham believed God, and it was credited to him as righteousness.”**

Romans 4:3 NET

Because that righteousness was coming from God, it fully provided man with the perfection needed to live in God's presence.

There was nothing new about this at all. It was the way that Abel, Noah, Abraham, Isaac, Jacob and all the other righteous men down through the ages had come to God.

### **THE DAY OF ATONEMENT**

In fulfilling their duties, the priests had complete freedom within the Tabernacle compound, with one exception. They were absolutely forbidden to enter the Holy of Holies.

The Holy of Holies was where God's presence symbolically lived with man. Sinful man wasn't even to peek into the room. The curtain that hung between the two rooms was thick, shielding all from an inquisitive eye. It protected the most sacred of all places. Even Aaron, as High Priest, was not to enter the Holy of Holies except on the Day of Atonement.<sup>2</sup>

**But only the high priest enters once a year into the inner tent, and not without**

blood that he offers for himself and for the sins of the people committed in ignorance. Hebrews 9:7 NET

Any violation of this instruction would result in his death.

**The LORD said to Moses: "Tell your brother Aaron not to come whenever he chooses into the Most Holy Place behind the curtain in front of the atonement cover on the ark, or else he will die, because I appear in the cloud over the atonement cover."** Leviticus 16:2 NIV

The Day of Atonement offering was a yearly ceremony, a constant reminder of man's need to have his sin hidden from the eyes of a holy God. This ceremony was repeated each year because, although God did not hold man's sin against him, the blood of animals did not remove the sin-debt. The blood was only a temporary covering.

The Tabernacle, the furniture, the priests, the sacrifices, the Day of Atonement—all were part of God's elaborate visual aid. These visuals helped to explain what the LORD was planning to do for mankind.

## 2 UNBELIEF

The Israelites were learning more and more about the LORD. God was faithfully providing them with food and water. The Bible tells us that God even made their shoes especially durable—they didn't wear out. The Israelites now had a moral code by which to live. Although observing the Ten Commandments did not result in acceptance with God, it did provide a standard of right living that united the nation. They knew what was right, and what was wrong. God had also shown his love by providing a way to be accepted—by faith—as evidenced through the blood sacrifice. You would think the Israelites would have been eternally grateful for all that the LORD was doing for them. If they were grateful, their outward actions didn't demonstrate it. They began to grumble—again.

In case we should take a self-righteous attitude and think that it was only the Israelites who were hardheaded, we must remember that we are made out of the same flesh and blood.

In a very real sense, the Israelites were functioning as representatives of the entire human race. As such they were becoming much better acquainted with God each year, but the knowledge they gained also brought additional responsibility. The Bible says...

**From everyone who has been given much, much will be required, and from the one who has been entrusted with much, even more will be asked.** Luke 12:48 NET

Collectively, the Israelites now knew more about God than any other nation on earth.

**Then they traveled from Mount Hor by the road to the Red Sea, to go around the land of Edom, but the people became impatient along the way. And the people spoke against God and against Moses, "Why have you brought us up out of Egypt to die in the wilderness, for there is no bread or water, and we detest this worthless food."** Numbers 21:4,5 NET

These accusations were not true—God, the Great Provider, was meeting their needs. But instead of thanking the LORD for his daily care, they accused

him of neglect. They ignored God's Law, telling lies and dishonouring his name.

As we have seen before, to break a law has consequences. Just as defying God's law of gravity results in fractured bones, so violating God's Moral Law has ramifications.

In the past, God had repeatedly \*overlooked their sin—he had been gracious. But the Israelites were no longer beginners in their relationship with their Creator-Owner. They had learned many things about God. They now knew the Ten Commandments and that knowledge made them accountable. God could not condone the people's sin and say, "Oh forget it. We'll pretend it never happened." No, sin has its consequences. It always does.

\* God only overlooks sin for a period of time. He does judge all sin. Compare Acts 17:30

**... the LORD sent poisonous snakes among the people, and many were bitten and died.**

Numbers 21:6 NLT

From the very beginning, God had said that sin would lead to death—physical, relational and

eternal. Now that truth was graphically illustrated as many died.

The Israelites were desperate and realized that only God could save them from his punishment. They were helpless.

**Then the people came to Moses and said, “We have sinned, for we have spoken against the LORD and against you. Pray to the LORD that he would take away the snakes from us.”**

Numbers 21:7 NET

God’s purpose in judgment is to bring about a change of attitude—a change of mind. In the Bible, this change is described by the word **repent**. Only during this life on earth can people repent and be heard by God. After physical death, when the sinner is facing judgment in the Lake of Fire, it is too late to have a **change of mind**.

The Israelites recognized that they had sinned, so they repented and asked God to deliver them. They were trusting God again.

**So Moses prayed for the people.**

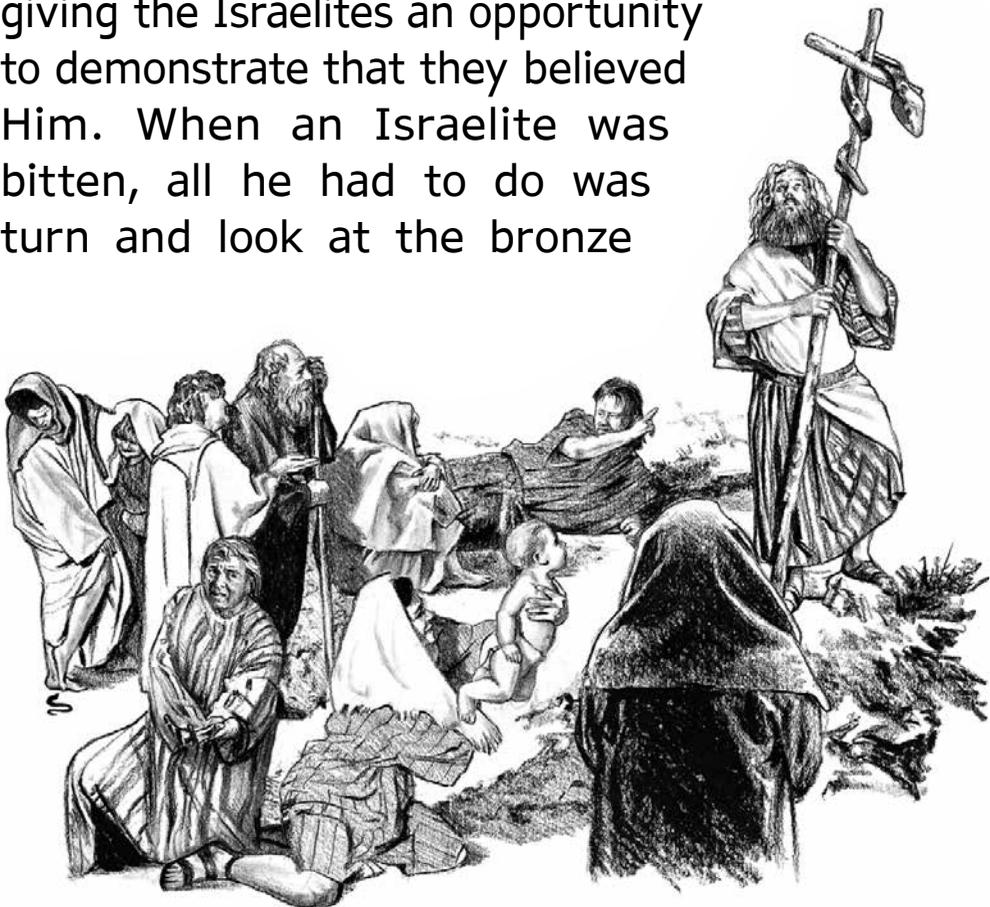
**The LORD said to Moses, “Make a poisonous snake and set it on a pole.**

**When anyone who is bitten looks at it, he will live.”**

**So Moses made a bronze snake and put it on a pole, so that if a snake had bitten someone, when he looked at the bronze snake he lived.**

Numbers 21:7-9 NET

The serpent on the pole was not some sort of mind-over-matter gimmick. God was simply giving the Israelites an opportunity to demonstrate that they believed Him. When an Israelite was bitten, all he had to do was turn and look at the bronze



serpent and he would be healed. With that look, the individual expressed his faith in the LORD, trusting him to be true to his word.

Let's suppose one fellow was bitten and did not look at the bronze serpent. Instead he told his friends, "Old Moses is really demented. If he thinks looking at that ridiculous snake is going to heal a venomous bite, he's got to be crazy. I don't believe it." Such a person would have died, not only because of his snake bite, but also because he did not believe God. God honours faith, but judges unbelief.

It is important to understand that God holds us responsible for all that we understand of him. We are accountable for what we know.

Years later the original serpent made by Moses was destroyed by King Hezekiah because the people were worshiping it, violating another one of the Ten Commandments. See 2 Kings 18:4

### **REVIEW: DEATH**

The Bible speaks about death in three different ways:

**1. Death of the body:**

Separation of man's spirit from his body

**2. Death to a relationship:**

Separation of man's spirit from God

**3. Death to a future joy:**

Separation of man's spirit from God forever

**... the wages of sin is death ...**

Romans 6:23 NKJV

### 3 JUDGES, KINGS AND PROPHETS

We have now come to a lesson that compresses centuries of events into just a few pages. For those of you who are allergic to history, be assured that it's a painless study and, even if you don't understand it all, you will pick up needed tidbits of background information. It will help if you compare the titles at the head of each section with the time line on pages 306-307.

Forty years passed from the time the Israelites left Egypt until the time they entered Canaan. Moses died before he entered the promised country and was replaced by an able general named Joshua.

After entering the land, it took years before the Israelites were able to fully settle it. The land was divided according to **tribes**, each tribe equating with, for the most part, one of Jacob's (or Israel's) twelve sons.

#### **TIME OF THE JUDGES**

For a period of time the Israelites trusted God, but then they began to drift from the truth, and ended up believing in idols. The LORD punished

Israel for worshipping false gods by allowing them to be overrun by foreign nations who forced Israel to serve them and pay tribute. After a time the Israelites would repent and call on God to deliver them from their oppressors. God would raise up a leader, called a **Judge**, and the Israelites would throw out the foreign conquerors. So began a cycle that was to last approximately 300 years. This cycle occurred over and over again. During this time there were fifteen Judges.



Some people believe that if you **trust in God** then you're okay. But in the back of their minds they believe that all roads—all beliefs—ultimately lead to the same God. This is not what the Bible teaches. The Scripture tell us that there are many false gods, but only one true God. The Israelites were judged when they trusted a false god.

## TIME OF THE KINGS

Of all the nations of the world, Israel was the most fortunate, for God himself was their Leader and King. But as time passed and the Israelites observed other nations, they rejected God and demanded a human king. God granted their request, but their propensity to wander off and trust false gods remained.

Israel was to have many kings, but only a few believed and obeyed the LORD. Because of this, the cycle of earlier years continued, only instead of a **Judge**, they now had a **King**.

Several of the kings were especially noteworthy. Probably the greatest and best known of Israel's monarchs was David. Unlike many of the other kings who ruled over Israel, King David truly trusted God. He believed that only God could save him from the consequences of sin. David called the LORD, "**my Saviour.**"

King David was also a great Prophet, inspired by God to write down Scripture. He is noted for the songs he wrote, praising God for his love and mercy. David wrote specifically about THE PROMISED DELIVERER, and God made

a pledge to him that THE ANOINTED ONE would be one of his descendants.<sup>3</sup> King David had a great ambition to replace the portable tabernacle with a permanent structure of a similar design. It would be called the **Temple**. He wanted to build it in Jerusalem, which had become the capital of the country during his reign. Although David gathered the building materials, it was his son, Solomon, who actually saw the task accomplished.

King Solomon is known for two things: his great wisdom and the Temple he built. This magnificent structure was constructed in Jerusalem on Mount Moriah, possibly on the same site where Abraham was prepared to offer Isaac.

After Solomon's death, the nation split in two: the northern ten tribes retained the name **Israel**, while the southern two tribes became the nation of **Judah**. This division seemed to be the Israelites' first step towards a semi-permanent distance from God. The northern tribes led the way. The people went through the motions of doing what the LORD said, but their hearts were far from God.

## PROPHETS

God sent prophets, men who not only preached against the wandering morals of the people, but also warned of judgment to come.



Many of these prophets were also prompted by God to write Scripture. Some of them gave specific information about the coming PROMISED DELIVERER.

Generally speaking, the prophets were not well received by the Israelites or their respective kings. There was a reason. The prophets were giving them a message they did not want to hear. For example, the prophet Isaiah told the people ...

**The LORD says: "These people come near to me with their mouth and honor me with their lips, but their hearts are far from me. Their worship of me is made up only of rules taught by men."**

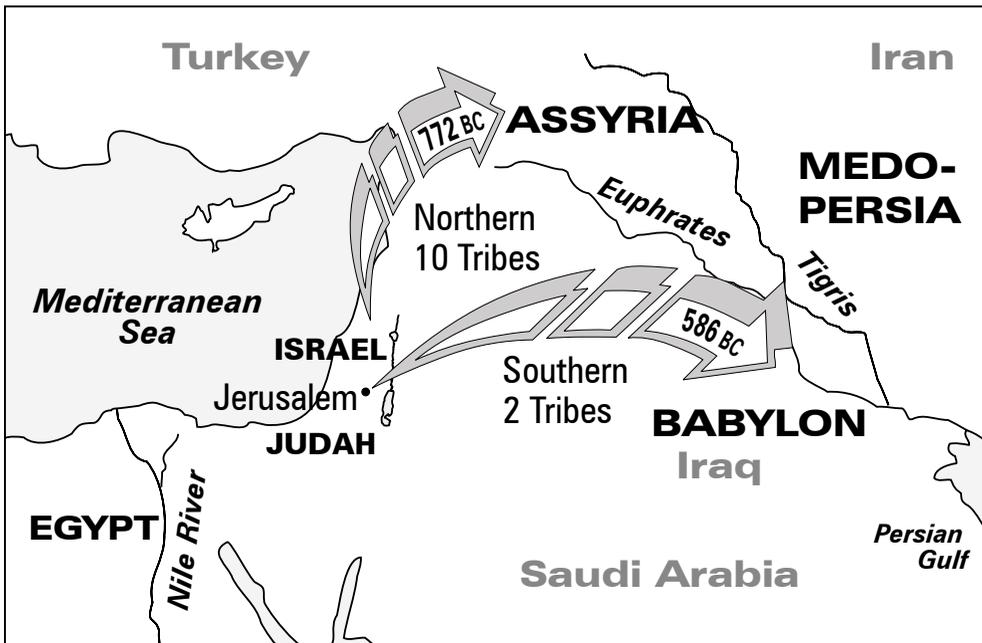
Isaiah 29:13 NIV

The majority despised the prophets' message and refused to trust God. They persecuted and killed them. To complicate matters further, false prophets inspired by Satan churned the

spiritual scene. Even though God provided clear instructions to enable his people to discern the difference between truth and error, the false prophets were much more popular, for they were telling the people the very things they wished to hear.

### **DISPERSAL OF ISRAEL**

Eventually the LORD did send judgment. The Assyrians invaded the ten northern tribes in 722 BC and took them into captivity. The Bible does not record an organized return of these people to the land of Israel.



## JUDAH TAKEN CAPTIVE

The two southern tribes continued as a distinct political entity until 586 BC, when the \*Babylonians ravished the city of Jerusalem, demolished the great temple of Solomon and took them into exile.

\*People from the area where the tower of Babel was built.

While in exile, the people began to be called **Jews**, a reference to the fact that most of them were from the tribe of Judah. With the temple no longer available as the center of worship, the Jews introduced the \*\*synagogue as a place for social interaction, teaching and the study of the Scriptures.

\*\*Greek for the word assemblies.

The exile continued for 70 years, but in 536 BC the two southern tribes began to trickle back to their homeland to settle in and around Jerusalem, in the area formerly occupied by the tribe of Judah. The temple was rebuilt, though not in the grandeur of Solomon's day, and the sacrificial system was reinstated.

## THE INFLUENCE OF THE GREEKS

Around 400 BC, the biblical record pauses and remains silent for a period of some four

centuries. History didn't stand still though. Alexander the Great, the brilliant general of the Greeks, swept through the Middle East engulfing the Jews in the process. His emissaries introduced **Greek** as the trade language and the Hellenistic culture became a status symbol for centuries to follow.

Some Jews freely embraced the Greek culture, combining it with their beliefs about God. These people were called **Sadducees**. Though small in number, they were people of wealth and influence. They tended to control the high priest, a position that had come to be bought and sold. Unfortunately, they also denied parts of the Bible as being true. **The Sadducees took away from God's Word.**

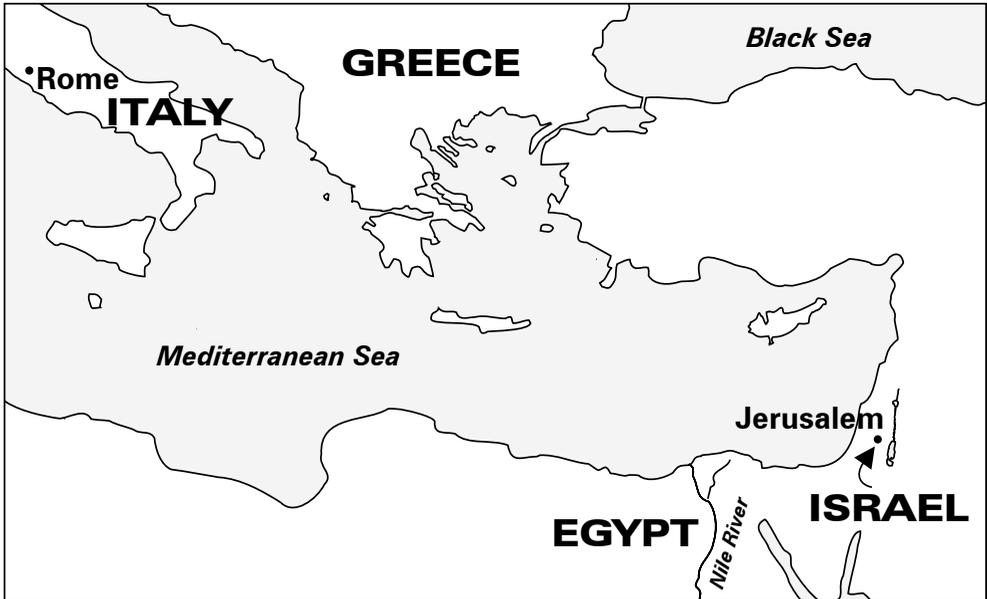
For about two hundred years, the Jews knuckled under to a succession of Greek occupying forces and then in 166 BC they revolted. Judas Maccabeus led the people into a period of autonomy.

During this time a party of Jewish religious zealots, called **Pharisees**, came to the forefront. The Pharisees fought the influence of the Greek culture and clung to the law given to

Moses. In their zeal, they created a protective ring of other laws around Moses' law so that none of the **real law** would be broken. These additional laws became an authority of their own, assuming equal weight with the law of Moses. The Pharisees added to God's Word.



Another significant social force in Jewish life was the **Scribes**, the human equivalent to photocopiers. Long before the advent of printing presses, these men copied the Word of God with extreme care over and over again. The term **Scribe** implied education and religious fervor. It was more of a job description than a religious or political party.



## THE ROMANS

The Jews' liberty under the Maccabean leadership lasted barely 100 years. The iron heel of Rome crushed the Jews' freedom in 67 BC when General Pompey entered Jerusalem.

Rome was quite accommodating of the Jewish religion as long as the Jews paid their taxes and did not foment rebellion. The civilized world of the day had entered into an uneasy peace.

The Roman empire was far too large to be administered effectively from Rome, so local leaders were selected to rule the different regions.

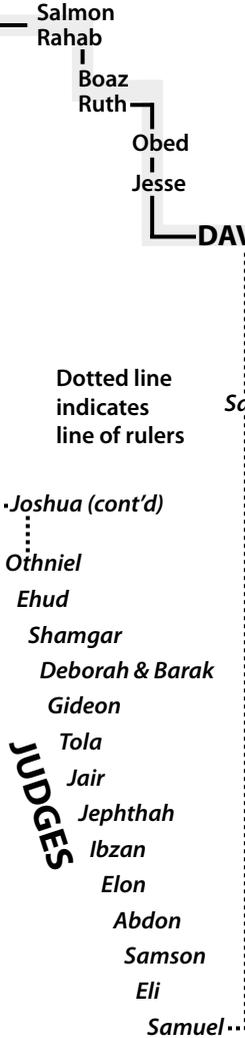
In Judea, now a province of Rome, a man named Herod was appointed as a puppet king. He would come to be known as **Herod the Great**. Cruel beyond belief, Herod was a follower of the Jewish religion in name only. Under Rome's authority, he and his descendants would rule the resentful Jewish world for the next one hundred years. The people yearned for rescue—for one who could give them relief.

More than two thousand years had passed since God first promised Abraham that one of his descendants would be **THE PROMISED DELIVERER**. Throughout the centuries God had those people, sometimes only a few, who believed His Word and were right with him. They had waited in eager anticipation for **THE ANOINTED ONE** to come. In these early years of the Roman empire, those who clung tenaciously to God's promises were still waiting to see them fulfilled. The time had come, but they were unaware of it. The stage was now set. The angels of Heaven must have hushed. Satan must have shuddered. Who would this **PROMISED DELIVERER** be?





Israel—comprised of the northern ten tribes, taken captive by Assyria 722 B.C.



**KINGS OF ISRAEL**

**KINGS OF JUDAH**

- Hoshea
- Pekah ← Menahem
- Shallum ← Pekahiah
- Zechariah
- Jeroboam II
- Jehoash
- Jehoahaz
- Jehu
- Joram
- Ahaziah
- Ahab
- Tibni & Omri
- Zimri
- Elah
- Baasha
- Nadab
- Jeroboam

- Rehoboam
- Abijah
- Asa
- Jehoshaphat
- Jehoram
- Ahaziah\*
- Queen Athaliah\*
- Joash\*
- Amaziah\*
- Uzziah
- Jotham
- Ahaz
- Hezekiah
- Manasseh
- Amon
- Josiah
- Jehoahaz
- Jehoiakim
- Jehoiachin — Shealtiel
- Zedekiah

**PROPHETS**

- Hosea
- Isaiah
- Micah
- Ezekiel
- Zechariah
- Malachi

John the Baptist

12 Disciples

MARY JOSEPH — JESUS

- Jacob
- Matthan
- Eleazar
- Eliud
- Akim
- Zadok
- Azor
- Eliakim
- Abiud
- Zerubbabel

\*\*Temple rebuilt

Judah—comprised of the tribes of Judah & Benjamin, taken captive by Babylon 586 B.C.  
\*\*Temple destroyed

70 years of captivity before returning to Jerusalem

BABYLONIAN EMPIRE    MEDO-PERSIAN EMPIRE    GREEK EMPIRE    ROMAN EMPIRE

1400 BC

1000 BC

500 BC

4 BC

30 AD

50 AD

**CHAPTERS 10-14**

**CHAPTER 15**

Saul (Paul)

# CHAPTER TEN

**1 ELIZABETH, MARY AND JOHN**

**2 JESUS**

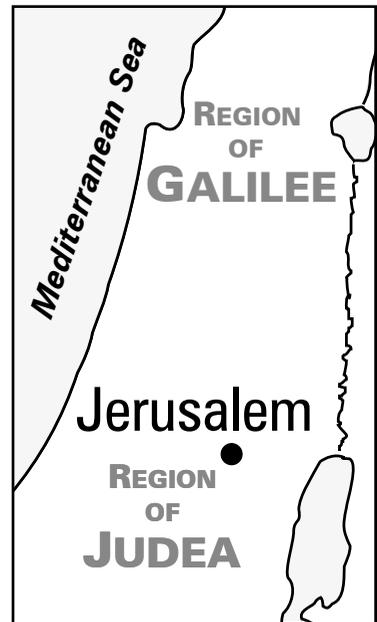
**3 AMONG THE SAGES**

**4 BAPTISM**

# 1 ELIZABETH, MARY AND JOHN

Before THE PROMISED DELIVERER arrived on the scene, God was going to prepare the Jewish people by sending a special messenger to announce the impending event. One can't help but wonder if the angels were in deep discussion over who this select bearer of good tidings might be. **Would it be one of them?** But then news of a different kind leaked through—news having to do with the identity of THE DELIVERER. It must have left all of heaven gasping.

During the reign of Herod king of Judea, there lived a priest named Zechariah...and he had a wife named Elizabeth, who was a descendant of Aaron. They were both righteous in the sight of God, following all the commandments and ordinances of the Lord blamelessly. But they did not have a child, because Elizabeth was barren, and they were both very old.



Now while Zechariah was serving as priest before God when his division was on duty, he was chosen by lot, according to the custom of the priesthood, to enter the holy place of the Lord and burn incense. Now the whole crowd of people were praying outside at the hour of the incense offering. An angel of the Lord, standing on the right side of the altar of incense, appeared to him. And Zechariah, visibly shaken when he saw the angel, was seized with fear. But the angel said to him, "Do not be afraid, Zechariah, for your prayer has been heard, and your wife Elizabeth will bear you a son; you will name him John. Joy and gladness will come to you, and many will rejoice at his birth, for he will be great in the sight of the Lord... He will turn many of the people of Israel to the Lord their God. And he will go as forerunner before the Lord... to turn the hearts of the fathers back to their children and the disobedient to the wisdom of the just, to make ready for the Lord a people prepared for him."

Luke 1:5-17 NET

The angel had told Zechariah that his son, John, would be the messenger to prepare the way for

the coming of the LORD. That was news alright, but it was that last tidbit of information that had heaven all astir. **God Himself—the LORD—was coming to earth.** HE would be THE PROMISED DELIVERER. The news must have stunned Satan.

No doubt Zechariah was floundering as he tried to absorb all of this. Seeing an angel was unheard of in his day. And the news of Elizabeth having a son at their age was enough to give an old man pause. But then to be informed that the Creator God was coming as THE PROMISED DELIVERER—well, it was simply unbelievable! However, Zechariah was familiar with the writings of the prophets.



Four hundred years before his time, the prophet Malachi had written about this event.

**"See, I will send my messenger, who will prepare the way before me. Then suddenly the Lord you are seeking will come to his temple; the messenger of the covenant, whom you desire, will come," says the LORD Almighty.** Malachi 3:1 NIV

There it was in plain words. Zechariah must have wondered why he had not seen it before. It was obvious! The LORD Almighty had said, **“I will send a messenger to prepare the way before me!”** God himself would be coming as THE ANOINTED ONE. Moreover, the angel had said that the messenger who would prepare his way would be the priest’s own son—John.

### **ELIZABETH**

Zechariah went home dumbfounded. And God kept his word; it happened just as the angel said it would.

**After some time his wife Elizabeth became pregnant, and for five months she kept herself in seclusion. She said, “This is what the Lord has done for me at the time when he has been gracious to me, to take away my disgrace among people.”**

Luke 1:24,25 NET

But a question must have nagged away at the back of Zechariah’s mind. Just how would the Creator come to earth? Would he come in a golden chariot driving seven white steeds, surrounded with legions of angels all dressed

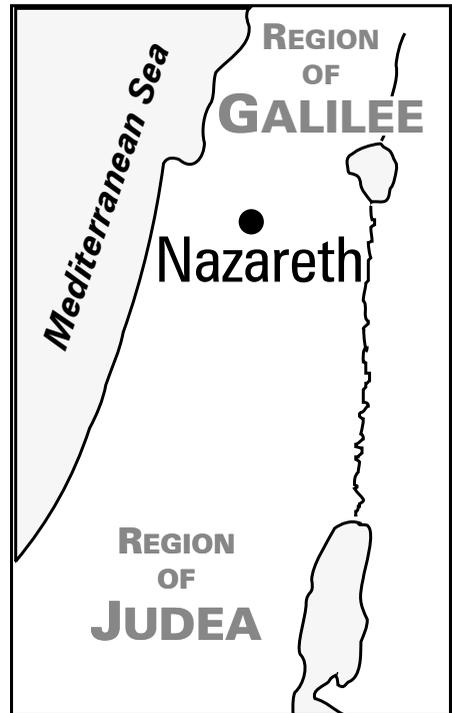
in brilliant light? Would he unseat the Roman rulers—dump Herod off his throne? The angel had not said.

## MARY

The scene now shifts. The angel made another visit, this time to a young lady by the name of Mary.

In the sixth month the angel Gabriel was sent from God to a city of Galilee named Nazareth, to a virgin betrothed [or pledged] to a man whose name was

Joseph, of the house of David. And the virgin's name was Mary. Luke 1:26,27 ESV



Joseph and Mary were engaged to each other according to their Jewish customs. The Bible says that both Joseph and Mary were direct descendants of King David who had lived 1000 years earlier.

The angel came to her and said, "Greetings, favored one, the Lord is with you!"

But she was greatly troubled by his words and began to wonder about the meaning of this greeting. So the angel said to her, "Do not be afraid, Mary, for you have found favor with God! Listen: You will become pregnant and give birth to a son, and you will name him Jesus."

Luke 1:28-31 NET

What!? Now it was Mary's turn to be speechless. When Mary finally found her tongue, she asked a very logical question.

Mary said to the angel, "How can this be, since I am a virgin?"

The angel answered and said to her, "The Holy Spirit will come upon you, and the power of the Most High will overshadow you; and for that reason the holy Child shall be called the Son of God."

Luke 1:34,35 NASB

Mary was to be the mother of THE PROMISED DELIVERER! It all made sense now. Mary knew the stories well. Way back in the garden of Eden, God had

promised Eve that **THE PROMISED DELIVERER** would be **her offspring**. It did not say **their offspring**, referring to both man and woman. Now the promise was about to be fulfilled, and the child would be born of a virgin—it would be her offspring only. **The baby would not have a human father.** What had seemed to be an insignificant choice of phrasing now carried tremendous weight.

But this little notation in the footsteps of history had greater ramifications. Because the Baby would not be conceived by the seed of the man, the Baby would not be part of Adam's bloodline. All descendants of Adam had inherited his nature—the sin nature.<sup>1</sup> But Jesus would not be a **son of Adam**. Rather, he was the **Son of God**. He would have the nature of the God Most High. No wonder the angel referred to the Baby as **the Holy One**. The child would be sinless, just as God is sinless. Jesus would be perfect from conception.

So, God would not be coming with all of Heaven's pomp and grandeur. Rather, he would arrive on the planet as all mankind had and ever will—as a baby! The angel said ...

**“And look, your relative Elizabeth has also become pregnant with a son in her old age—although she was called barren, she is now in her sixth month! For nothing will be impossible with God.” So Mary said, “Yes, I am a servant of the Lord; let this happen to me according to your word.” Then the angel departed from her.**

Luke 1:36–38 NET

Mary knew Elizabeth was too old to have a child. Surely if it was possible for Elizabeth to conceive, then it was just as believable for a virgin to give birth. Mary chose to trust God.

## **JOHN**

**Now the time came for Elizabeth to have her baby, and she gave birth to a son.**

Luke 1:57 NET

John was born just as God had promised. The Bible says it was quite an occasion, and well it should have been, for in that day and age a stigma was attached to those who could not bear children. Zechariah was so thrilled he burst into a speech, a benediction of praise to God. What he had to say was really a mini-tour of the world’s history, punctuated with the repeated

promises God had given over the centuries—the promise to send a DELIVERER. You can see the elderly Zechariah holding the child high, fixing his eyes on baby John’s face as he said:

**“And you, child, will be called the prophet of the Most High. For you will go before the Lord to prepare his ways.”**

Luke 1:76 NET

John would be the messenger who would announce the arrival of THE PROMISED DELIVERER to the world.

## 2 JESUS

This is how Jesus ... was born. His mother, Mary, was engaged to be married to Joseph. But before the marriage took place, while she was still a virgin, she became pregnant through the power of the Holy Spirit. Joseph, her fiancé, was a good man and did not want to disgrace her publicly, so he decided to break the engagement quietly. Matthew 1:18,19 NLT

A Jewish pledge to be married implied a much stronger tie than our western concept of engagement. In almost every sense the couple

was considered married. Joseph was called Mary's husband, and vice versa, except they had not lived together nor had sexual union.

Imagine for a moment how Joseph felt. He must have been in anguish. Mary was pregnant and the child wasn't his. To reveal the truth publicly would label Mary for what she must be, an adulteress, unless Mary's preposterous explanation about an angel appearing to her was right. No, that was absurd. The poor girl must be losing her mind. Joseph loved her, but he could not marry a girl who had cheated on him and was obviously trying to cover it up with an insane story. What Joseph thought about it all we don't really know, but we do know that he painfully decided to break off the engagement.

**But when he had considered this, behold, an angel of the Lord appeared to him in a dream, saying, "Joseph, son of David, do not be afraid to take Mary as your wife; for the Child who has been conceived in her is of the Holy Spirit. She will bear a Son; and you shall call His name Jesus, for He will save His people from their sins."**

Now all this took place to fulfill what was spoken by the Lord through the prophet: "Behold, the virgin shall be with child and shall bear a son, and they shall call His name Immanuel," which translated means, "God with us."

Matthew 1:20–23 NASB

Joseph could not have heard it any more plainly. Mary was still a virgin, and she was going to have a child! The child's name would be Jesus which means **Deliverer** or **Saviour**. He would **deliver**, or **save**, people from the consequences of their sin. The angel said that another of Jesus' names would be **Immanuel**, meaning **God with us**. Jesus would be God living in human flesh among men.



The prophet Isaiah had written about this event 700 years before.

"Therefore the LORD Himself will give you a sign: Behold, a virgin will be with child and bear a son, and she will call His name Immanuel."

Isaiah 7:14 NASB

Joseph must have bolted upright in bed. So Isaiah had been right! It was happening just as God

said it would. But what would everyone think? No matter! There was only one thing to do—he would believe God and do what he said.

**And Joseph awoke from his sleep and did as the angel of the Lord commanded him, and took Mary as his wife, but kept her a virgin until she gave birth to a Son; and he called His name Jesus.**

Matthew 1:24–25 NASB

## **THE CENSUS**

**Now in those days a decree went out from Caesar Augustus to register all the empire for taxes.**

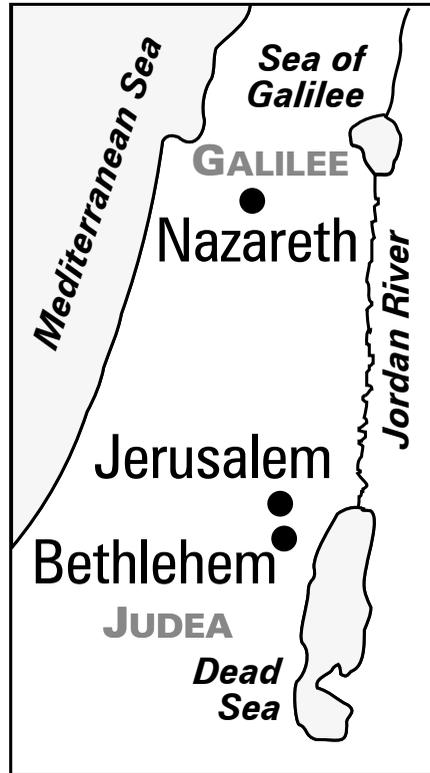
Luke 2:1 NET

Caesar needed money, and if the Romans got an accurate census, more people would have to pay taxes. It's doubtful that Joseph was happy. His wife was almost due. Being a carpenter by trade, he'd probably been working on a crib and had arranged with the local midwife for a clean, safe place for the baby's delivery. Now he was required to take his wife to Bethlehem, which a thousand years before had been King David's ancestral home. A seventy mile (120 km) trip with a wife who might give birth any day was not a welcome thought when you had to travel by

donkey or on foot. Why did the Romans have to come up with this idea now? Why not take the census in Joseph's home town, Nazareth? This was very awkward. But the Romans weren't giving people any choice. He would have to take Mary to Bethlehem.

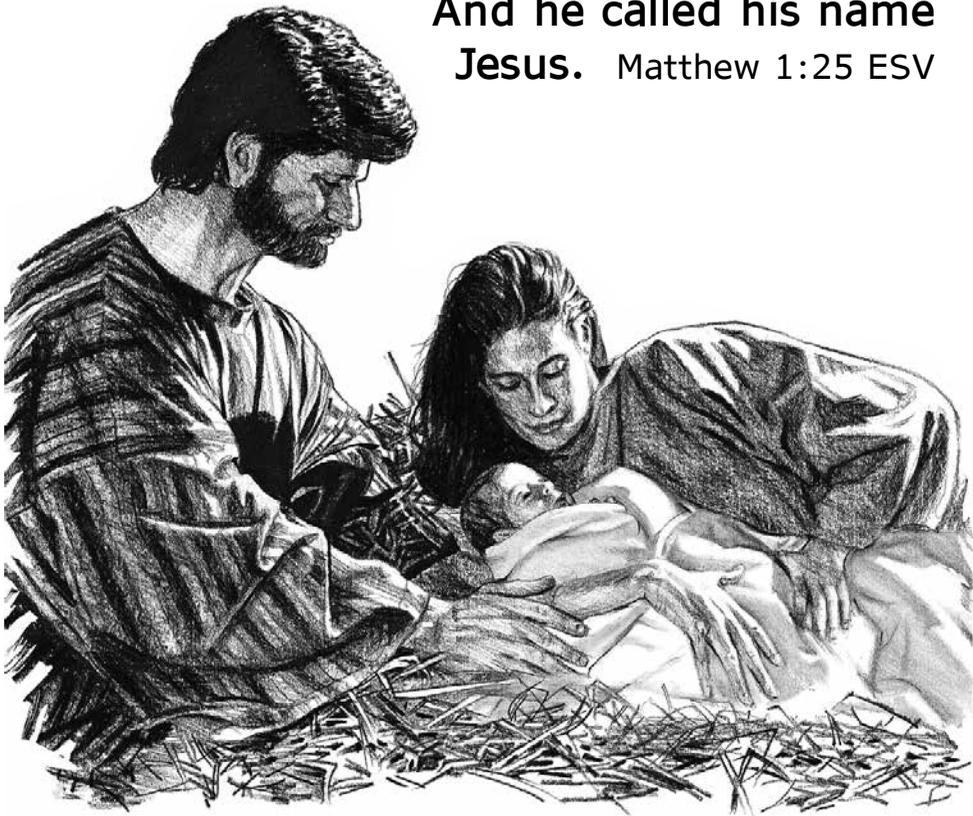
And everyone was on his way to register for the census, each to his own city. Joseph also went up from Galilee, from the city of Nazareth, to Judea, to the city of David which is called Bethlehem, because he was of the house and family of David, in order to register along with Mary, who was engaged to him, and was with child. While they were there, the days were completed for her to give birth. And she gave birth to her firstborn son; and she wrapped Him in cloths, and laid Him in a manger, because there was no room for them in the inn.

Luke 2:3-7 NASB



So Jesus was born in Bethlehem, far from Joseph and Mary's home. The town was so crowded that the only place where they could find lodging was in a stable. Jesus' first crib was a manger, a trough for feeding cattle. As Joseph looked at his wife, it must have seemed like his careful plans had all gone wrong. **Bethlehem!** Of all places! And in a musty stable! But as he looked at the child, he must also have sensed that everything was right. Very much right.

**And he called his name  
Jesus.** Matthew 1:25 ESV



## THE SHEPHERDS

And there were shepherds living out in the fields nearby, keeping watch over their flocks at night. An angel of the Lord appeared to them, and the glory of the Lord shone around them, and they were terrified. But the angel said to them, "Do not be afraid. I bring you good news of great joy that will be for all the people. Today in the town of David a Savior has been born to you; he is Christ the Lord. This will be a sign to you: You will find a baby wrapped in cloths and lying in a manger."

Suddenly a great company of the heavenly host appeared with the angel, praising God and saying, "Glory to God in the highest, and on earth peace to men on whom his favor rests." Luke 2:8-14 NIV

The shepherds had been minding their own business, tending their sheep as they always had. Often sheep from their flocks were used in the temple sacrifices in Jerusalem only a few miles north of Bethlehem. Life continued as usual. But now the angels had come, and their whole world

was askew. The shepherds must have excitedly queried each other, "Did you hear what I heard? The Christ is the LORD!"

### **CHRIST / MESSIAH**

The Greek word **Christ** is the same as the Hebrew word **Messiah**. The word means, **the anointed one**. For centuries the name **Messiah** had been applied to **THE PROMISED DELIVERER**.

Now the angels were saying that **THE ANOINTED ONE**—the Messiah/Christ—was the **LORD**.<sup>3</sup> He was God Himself.

When the angels had gone away from them into heaven, the shepherds began saying to one another, "Let us go straight to Bethlehem then, and see this thing that has happened which the Lord has made known to us."

So they came in a hurry and found their way to Mary and Joseph, and the baby as He lay in the manger. When they had seen this, they made known the statement which had been told them about this Child.

Luke 2:15-17 NASB

The shepherds were poor men, not the sort of folks that one would normally expect to be invited to the birth of a King. But there were others on their way to see Jesus.

## WISE MEN

Now after Jesus was born in Bethlehem of Judea in the days of Herod the king, \*magi from the east arrived in Jerusalem, saying,

**“Where is He who has been born King of the Jews? For we saw His star in the east and have come to worship Him.”**

\*Christmas scenes often depict three Magi, but the Bible does not say how many there actually were. The Magi were probably non-Jewish experts in the study of the stars, coming from Arabia or further east.

Matthew 2:1–2 NASB

The Magi were men of status and wealth. Such men could be expected to visit a king. The king enthroned in Judea at this time was Herod the Great who, no doubt, had been alerted to this rather prestigious company. They could hardly have escaped the notice of the sentries guarding Judea’s borders. Their visit could not have been perceived as a threat as they were not leading

armies. All they had was a question: "Where's the newborn King?"

**When Herod the king heard this, he was troubled, and all Jerusalem with him.**

Matthew 2:3 NASB

That single question really rocked Herod. He held his authority as king in a tightly clenched fist, and he would crush anyone who dared try to wrench it from him. No doubt the whole city was a little shaken as well. Herod was known to be cruel to his citizens, especially when he was upset. Who knew what he might do. Herod called his religious advisors.

**After assembling all the chief priests and experts in the law, he asked them where the Christ was to be born.**

Matthew 2:4 NET

## **THE PROPHECY**

You can see an agitated scribe blowing dust off a small scroll. His fellow sages bend over the papyrus and with rheumy eyes scan the text. They are a little rattled. They want Herod to understand that **they** are not the ones who had said these things. A prophet by the name of Micah had written it over



700 years earlier. A shaky finger points to a well-worn part of the document. Herod disdains to look. A scribe clears his raspy throat and reads:

**“But you, Bethlehem Ephrathah,<sup>4</sup> though you are little among the thousands of Judah, yet out of you shall come forth to Me the One to be Ruler in Israel, whose goings forth are from of old, from everlasting.”**

Micah 5:2 NKJV

So the baby must be born in Bethlehem! Herod wanted to see if the Prophet Micah had recorded more. He had! It clearly said that the **One** to be born had lived **from everlasting**. Herod must have been ashen. It couldn't be. Only God was eternal. God would never come to earth as an infant, especially to be born in the backwoods of Bethlehem. He would arrive with trumpets and chariots—in Jerusalem. Aha! Perhaps the scribes were intentionally trying to alarm him, to manipulate him. It wouldn't hurt to humour them. He would show them what sort of worship new kings could expect. He shooed out his priests...

Then Herod called the Magi secretly and found out from them the exact time the star had appeared. He sent them to Bethlehem and said, "Go and make a careful search for the child. As soon as you find him, report to me, so that I too may go and worship him."

After they had heard the king, they went on their way, and the star they had seen in the east went ahead of them until it stopped over the place where the child was. When they saw the star, they were overjoyed. On coming to the house, they saw the child with his mother Mary, and they bowed down and worshiped him. Then they opened their treasures and presented him with gifts of gold and of incense and of myrrh.<sup>5</sup>

Matthew 2:7–11 NIV

## **WORSHIP**

These men of wealth and status worshipped Jesus. The law was very specific—only the God Most High was to be worshipped. Joseph and Mary knew the Ten Commandments well and yet they did not intervene. They must have known deep

inside that the Magi were worshipping God—God who had come in human flesh.

**And having been warned in a dream not to go back to Herod, they returned to their country by another route.**

**When they had gone, an angel of the Lord appeared to Joseph in a dream. "Get up," he said, "take the child and his mother and escape to Egypt. Stay there until I tell you, for Herod is going to search for the child to kill him."**

**So he got up, took the child and his mother during the night and left for Egypt, where he stayed until the death of Herod.**

Matthew 2:12–15 NIV

Consistent with what secular history records of him, Herod did make an all-out effort to kill Jesus, but the child remained safe in Egypt. Eventually Herod died, and so Joseph, Mary and Jesus moved back to Nazareth where Joseph worked as a carpenter.

**And the child grew and became strong; he was filled with wisdom, and the grace of God was upon him.**

Luke 2:40 NIV

## THE MEANING OF A NAME

The Bible records many instances of prophets who lived long before the birth of Jesus, who wrote with unerring accuracy about his coming. Isaiah recorded this 700 years before the birth of Jesus...



For to us a child is born, to us a son is given; and the government shall be upon his shoulder, and his name shall be called Wonderful Counselor, Mighty God, Everlasting Father, Prince of Peace.

Isaiah 9:6 ESV

Note how the child is called **Mighty God**. There are many other names that describe aspects of the LORD'S character:

**Son of God:** This name is a metaphor with no physical implications. It simply means Jesus had the nature of God, in contrast to a son of Adam who had a sin nature.

The Son is the radiance of God's glory and the exact representation of his [God's] being ...

Hebrews 1:3 NASB

**Son of Man:** This name was used to emphasize Jesus' humanity and declare his identity. For

centuries, scholars recognized this term as referring to THE ANOINTED ONE.<sup>2</sup>

When the above two names are combined, they find their complete expression in the fact that...

**He [God] was made visible in human flesh ...**

1 Timothy 3:16 AMP

**The Word:** God didn't just tell us about himself, he showed himself to us. The spoken word became the living Word.

**In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God...And the Word became flesh and dwelt among us ...**

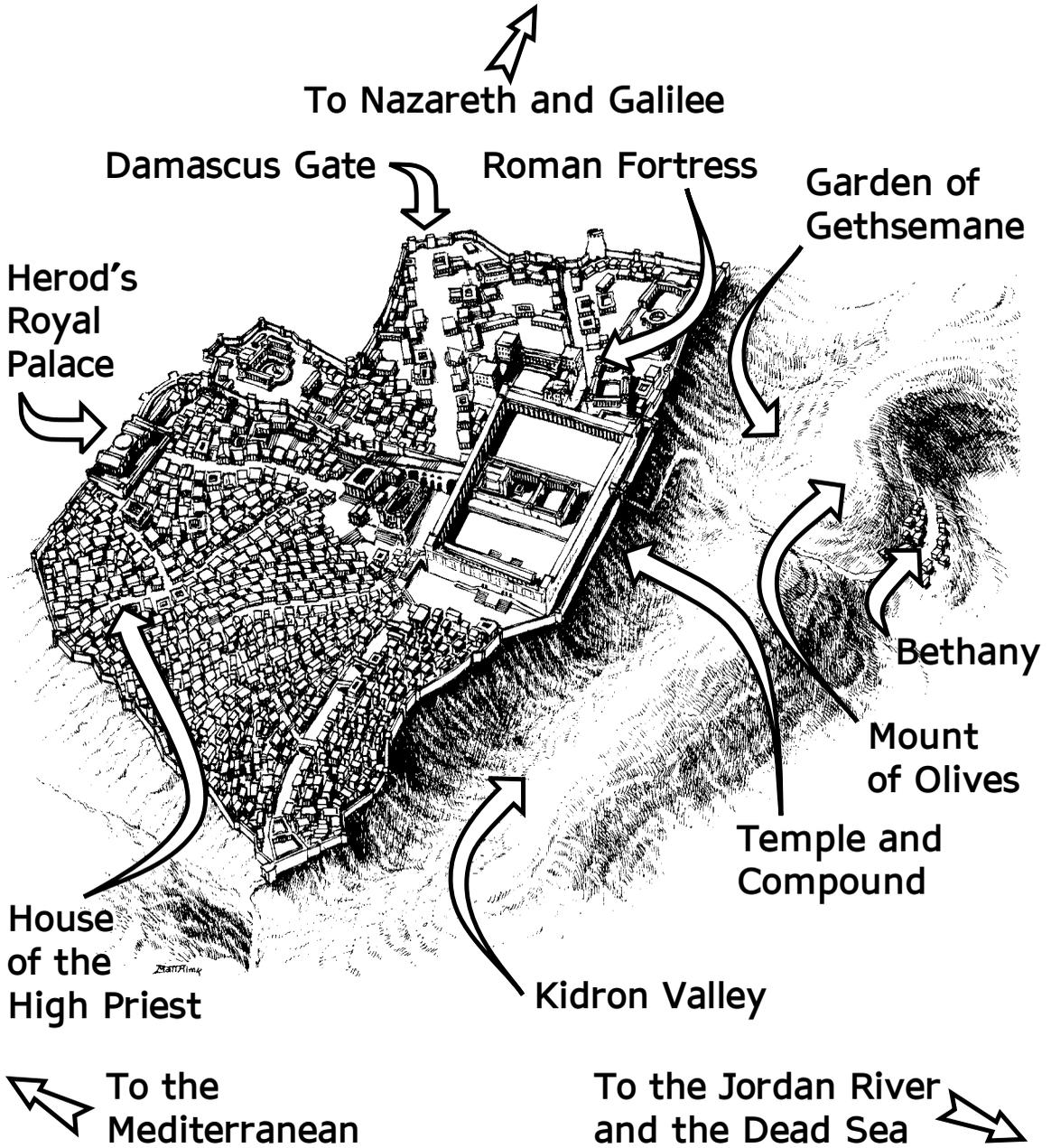
John 1:1,14 ESV

God came to earth to personally explain how man could be saved from eternal death. Think of it this way. You see a bulldozer clearing a road, but in its path lies an anthill. You know the ants are about to be destroyed, but what can you do about it? The only answer would be to become an ant and warn them in the way ants warn each other of impending danger.

**...Jesus came into the world to save sinners ...**

1 Timothy 1:15 NASB

## JERUSALEM AND SURROUNDING AREA



### 3 AMONG THE SAGES

Although Jesus was God himself, he chose to enter the human race as a baby. It must have been quite an experience for Joseph and Mary to raise this child. Jesus was sinless. Even as a youngster, he never became impatient, never talked back or threw a temper tantrum. Little is told of Jesus' younger years, but one story was recorded about him at the age of twelve.

**His parents went to Jerusalem every year at the Feast of the Passover. And when He was twelve years old, they went up to Jerusalem according to the custom of the feast.**      Luke 2:41–42 NKJV

According to Jewish culture, at puberty a boy became a \*full member of the religious community. As such, he had all the privileges and responsibilities accorded to a young man.

As Joseph and Mary took the customary trip to Jerusalem, Jesus' coming of age could not have been far from their minds.<sup>6</sup>

\*A boy became a son of the covenant, a custom continued in the present bar mitzvah ceremony.

## GOING HOME

With the feast over, everyone headed home. Though we don't know all the details of the trip, we can imagine how the events unfolded. Probably the folks from Nazareth all traveled together for company and mutual safety. Because the children walked slower, they, along with the women and some of the men, left early in the morning to get a head start. The rest of the men would have stayed behind for last-minute visiting and then would have headed out to catch up with the rest of the group at dusk.

**After the Feast was over, while his parents were returning home, the boy Jesus stayed behind in Jerusalem, but they were unaware of it. Thinking he was in their company, they traveled on for a day.**

Luke 2:43-44 NIV

You can picture Mary leaving at sunrise. Jesus was nowhere in sight, but she wasn't alarmed. Jesus was at the age when he was expected to be a man. He would be hanging back with the others as they visited in the temple complex. No doubt he was with Joseph. At the very thought Mary smiled with satisfaction. And what a

wonderful young man he was! She was glad he could take the extra time to listen to the wise men in the temple.

Dusk fell as Joseph arrived at the prearranged spot along with the other men. They'd had a good day too, filled with learning. They had spent extra time listening to the scholarly men of the temple teach God's Word; then they had discussed the teaching en route as they hurried to catch up with the women. His only regret was that Jesus hadn't remained with him. After all, he was at the age when he was expected to shoulder the responsibilities of a young man. He could have learned so much. But obviously he had gone on ahead with Mary and the rest of the children. He must remind Jesus that he was growing up. It wasn't often that he had to do that. Come to think of it, he couldn't remember ever reminding Jesus about anything. Then Joseph spotted Mary. Both were all smiles:

"Did you have a good day?"

"Yeah, great!"

"Did Jesus enjoy himself?"

"Jesus?"

The smiles disappeared. "I thought...!"

"Yes, but I thought..."

Then they began looking for him among their relatives and friends. When they did not find him, they went back to Jerusalem to look for him.

Luke 2:44–45 NIV

## THE SEARCH

The search must have been frantic. "Oh no! We've lost the Son of God!" They searched all the places a normal boy might be found. The sweets section of the market was thoroughly checked and local construction sites were turned inside out to see if he had lingered to watch. In desperation Joseph retraced his footsteps. The last he had seen of Jesus was in the temple.

After three days they found him in the temple, sitting among the teachers, listening to them and asking them questions. And all who heard him were amazed at his understanding and his answers.

Luke 2:46–47 ESV

Jesus was right where he was supposed to be, doing what both Joseph and Mary had wished him to do. There was only one difference. Instead of

being instructed by the temple wise men, Jesus was doing the teaching. No, he wasn't delivering a lecture—but the penetrating questions, the profoundness of his own understanding, the depth of his answers, did not go unnoticed. Indeed, the temple sages were hanging on to every word. The Bible says the learned men were **amazed!** No wonder. They were listening to God Himself. Who wouldn't be dumbfounded in a discussion with the Creator of the universe?!

The learned men weren't the only ones speechless. Joseph and Mary were flabbergasted and, no doubt, much relieved. They found their tongues quick enough.

**When his parents saw him, they were overwhelmed. His mother said to him, "Child, why have you treated us like this? Look, your father and I have been looking for you anxiously." Luke 2:48 NET**

Jesus asked them a question. (You'd sort of expect that of God.)

**"Why were you looking for me? Didn't you know that I must be in my Father's house?" Luke 2:49 NET**

## A GENTLE REMINDER

This wasn't a sassy retort. Jesus was simply saying that he was right where a child should be—at home in his Father's house. **But what did he mean by Father? Who was this Father he was referring to?** We will study this more in the next section. For now, all you need to know is that Jesus used this phrase as a gentle reminder to his earthly parents of who he really was.

**But they did not understand what he was saying to them. Then he went down to Nazareth with them and was obedient to them. But his mother treasured all these things in her heart. And Jesus grew in wisdom and stature, and in favor with God and men.**

Luke 2:50–52 NIV

## 4 BAPTISM

Jesus did not officially begin his life's work until he was about thirty years of age. John, the son of Zechariah, had already started to prepare the way for him by telling everyone who would listen that **THE ANOINTED ONE** had arrived. It created quite a stir.

**In those days John the Baptist came into the wilderness of Judea proclaiming,**

**“Repent, for the kingdom of heaven is near.”**

Matthew 3:1–2 NET

John was being referred to as **the Baptist** because he was **baptizing** people. The ritual of baptism was not uncommon to the Middle Eastern people of that day. It was full of meaning. Today, however, much confusion surrounds this word.

This uncertainty is a result of not having a word in the English language that precisely translates the Greek word **baptizo**. The translators resolved the problem by creating the word **baptism**. That’s okay, but it doesn’t help the average person understand its original meaning.

### **IDENTIFICATION**

Baptism implies **identification**. A common meaning of the word **baptizo** originated in the early Greek textile industry. In the process of dying fabric, a piece of cloth was plunged into a vat of dye, whereby it took on the colour of the pigment. The cloth was totally identified with the dye.

John taught that the Jews had strayed from the Scripture, embracing man’s ideas. He said they needed to **change their mind** about their wandering ways and return to God; in short,

repent. The Jews who were baptized showed that they identified (or agreed personally) with his message of repentance.

Then people from Jerusalem, as well as all Judea and all the region around the Jordan, were going out to him, and he was baptizing them in the Jordan River as they confessed their sins.

But when he saw many Pharisees and Sadducees coming to his baptism, he said to them, “You offspring of vipers! Who warned you to flee from the coming wrath? Therefore produce fruit that proves your repentance ...”

Matthew 3:5–8 NET

## REPENT

John the Baptist saw that some in his audience were Pharisees and Sadducees. Remember, they were the ones who **added to** or **took away** from the Bible. These two sects did not have much use for each other, but they had one thing in common—they both thought they were a **cut above** the ordinary. They were proud. John called them a **bunch of snakes** because they enforced unbearably strict rules on others, but did not

practice what they preached. He told them to repent, to have a change of mind.

### **JESUS' BAPTISM**

Then Jesus came from Galilee to John to be baptized by him in the Jordan River. But John tried to prevent him, saying, "I need to be baptized by you, and yet you come to me?"

Matthew 3:13–14 NET

John recognized who Jesus was—he was God. Jesus did not need to repent of anything because he was perfect. John knew that he was the one who needed to be baptized, not Jesus.

So Jesus replied to him, "Let it happen now, for it is right for us to fulfill all righteousness." Then John yielded to him.

Matthew 3:15 NET

Jesus insisted on being baptized because he wanted to be identified with John's message of righteous living. He wanted to affirm John's message as being true.

As soon as Jesus was baptized, he went up out of the water. At that moment heaven was opened, and he saw the Spirit of God descending like a dove and lighting

on him. And a voice from heaven said,  
**“This is my Son, whom I love; with him  
 I am well pleased.”** Matthew 3:16–17 NIV

In a moment, we will look at this verse in more depth, but first, let’s finish the story.

### **THE LAMB OF GOD**

On the next day John saw Jesus coming toward him and said, **“Look, the Lamb of God who takes away the sin of the world! This is the one about whom I said, ‘After me comes a man who is greater than I am, because he existed before me.’”**

John 1:29–30 NET

John identified Jesus as **THE PROMISED SAVIOUR**, the one who would take away the sin of the world. He said that Jesus had lived before him—eternally. John said ...

**“...I have seen and testified that this is the Son of God.”**

John 1:34 NKJV

On one occasion, I was teaching a young couple, step by step through the Bible. Upon reading this verse, **“Look, the Lamb of God, who takes away the sin of the world!”**, the lady came alive! In an excited, animated voice she said, **“The**

**Lamb, the Lamb! Does this have anything to do with all the lambs we have been reading about in the old part of the Bible!?"**

I told her, "Yes, it does...and when the time comes, it will all fit together in a way that will make incredible sense."

I had the opportunity to visit a country where the local people had been exposed to fragments of biblical thought. They had adopted baptism, believing that their sins were washed away. They were so convinced of its literal nature that they would not go into the river after a baptism for fear they would be contaminated by the sin.

The Bible is clear that baptism does not make us acceptable to God. It is only an outward picture of what has transpired inwardly. In this instance, it demonstrated that these Jews were believing John's message and identifying with it.

Today, many "theologians" would give baptism much more meaning than the Bible warrants.

## DOES GOD TALK TO HIMSELF?

Beginning in the first pages of the Bible, we noticed an unusual way that God speaks, as if he was talking to himself. For example, when he created man...

**God said, "Let Us make man in Our image, according to Our likeness..."**

Genesis 1:26 NKJV

When Adam sinned, we find God in conversation...

**Then the LORD God said, "Behold, the man has become like one of us in knowing good and evil."**

Genesis 3:22 ESV

When God dispersed the people of Babel, he said...

**"Come, let us go down and confuse their language so they will not understand each other." So the LORD scattered them ...** Genesis 11:7-8 NIV

Who is God talking to? Who are the **Us** and **Our**?

When the angel talked to Mary, he said ...

**The Holy Spirit will come upon you, and the power of the Most High will overshadow you; and for that reason the holy Child shall be called the Son of God.**

Luke 1:35 NASB

Here we see the Holy Spirit, the Most High, and the Son of God all mentioned in one verse. We know that the Most High is God. We have just been reading a score of verses that say Jesus is God come in human flesh. Are they one and the same? What about the Holy Spirit? What does the Bible say? We come now to the verse we just read:

**As soon as Jesus was baptized, he went up out of the water. At that moment heaven was opened, and he saw the Spirit of God descending like a dove and lighting on him. And a voice from heaven said, "This is my Son, whom I love; with him I am well pleased."**

Matthew 3:16–17 NIV

Continued...

We have three entities here: **Jesus, the Spirit of God** and a **voice from heaven**. Confusing? It can be if you don't understand some basic biblical concepts. Here are some more pieces to the puzzle.

First of all, we know that there is only one God. That is emphasized repeatedly in the Bible.

**Jesus answered him ... "Hear, O Israel;  
The Lord our God is one Lord."**

Mark 12:29 NKJV

That is reasonably straightforward. However, there are things about God that are beyond our scope of reason; incredible complexities that are difficult for us to fathom. For example, the whole concept of an **eternal** God is not easy to digest. In the same vein, trying to conceptualize a God who is **everywhere at the same time** is totally baffling. Getting a solid handle on just these two truths is impossible for our finite minds. Now we are faced with a revelation about God that is equally difficult to grasp, yet nonetheless clearly taught in the Bible.

The Scripture reveals to us a God, who is **at the same time** Father, Son, and Holy Spirit—three eternal and co-equal persons that comprise the being of God. These three persons form a **tri-unity** or **trinity**, but comprise the one and only God.

Over the years, various attempts have been made to explain the Trinity:

1. The egg: Each egg has a shell, a white and a yolk; three distinct parts, but only one egg.
2. Dimensions: A box has height, width and length; though not the same, they cannot be separated.
3. Multiplication:  $1 \times 1 \times 1 = 1$

Although some of these illustrations may be helpful, they still fall short of giving us a full understanding. We need to be careful that we don't try to drag God down to our level and view him as one like ourselves. God says part of the reason we don't understand him is because ...

Continued ...

## You thought that I was just like you ...

Psalm 50:21 NASB

As children, there were many things we didn't understand and yet we accepted them at face value. "What is electricity? Why doesn't it run out onto the floor when I pull out the plug? What do you mean it will hurt me if I stick tweezers in the outlet?" Just because we failed to understand electricity didn't make it any less real.

As adults, we are somewhat smug in our ability to comprehend the world about us. Over the centuries, things that puzzled the ancients have become commonplace to our understanding. Yet, we need to be humble. Much of the known universe still contains great mysteries. People living 100 years from now may look back on us as being blind to what they will consider obvious. The time may come when the concept of a **trinity** will make perfect sense. Even if that day does come, we need to recognize that our limited ability to

reason cannot fit an infinite God into our finite minds. Rightly understood, God, as revealed in the Bible, is a God who leaves us astonished.

Think for a moment: an eternal God; all-knowing, everywhere present at the same time; Creator of the whole universe; a Trinity, one, yet comprised of three persons—Father, Son and Holy Spirit—who are all equal in character and ability. Unfathomable! Though these concepts may be hard to grasp, the Bible says all are true.

**The secret things belong unto the LORD our God: but those things which are revealed belong unto us ...**

Deuteronomy 29:29 KJV

The very word **God** is a statement about the Trinity. The Hebrew language has **singular** (one), **dual** (two only) and **plural** (three or more) noun forms. The word **God**, in Hebrew **Elohim**, is grammatically plural, allowing for three, but has a singular meaning.

Continued ...

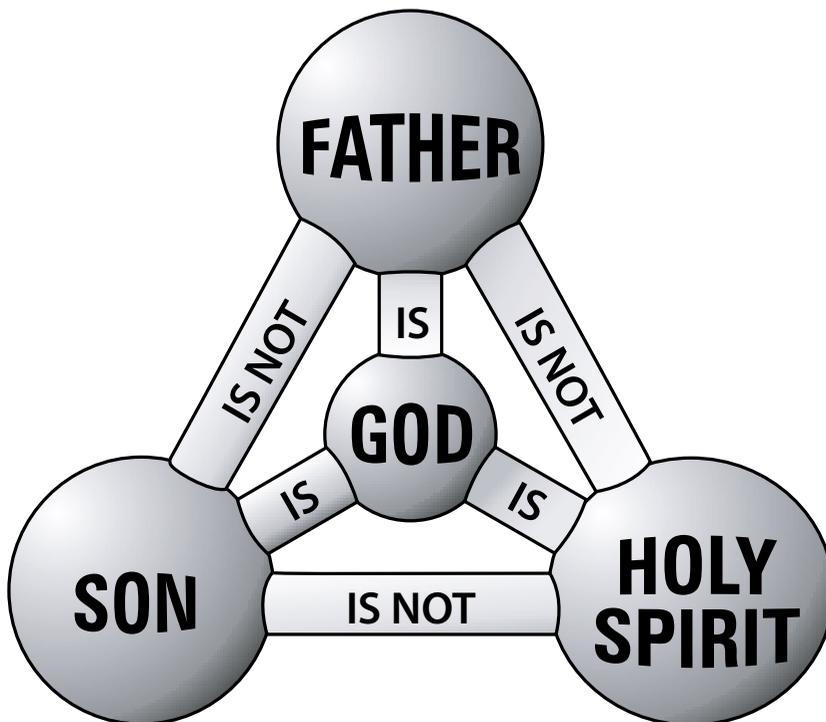
Though it is correct to refer to any member of the Trinity as God, a distinction can be made as follows:

The Most High = The Father

Jesus Christ = The Son

The Spirit = The Holy Spirit

The accompanying diagram has been used for centuries to explain the Trinity.





# CHAPTER ELEVEN

**1** TEMPTED

**2** POWER AND FAME

**3** NICODEMUS

**4** REJECTION

**5** THE BREAD OF LIFE

# 1 TEMPTED

At the beginning of creation, Lucifer defiantly rebelled against God, grasping after His position. Now God the Son, though still fully God, had set aside all his visible glory and majesty to leave Heaven and come to earth as a human being. Jesus must have appeared very vulnerable to Satan. If he could only entice Jesus to do his bidding, it would be a great victory. From God's perspective, it was time to reveal something more about himself.

**Then Jesus was led up by the Spirit into the wilderness to be tempted by the \*devil. And after fasting forty days and forty nights, he was hungry.**

Matthew 4:1–2 ESV

Devil means false accuser, slanderer.

Jesus had just completed a lengthy time without food. Although he is God, he also was a real man with real physical needs.

**The tempter came and said to him, "If you are the Son of God, command these stones to become bread."** Matthew 4:3 NET

Satan was suggesting that Jesus do something that everyone would understand, namely, take care of his physical well-being. It also seemed like

a prime opportunity for Jesus to prove who He really was. If he was God, then he had created the world simply by speaking it into existence. To turn stones into bread would be a simple matter. But there was a catch. To do so, he would be following Satan's orders.

**But [Jesus] answered, "It is written, 'Man does not live by bread alone, but by every word that comes from the mouth of God.'"**

Matthew 4:4 NET

Christ responded to Satan by quoting the Bible, God's written Word. He said that it was more important to follow God than to take care of physical needs. This is a significant statement, as many people are so concerned about this physical life that they ignore their spiritual well-being.

**For what will it profit a man if he gains the whole world, and loses his own soul?**

Mark 8:36 NKJV

## **SATAN "QUOTES"**

**Then the devil took him to the holy city [or Jerusalem] and had him stand on the highest point of the temple. "If you are the Son of God," he said, "throw yourself down. For it is written: 'He will command**

**his angels concerning you, and they will lift you up in their hands, so that you will not strike your foot against a stone.”**

Matthew 4:5–6 NIV

Now the challenge was brazen. “Prove it! Prove that you are God’s Son! If God is truly your Father, then he will save you!”

Satan was quoting a passage found in the Book of Psalms. Satan loves religion and quoting the Bible is a favourite trick of his. The problem was that Satan was not quoting Scripture accurately. He was selecting only the portion that suited his purposes. He had done this with Adam and Eve in the Garden of Eden and now he was trying it on Jesus.

Once again, Jesus answered Satan’s temptation by quoting the Bible, only he quoted it correctly. He didn’t need to prove Himself.

**Jesus said to him, “Again it is written, ‘You shall not put the Lord your God to the test.’”**

Matthew 4:7 ESV

## **AN OFFER RESISTED**

**Again, the devil took him to a very high mountain and showed him all the kingdoms of the world and their glory. And he said**

**to him, "All these I will give you, if you will fall down and worship me."**

Matthew 4:8–9 ESV

Satan was offering Jesus the nations of the world, if Jesus would only worship him. After all, wasn't that what Jesus wanted—for people to follow him? What Satan did not mention was that if Jesus worshipped him, then Jesus would also be serving him. Worship and service always go together. You can't divide the two. But Satan's ploy didn't work. Again Jesus quoted Scripture:

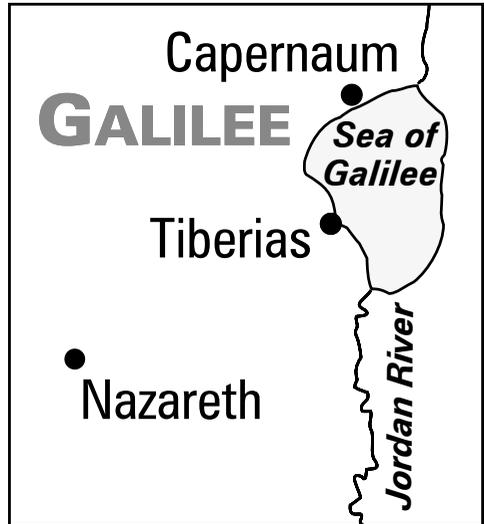
**Jesus said to him, "Away from me, Satan! For it is written: 'Worship the Lord your God, and serve him only.'" Then the devil left him, and angels came and attended him.** Matthew 4:10–11 NIV

Satan had not succeeded in entrapping Jesus in his treacherous web of deceit. Jesus was above reproach, uncompromising in his resistance to temptation. The Devil retreated temporarily, still determined to destroy Jesus.

From Satan's perspective, he did have a measure of success. John the Baptist had been thrown into jail.<sup>1</sup>

Now when [Jesus] heard that John had been arrested, he withdrew into Galilee. And leaving Nazareth he went and lived in Capernaum by the sea...

Matthew 4:12–13 ESV



## SINLESS

The struggle between good and evil is not a balanced one. Jesus, the Creator God, is far more powerful than Satan, a created being. Though Jesus was tempted, he did not give in to temptation. He was perfect.

True and false prophets have come and gone, but none have claimed to be sinless. The Bible records the lives of many people who were either revealed as sinners, or confessed their sinfulness. But Jesus never did. You will search the Scripture in vain, looking for one

Continued...

reference where Jesus sinned or asked for forgiveness. Even those who were closest to him, and were most likely to know of any character flaws, wrote that Jesus...

**...committed no sin, Nor was any deceit found in His mouth.**

1 Peter 2:22 NKJV

Jesus' temptation was just one more way in which he identified with humanity. When God finally judges all mankind, no one will be able to stand before him and say, "God, you don't understand! You were born in a palace; I, in dirt. You were never tempted; I was. How can you judge me when you never faced what I faced." No, the Bible says we don't have a God...

**... who is unable to sympathize with our weaknesses, but we have one who has been tempted in every way, just as we are—yet was without sin.**

Hebrews 4:15 NIV

Jesus' righteousness was revealed for all to see.

## 2 POWER AND FAME

After John was put in prison, Jesus went into Galilee, proclaiming the good news of God. “The time has come,” he said. “The kingdom of God is near. Repent and believe the good news!” Mark 1:14–15 NIV

Jesus came offering the Jewish people a new identity, a kingdom led by God. Initially, the people must have been somewhat nonplused by this offer. Here was Jesus, dressed in homespun clothes. “Were not his kin from Nazareth? His father was a carpenter, I believe.” And he was on foot. Kings don’t walk! A real king would come on a horse—a steed, with chariots and armies—and he would ride right up to Herod’s palace. A king would issue a challenge, a royal proclamation of independence. You could never read that into Jesus’ message even at the best of times. He said **repent**. What sort of king would say that? The local gossips were having a heyday. Even the most serious folk were twitching with laughter.

But not everyone was scoffing. Repentance was something that happened inwardly, and the heart was the place where Christ intended to begin his

rule. For those who actually met Jesus ... well, he was different. His words made you pause and think.

**As Jesus walked beside the Sea of Galilee, he saw Simon and his brother Andrew casting a net into the lake, for they were fishermen. "Come, follow me," Jesus said, "and I will make you fishers of men." At once they left their nets and followed him.**

**When he had gone a little farther, he saw James son of Zebedee and his brother John in a boat, preparing their nets. Without delay he called them, and they left their father Zebedee in the boat with the hired men and followed him. Mark 1:16–20 NIV**

## **AUTHORITY**

**Then they went to Capernaum. When the Sabbath came, Jesus went into the synagogue and began to teach. The people there were amazed by his teaching, because he taught them like one who had authority, not like the experts in the law.**

**Mark 1:21–22 NET**

Those who heard Jesus knew there was something very unusual about him. His teaching commanded attention, and no wonder; they were listening

to God Himself. But Jesus not only spoke with authority, he also demonstrated it.

**Just then a man in their synagogue who was possessed by an evil spirit cried out, “What do you want with us, Jesus of Nazareth? Have you come to destroy us? I know who you are—the Holy One of God!”**

Mark 1:23–24 NIV

This was a case of demon possession. One of Satan’s angels was living inside this man, with the man’s consent. The demon knew who Jesus was, calling him the **Holy One of God!**

**Jesus rebuked him, saying, “Be quiet, and come out of him!”**

Mark 1:25 NKJV

Because demons always twist the truth for their own purposes, Jesus did not want them telling others who he was. Christ himself validated that he was God by ordering the demon out.

**At that, the evil spirit screamed, threw the man into a convulsion, and then came out of him.**

**Amazement gripped the audience, and they began to discuss what had happened. “What sort of new teaching is this?” they**

asked excitedly. “It has such authority! Even evil spirits obey his orders!” The news about Jesus spread quickly throughout the entire region of Galilee. Mark 1:26–28 NLT

Now the tongues were wagging to a different tune. Jesus’ incredible power must have made headline news in the local gossip sessions and this was only the beginning!

A man with leprosy came to him and begged him on his knees, “If you are willing, you can make me clean.”

Filled with compassion, Jesus reached out his hand and touched the man. “I am willing,” he said. “Be clean!” Immediately the leprosy left him and he was cured.

Mark 1:40–42 NIV

In ancient times, leprosy was a dreaded disease—a horribly mutilating, slow death. The Bible says Jesus healed all kinds of nasty ailments, where the person was obviously ill or severely crippled. No man was ever sent away because his disease was incurable. He even raised the dead!

It’s important to understand that Jesus wasn’t putting on a show for the entertainment of the local populace. Jesus not only felt genuine compassion for

the people he helped, but he was also establishing that both he and his message were from Heaven. No, he didn't need a horse, a chariot, or an army. All he needed to do was speak. He was God.

### 3 NICODEMUS

Now there was a man of the Pharisees named Nicodemus, a member of the Jewish ruling council. He came to Jesus at night and said, **\*"Rabbi, we know you are a teacher who has come from God. For no one could perform the miraculous signs you are doing if God were not with him."**

\*Rabbi is the name for a Jewish religious teacher. To call a person Rabbi implied respect.

In reply Jesus declared, **"I tell you the truth, no one can see the kingdom of God unless he is born again."** John 3:1–3 NIV

Nicodemus was a man of status. He was a member of the Sanhedrin, the Jewish ruling council that advised the Romans. As a Pharisee, he kept Moses' law meticulously. As a Jew, descended from Abraham, Nicodemus was part of the people chosen to be His own. Nicodemus had a privileged

ancestry; everything was right about his birth. But Jesus found fault with it and said, “You must be born again.” Jesus was supposed to be giving good news—but this was bad news. Besides, how was it possible to be born again?

“How can a man be born when he is old?” Nicodemus asked. “Surely he cannot enter a second time into his mother’s womb to be born!”

Jesus answered, “I tell you the truth, no one can enter the kingdom of God unless he is born of water and the Spirit. Flesh gives birth to flesh, but the Spirit gives birth to spirit. You should not be surprised at my saying, ‘You must be born again.’”

John 3:4–7 NIV

So that was it. Jesus wasn’t talking about Nicodemus’ birth as an infant—when he was born of water or born of the flesh. The second birth was about a spiritual birth, a spiritual beginning. Well, that was straightforward enough. To go to Heaven you not only needed a physical birth, but you also needed to be born a second time with a spiritual birth. But how could one be born spiritually? Jesus continued:

**“Just as Moses lifted up the serpent in the wilderness, so must the Son of Man be lifted up, so that everyone who believes in him may have eternal life.”**

John 3:14–15 NET

Jesus was saying that to be born again, Nicodemus needed to have a **change of mind**. He needed to stop thinking that his birth, his status and good living would make him acceptable with God, and instead trust Jesus to provide a way of acceptance. If he put his faith in Jesus, the LORD would provide Nicodemus with eternal life.

The word **believe** in this context implies more than intellectual assent. An Israelite could have acknowledged that looking at Moses’ bronze serpent would heal him, but if he did not demonstrate faith in God by actually **looking** at the pole, then he would have died. The biblical meaning of the word includes an act of the will, and is synonymous with faith and trust.

The **object** of one’s faith is also important—it’s critical! A number of years ago, someone with a twisted mind placed deadly poison in the capsules of a pain reliever. Subsequently, several people, sincerely believing the medicine to be what was

advertised, took the medication and died. They were honestly trusting, but inadvertently trusting in the wrong thing. Sincerity based on an erroneous belief is meaningless. However, if the object of one's faith is God, such trust will have a very different effect. We've seen that God keeps His Word.

**“For God so loved the world that he gave his one and only Son, that whoever believes in him shall not perish but have eternal life.”**

John 3:16 NIV

Jesus was promising eternal life, not just to Nicodemus, but to **whoever believes** in him! The angel had instructed Mary and Joseph to name their son Jesus because that name meant **the**



**ETERNAL  
LIFE**

**LORD is our SAVIOUR.** And now Jesus was saying he would deliver man from the consequence of sin—eternal punishment in the Lake of Fire.

**“For God did not send the Son into the world to judge the world, but that the world might be saved through Him.”**

John 3:17 NASB

Jesus had not come to earth to judge it. Rather he had come to save the world from all the tragedy that sin, Satan and death had brought.

**“The one who believes in him is not condemned. The one who does not believe has been condemned already, because he has not believed in the name of the one and only Son of God.”**      John 3:18 NET

## **NO MIDDLE GROUND**

Jesus said that those who put their faith in him would not be judged as sinners. But those who did not trust in him were already under judgment. There was no middle ground; you couldn't get around it. One could not say, **“I'll think about it,”** and comfortably remain in a gray zone. You had to choose to believe, otherwise you remained an unbeliever. To make no choice was, in effect, to make a choice.

Also, you didn't need to wait until death to find out your eternal destiny. Jesus was stating it in black and white terms. A man was under judgment, bound for the Lake of Fire, until he put his trust in Jesus. Then he would have eternal life.



**ETERNAL  
JUDGMENT**

**“I tell you the truth, whoever hears my word and believes him who sent me has**

**eternal life and will not be condemned; he has crossed over from death to life."**

John 5:24 NIV

Jesus wasn't ignoring the judgment of sin. He knew that not everyone would trust in him. Many would choose not to do so for their own reasons.

**"This is the verdict: Light has come into the world, but men loved darkness instead of light because their deeds were evil. Everyone who does evil hates the light, and will not come into the light for fear that his deeds will be exposed."**

John 3:19–20 NIV

Jesus was talking about spiritual light versus spiritual darkness. He said that many hate the light because light exposes their self-righteousness. People don't like being revealed as sinners. They'd rather hide or blame their sin on someone else, just as Adam and Eve did. The Bible says such people prefer darkness. But what is this light?

**Again Jesus spoke to them, saying, "I am the light of the world."**

John 8:12 ESV

At the time of creation, God made light so we could see our way along a physical path. Now he had come to earth to be the **light** for our spiritual path.

**“Whoever follows me will not walk in darkness, but will have the light of life.”**

John 8:12 ESV

## **4 REJECTION**

**Now after some days, when he returned to Capernaum, the news spread that he was at home. So many gathered that there was no longer any room, not even by the door, and he preached the word to them. Some people came bringing to him a paralytic, carried by four of them.**

Mark 2:1–3 NET

This was a familiar scenario wherever Jesus went. As soon as he put in an appearance, the sick and lame began to arrive. In this case four men brought a paralyzed friend.

**When they were not able to bring him in because of the crowd, they removed the roof above Jesus. Then, after tearing it out, they lowered the stretcher the paralytic was lying on.**

Mark 2:4 NET

The houses of the time were typically flat-roofed. Stairs led to the top, making it a cool place to relax in the evening. When the four men could not get close to Jesus, they simply went up on

the roof, tore it open and lowered the paralyzed man down in front of Jesus. I say “simply,” but that only applies to getting up on the housetop. Tearing up the roof must have been an ordeal. You can imagine the dust and chunks of packed earth that rained down on those inside. Of course, Jesus’ lesson was interrupted. Everyone stared at the ceiling wondering what was going on. As the faces of the determined men came into view, probably Jesus’ audience took to yelling and carrying on: **“Are you guys crazy?! Where’s your respect?! We’re covered in dust! You’re wrecking the house!”** But Jesus saw something different.

**When Jesus saw their faith, he said to the paralytic, “Son, your sins are forgiven.”**

Mark 2:5 NET

Jesus was first concerned about the inward man, the heart. It was no problem for him to forgive sin. He’s God. But some of his audience had trouble accepting that. Though they didn’t say anything out loud, their thoughts were hostile.

**Now some of the scribes were sitting there, questioning in their hearts, “Why does this man speak like that? He is blaspheming! Who can forgive sins but God alone?”**

Mark 2:6–7 ESV

They were right—only God can forgive sin!

**Jesus knew immediately what they were thinking, so he asked them, “Why do you question this in your hearts?”** Mark 2:8 NLT

Jesus knew what they were reasoning, and he told them so. You can imagine the Scribes’ mortification. They probably backtracked in their minds, trying to remember what they had been thinking during the previous ten minutes. One thing was certain—Jesus could read their thoughts! But Jesus wasn’t trying to impress them. He had a question.

**“Is it easier to say to the paralyzed man ‘Your sins are forgiven,’ or ‘Stand up, pick up your mat, and walk’?”** Mark 2:9 NLT

## **QUESTIONS, QUESTIONS**

A lawyer could not have framed a more difficult question. You can see the Scribes straining their brains. “The man was obviously paralyzed. To restore the crippled limbs to use was impossible. Only God could heal such an infirmity. But if Jesus could give life to withered limbs, then that meant he was...no, that was unthinkable. God would never come to earth and live a life like Jesus did. He was a nobody, living on the dusty outskirts of the empire. The audacity to ask such a loaded

question! Who did he think he was anyway? God!?” Jesus answered their query without them asking ...

**“But that you may know that the Son of Man has authority on earth to forgive sins”—he said to the paralytic—“I say to you, rise, pick up your bed, and go home.” And he rose and immediately picked up his bed and went out before them all, so that they were all amazed and glorified God, saying, “We never saw anything like this!”**

Mark 2:10–12 ESV

The purpose of the miracles was not to create something equivalent to a vaudeville act or a circus side show. The miracles authenticated who Jesus said he was—that he was God.

**Jesus went out again by the sea... As he went along, he saw Levi, the son of Alphaeus, sitting at the tax booth. “Follow me,” he said to him. And he got up and followed him.**

Mark 2:13–14 NET

Although Levi was a Jew, he worked as a tax collector for the Romans. These money-grubbers gained their shekels from a hidden surcharge on the tax, and often grossly overcharged the people in order to comfortably line their own pockets.

They were hated for their corrupt power and for their willingness to work as bloodsuckers for the Romans. Nevertheless, as Jesus passed the tax office, he invited Levi to follow him.

As Jesus was having a meal in Levi's home, many tax collectors and sinners were eating with Jesus and his disciples...

When the experts in the law and the Pharisees saw that he was eating with sinners and tax collectors, they said to his disciples, "Why does he eat with tax collectors and sinners?"

When Jesus heard this he said to them, "Those who are healthy don't need a physician, but those who are sick do. I have not come to call the righteous, but sinners."

Mark 2:15-17 NET

Jesus affirmed that he could only help those who recognized their own sinfulness.

## **WORKING ON THE SABBATH**

Jesus' constant rebukes must have been galling to the Pharisees. They were losing face. Hoping to catch Jesus in some act of blatant sin, they began to keep a close eye on him.

Another time he went into the synagogue, and a man with a shriveled hand was there. Some of them were looking for a reason to accuse Jesus, so they watched him closely to see if he would heal him on the Sabbath.

Mark 3:1–2 NIV

According to the Law, no one was to work on the Sabbath. To work was to break God’s Law and that would be sin. In the Pharisees’ minds, work included such things as performing the service of a doctor. The Law didn’t say it was wrong to heal on this day, but the Pharisees had encircled the Ten Commandments with their own list of rules, and those precepts had taken on the authority of Scripture. So they watched to see if Jesus would heal the man, if he would “work” on the Sabbath. But Jesus was fully aware of the purpose for which God had given the Law. Knowing the Pharisees’ scheme to entrap him, Christ could have avoided a confrontation but he didn’t back off.



**Jesus said to the man with the deformed hand, "Come and stand in front of everyone."**

Mark 3:3 NLY

You can see Jesus slowly turn and fix his gaze on those who had plotted to accuse him. The moment is frozen ...

**And he said to them, "Is it lawful on the Sabbath to do good or to do harm, to save life or to kill?"**

Mark 3:4 ESV

There he went again, asking loaded questions! The Pharisees were in a huff—seething with anger and resentment. As the religious answer-men, their credibility was being tarnished.

**But they were silent.**

**And he looked around at them with anger, grieved at their hardness of heart, and said to the man, "Stretch out your hand." He stretched it out, and his hand was restored.**

Mark 3:4–5 ESV

Jesus had done it. He had "worked" on the Sabbath! The Pharisees had caught him in the act.

**Then the Pharisees went out and began to plot with the Herodians how they might kill Jesus.**

Mark 3:6 NIV

Normally such an alliance would have been unthinkable. The Herodians were a political party which supported the rule of Herod and the Romans. On the other hand, the Pharisees despised the Romans—but they hated Jesus even more. If they were going to kill him, they would need Rome’s help. As far as they were concerned, he could not be **THE PROMISED DELIVERER**.

### **THE TWELVE DISCIPLES**

**Jesus went up on a mountainside and called to him those he wanted, and they came to him. He appointed twelve—designating them apostles...**

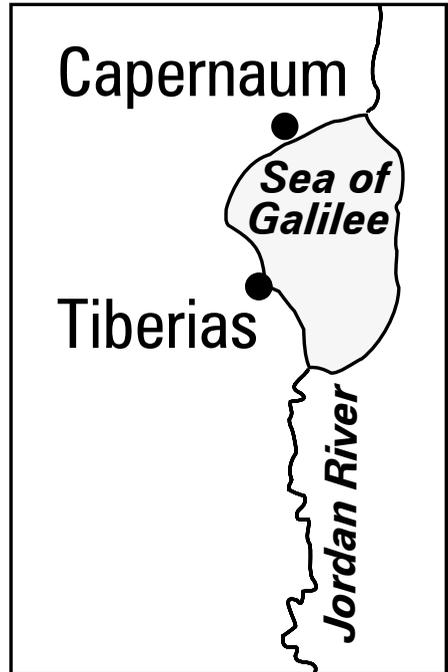
**Simon (to whom he gave the name Peter); James, son of Zebedee and his brother ... John (to them he gave the name Boanerges, which means Sons of Thunder); Andrew, Philip, Bartholomew, Matthew, Thomas, James son of Alphaeus, Thaddaeus, Simon the Zealot and ... Judas Iscariot, who betrayed him. Mark 3:13–14, 16–19 NIV**

From those who followed him, Jesus selected twelve disciples with whom he would spend extra time. They were a mixed lot comprised of a Rome-employed tax collector on one end of the

social spectrum and, on the other end, a zealot pledged to overthrow the Romans. Among the remaining were an assortment of fishermen. Only God could have maintained peace between these rugged men! Regardless of their background, these twelve were all committed to following Jesus through thick and thin. That is, all but one.

## 5 THE BREAD OF LIFE

Some time after this, Jesus crossed to the far shore of the Sea of Galilee ... and a great crowd of people followed him because they saw the miraculous signs he had performed on the sick. Then Jesus went up on a mountainside and sat down with his disciples.



When Jesus looked up and saw a great crowd coming toward him, he said to Philip, "Where shall we buy bread for these people to eat?"

John 6:1-5 NIV

Jesus was asking questions again.

He asked this only to test him, for he already had in mind what he was going to do.

Philip answered him, "Eight months' wages would not buy enough bread for each one to have a bite!"

Another of his disciples, Andrew, Simon Peter's brother, spoke up, "Here is a boy with five small barley loaves and two small fish, but how far will they go among so many?"

John 6:6-9 NIV

You can't help wondering if Andrew was like a small boy hinting to his father, hoping that Jesus could do something.

Jesus said, "Have the people sit down." (Now there was a lot of grass in that place.) So the men sat down, about five thousand in number. Then Jesus took the loaves, and when he had given thanks, he distributed the bread to those who were seated. He then did the same with the fish, as much as they wanted.

John 6:10-11 NET

The biblical account is stated so matter-of-factly that you almost miss what happened. Jesus had just fed a massive crowd with a boy's lunch. He had divided the bread and fish among his twelve disciples, and they apportioned it to five thousand men—the women and children would have been in addition to this number. This was reproduction of an unheard-of magnitude.

**Now when the people saw the miraculous sign that Jesus performed, they began to say to one another, "This is certainly the Prophet who is to come into the world."**

John 6:14 NET

The men who had benefited from this miracle were so impressed that they decided they would forcibly install Jesus as their king. But Jesus wasn't interested in starting an earthly kingdom, though there would be a time for that in the future. For now he was seeking to rule peoples' hearts.

**Then Jesus, because he knew they were going to come and seize him by force to make him king, withdrew again up the mountainside alone.**

**When they found him ... they said to him, "Rabbi, when did you get here?" Jesus replied, "I tell you the solemn truth, you are looking for me not because you saw miraculous signs, but because you ate all the loaves of bread you wanted."**

John 6:15,25-26 NET

Jesus could see that the people only wanted him to be king so that they could get free food. They weren't interested in the fact that these miracles revealed that he was **THE PROMISED SAVIOUR**. Jesus said ...

**"Do not work for the food that disappears, but for the food that remains to eternal life—the food which the Son of Man will give to you. For God the Father has put his seal of approval on him."** John 6:27 NET

The food they ate could only sustain life for a short time. Sooner or later, they would all die. Therefore, Jesus said their all-consuming goal in life should be to pursue eternal life.

**So then they said to him, "What must we do to accomplish the deeds God requires?" Jesus replied, "This is the deed God requires—to believe in the one whom he sent."**

John 6:28-29 NET

The people wanted to know what sort of work they would have to do to earn everlasting life. Jesus said that they only needed to **believe**; they only needed to trust in him to be their Saviour. That was all. It seemed so simple.

**So they said to him, "Then what miraculous sign will you perform, so that we may see it and believe you?"** John 6:30 NET

What was that? They were asking Jesus for a sign to prove that he was God, as if feeding the five thousand with a boy's lunch wasn't enough?! What they were really asking for was another free meal, another loaf of bread.

**Then Jesus said to them, "Most assuredly, I say to you... My Father gives you the true bread from heaven. For the bread of God is He who comes down from heaven and gives life to the world."**

**Then they said to Him, "Lord, give us this bread always."**

**And Jesus said to them, "I am the bread of life. He who comes to Me shall never hunger, and he who believes in Me shall never thirst."** John 6:32-35 NKJV

# CHAPTER TWELVE

**1** FILTHY RAGS

**2** THE WAY

**3** LAZARUS

**4** HELL

**5** ACCEPTANCE AND BETRAYAL

# 1 FILTHY RAGS

Jesus was a master storyteller, often using parables to make a point. A parable is a story that contains one simple message. In this case, he directed the story to those who thought they were **right** with God because they trusted in themselves.

**To some who were confident of their own righteousness and looked down on everybody else, Jesus told this parable: “Two men went up to the temple to pray, one a Pharisee and the other a tax collector.”** Luke 18:9–10 NIV

In the Jewish culture of that day, Pharisees were viewed as meticulous keepers of Moses’ law. In contrast, the tax collectors were considered to be crooks. Now here were two people from opposite ends of the moral spectrum, praying in the same place.

## THE PHARISEE

**“The Pharisee stood up and prayed about himself: ‘God, I thank you that I am not like other men—robbers, evildoers, adulterers—or even like this tax collector. I \*fast twice a week and give a tenth of all I get.’”** Luke 18:11–12 NIV

\*His fasting, or doing without food, was presumably for giving time to prayer. He also gave a tenth of his income to a charitable cause.

In patting himself on the back, the Pharisee mentioned only a couple of things that he did or did not do. His list could have been lengthy. But that didn't matter. The way he prayed showed the attitude of his heart. He was relying on his own right living (or good works) to make himself righteous before God.

### THE TAX COLLECTOR

**“But the tax collector stood at a distance. He would not even look up to heaven, but beat his breast and said, ‘God, have mercy on me, a sinner.’”** Luke 18:13 NIV

The tax collector was overwhelmed by the awareness that he was a sinner and that he desperately needed God's help. He begged God for mercy, asking him to provide a way to escape the rightful punishment for his sin. Jesus continued:

**“I tell you that this man, rather than the other, went home \*justified before God. For everyone who exalts himself will be humbled, and he who humbles himself will be exalted.”** Luke 18:14 NIV

\* Justified means to be declared righteous.

It is interesting that Jesus tied repentance to humility. The Bible makes it very clear that pride is what caused Satan to fall. It is also pride which

causes man to hold back from admitting that he is a sinner, needing to trust God. The Pharisee was convinced that, if he was diligent in observing all the Law and performing good deeds, God would be pleased. He was proud to the point that he was blind to his own need. Jesus said:

**“Isaiah was right when he prophesied about you hypocrites; as it is written: ‘These people honor me with their lips, but their hearts are far from me. They worship me in vain; their teachings are but rules taught by men.’ You have let go of the commands of God and are holding on to the traditions of men.”**      Mark 7:6–8 NIV

## **BLIND**

Outwardly, the Pharisees went through the motions of appearing righteous, but inwardly, they were sinful. They also undercut the intent of the Ten Commandments by adding their own man-made rules. Jesus said:

**“Thus you nullify the word of God by your tradition that you have handed down.”**

Mark 7:13 NET

The Pharisees believed that their **religious** observances, their **good works** and their Jewish

birth would make them right with God. Jesus said that these things do nothing to make a person acceptable, because evil...

“...come[s] from inside and make[s] a man `unclean.’”

Mark 7:23 NIV

The Bible is clear on this point: good deeds do not earn a right standing with God. Indeed it says...

...all our righteous acts are like filthy rags...

Isaiah 64:6 NIV



Sometimes people view themselves as models of perfection, but the Bible states quite the opposite. It says that all people...

**...are slaves to sin, which leads to death ...**

Romans 6:16 NIV

Sin has wrapped its chains around the life of every human.

**“I tell you the truth, everyone who sins is a slave of sin.”**

John 8:34 NLT

We often get frustrated because the harder we try to do that which is right, the more we seem to fail. Just as we get one area of life under control, we find ourselves falling short in another. In every way, the sin nature works against our efforts to live right.

In addition, the Bible speaks of Satan making man his SLAVE. This doesn't necessarily mean that a person has been dabbling in the occult; rather, the Devil manipulates man by temptation and pride to accomplish his ends. Indeed, Satan works very hard to convince man that he is good. The Scripture says that people need to...



SLAVE

**...come to their senses and escape from the trap of the devil, who has taken them captive to do his will.** 2 Timothy 2:26 NIV

Just because man is a slave to sin and Satan, does not justify a devilish lifestyle. God still

holds everyone responsible for the choices they make. But being slaves does create a dilemma. The sort of perfection man needs to enter the presence of a perfect God is far beyond man's capability to achieve. The age-old question still remains. "How can we get rid of our sin and gain a righteousness equal to God's righteousness so we can be accepted in his presence?"

### **I WAS BORN A CHRISTIAN ...**

The word **Christian** implies **Christ-one** or **belonging to the household of Christ**. The biblical meaning has been distorted and confused beyond belief. But even in the original sense of the word, to say that one has been **born a Christian** is not accurate. Being born in a **Christian home** no more makes you a Christian than being born in a hospital makes you a doctor. Physical birth has nothing to do with our relationship with God or our future destiny.

Though the term is used of entire nations, rightly understood it can only apply to an individual. Some supposedly **Christian nations** have perpetrated terrible crimes in the name of Christ. Others are morally corrupt.

## 2 THE WAY

Often Jesus used common day-to-day experiences to illustrate spiritual truth. In this story, Jesus began by reminding his listeners of the sort of pen in which sheep were kept. The enclosure was constructed using stones, upon which thorny vines were encouraged to grow. The purpose of these brambles was to dissuade wild animals or thieves from crawling over the wall. The pen had only one entrance.

During the day, the shepherd would lead his flock out to the pasture for grazing. At night, the flock would be returned to the fold and the shepherd would sleep in the entrance. No one could enter and the sheep could not leave without disturbing the guardian. The shepherd's body literally became the door to the pen.

**Therefore Jesus said again, "I tell you the truth, I am the gate for the sheep."**

John 10:7 NIV

Jesus compared those who trust him as being sheep, safely secured in the sheep pen.

**"Yes, I am the gate. Those who come in through me will be saved."** John 10:9 NLT

Jesus said that he alone was the gate—there were no other doors. It was only through him that one could be saved from the terrible consequences of sin. It was only through him that one could have eternal life.

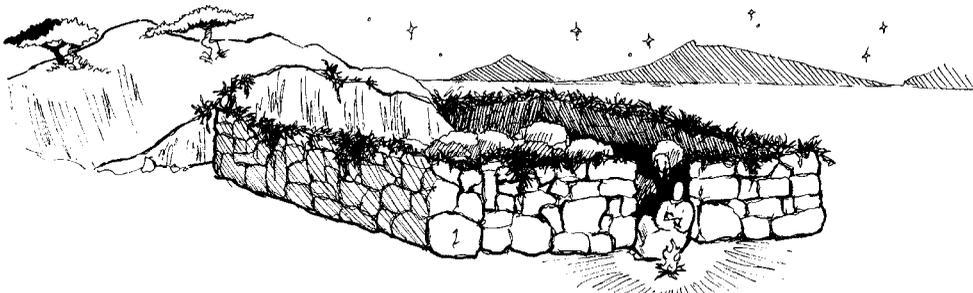
**“The thief comes only to steal and kill and destroy. I came that they may have life and have it abundantly.”** John 10:10 ESV

Thieves do not care about the welfare of sheep. The Bible calls them false teachers. Often they use the Bible to feed a power trip or thicken their wallets. These thieves fabricate a way to earn eternal life—a way that appears good, but still ends in spiritual death.

**There is a way that seems right to a man, but in the end it leads to death.**

Proverbs 14:12 NIV

On the other hand, Jesus came to give a full life to those who trust in Him, a life abundant with joy. Jesus said ...



**“I am the way, and the truth, and the life. No one comes to the Father except through me.”**

John 14:6 ESV

Jesus said:

He is the **only way** to God.

His Word is the **only truth**.

Eternal **life** can **only** be found in Him.

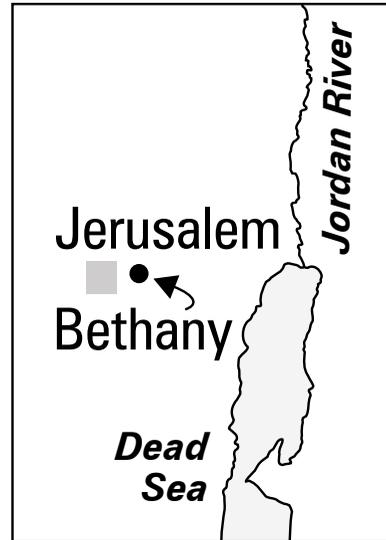
Jesus emphasized that no one can come to God any other way. Just as the shepherd was the only gate to the sheepfold, so Jesus is the only way to God.



### 3 LAZARUS

Now a certain man named Lazarus was sick. He was from Bethany, the village where Mary and her sister Martha lived... the sisters sent a message to Jesus, "Lord, look, the one you love is sick."

John 11:1,3 NET



Lazarus, Mary and Martha were close friends of Jesus who lived a couple of miles from Jerusalem. At the time of this event, Jesus was on the other side of the Jordan River, a full day's journey from Bethany.

Jesus loved Martha and her sister and Lazarus. Yet when he heard that Lazarus was sick, he stayed where he was two more days.

John 11:5-6 NIV

Now that doesn't make sense. In this day of quick-response rescue teams, everyone knows that when someone is seriously ill, delays can be fatal. But Jesus stayed where he was for another two days! What was going on in his mind?

Then he said to his disciples, "Let us go back to Judea."

"But Rabbi," they said, "a short while ago the Jews tried to stone you, and yet you are going back there?"

So then he told them plainly, "Lazarus is dead, and for your sake I am glad I was not there, so that you may believe. But let us go to him." John 11:7-8, 14-15 NIV

## **DEAD FOUR DAYS**

When Jesus arrived, he found that Lazarus had been in the tomb four days already. (Now Bethany was less than two miles from Jerusalem, so many of the Jewish people of the region had come to Martha and Mary to console them over the loss of their brother.) So when Martha heard that Jesus was coming, she went out to meet him, but Mary was sitting in the house.

Martha said to Jesus, "Lord, if you had been here, my brother would not have died. But even now I know that whatever you ask from God, God will grant you."

John 11:17-22 NET

We are not told what Martha thought Jesus might ask God for, but one thing is abundantly clear—she had faith in him.

**Jesus replied, “Your brother will come back to life again.” Martha said, “I know that he will come back to life again in the resurrection at the last day.”**

John 11:23–24 NET

Martha wasn't surprised at Jesus' statement. She knew that the Bible says that all people will come back to life, but that would occur at the end of the world when everyone will be judged by God. Until then, a person only dies once.

**Jesus said to her, “I am the resurrection and the life. The one who believes in me will live even if he dies, and the one who lives and believes in me will never die. Do you believe this?”**

John 11:25–26 NET

These were potent words. Jesus told Martha that Lazarus did not have to wait until the day of judgment to be raised back to life. Jesus was the one who gave life, and therefore had the power to restore life to Lazarus at any moment. Did she believe him?

**“Yes, Lord,” she told him, “I believe that you are the Christ, the Son of God, who was to come into the world.”** John 11:27 NIV

Martha not only believed Jesus; she also affirmed that he was the Christ—the Messiah, God Himself.

**And He said, “Where have you laid him?”**

**They said to Him, “Lord, come and see.”**

**Jesus wept.**

John 11:34–35 NKJV

There has been much speculation about why Jesus cried. Some have conjectured that Jesus grieved at the thought of bringing Lazarus back to life—back from all the joy and perfection of Paradise—back to the earth with all its sin and sorrow. The Bible doesn’t tell us why, but the fact that he wept does show us that Jesus experienced human feelings, even though he was sinless.

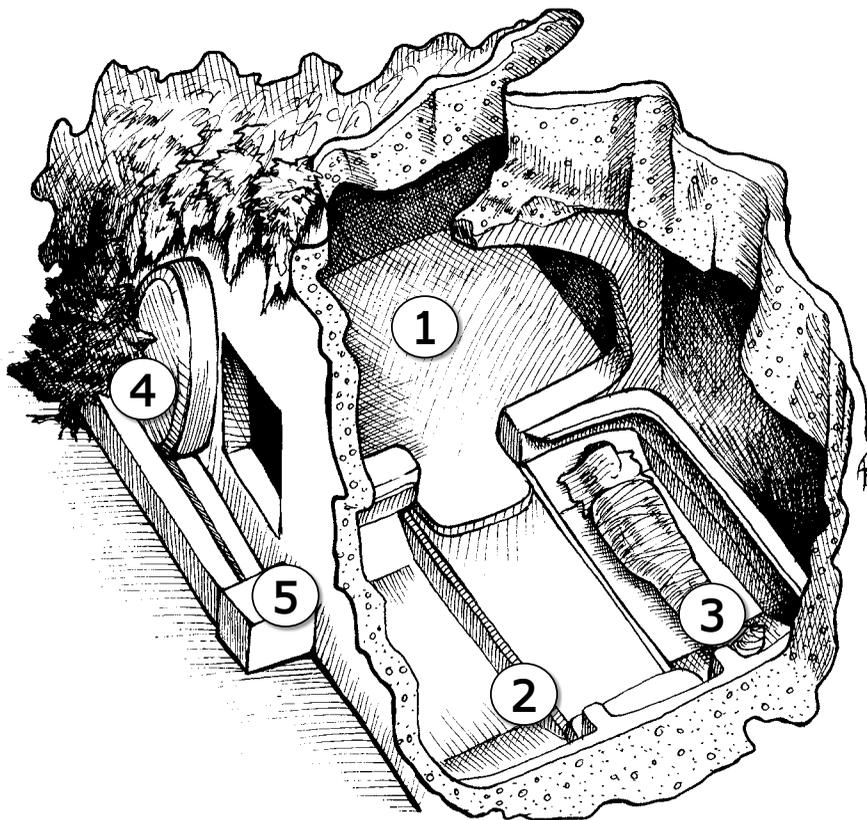
**So the Jews said, “See how he loved him!”**

**But some of them said, “Could not he who opened the eyes of the blind man also have kept this man from dying?”**

**Then Jesus, deeply moved again, came to the tomb. It was a cave, and a stone lay against it.**

John 11:36–38 ESV

The traditional Jewish burial of the day often involved placing the body in a tomb which, over time, became the last resting place of successive generations. A natural cave was commonly used, though sometimes the sepulcher was hewn out of solid rock. These tombs were large; you could stand upright in the ❶ weeping chamber. Inside, ❷ shelves were carved on which to lay the ❸ bodies. A ❹ wheel-shaped rock, weighing several tons, was hewn to tightly seal the entrance. Resting in a ❺ trench, this door could be rolled back and forth.



When closed, the door rested in a small hollow in front of the entrance, preventing the stone from rolling open.

**Jesus said, "Take away the stone."**

**Martha, the sister of the dead man, said to him, "Lord, by this time there will be an odor, for he has been dead four days."**

**Jesus said to her, "Did I not tell you that if you believed you would see the glory of God?" So they took away the stone. And Jesus lifted up his eyes and said, "Father, I thank you that you have heard me. I knew that you always hear me, but I said this on account of the people standing around, that they may believe that you sent me." When he had said these things, he cried out with a loud voice, "Lazarus, come out." The man who had died came out, his hands and feet bound with linen strips, and his face wrapped with a cloth.**

**Jesus said to them, "Unbind him, and let him go."**

John 11:39-44 ESV

It was a good thing that Jesus said, "Lazarus..." If he had simply said "come forth!" the whole cemetery would have emptied its dead! Lazarus

was alive! His friends had to unwind the long strips of burial clothes before Lazarus could walk away. There was no doubt that Jesus had performed a tremendous miracle.

Therefore many of the Jews who had come to visit Mary, and had seen what Jesus did, put their faith in him. But some of them went to the Pharisees and told them what Jesus had done. Then the chief priests and the Pharisees called a meeting of the \*Sanhedrin.

\*The Sanhedrin was the Jewish ruling council.

“What are we accomplishing?” they asked. “Here is this man performing many miraculous signs. If we let him go on like this, everyone will believe in him, and then the Romans will come and take away both our place and our nation.”

So from that day on they plotted to take his life.

John 11:45–48, 53 NIV

Some believed, but others plotted. Not even a resurrection could convince the chief priests and Pharisees. They had too much at stake—their power and their pride. It sort of sounds like Lucifer. No doubt it was!

## REINCARNATION

Reincarnation is the belief that, after death, a departed spirit returns to the earth to live again in the form of another human or animal.

Not only is this concept **not** taught in the Bible, but the Bible clearly teaches the opposite. Each person has only one life.

**... man is destined to die once, and after that to face judgment...**

Hebrews 9:27 NIV

**As the cloud disappears and vanishes away, So he who goes down to the grave does not come up. He shall never return to his house, Nor shall his place know him anymore.**     Job 7:9–10 NKJV

## 4 HELL

For three years Jesus taught all who would listen. It seems an incredibly brief span of time, considering everything that happened. His teaching ranged from comforting to provoking, from parables to accounts of real people, each suited to the need of the listener. On this occasion, Jesus related the following true story:

“There was a rich man who was dressed in purple and fine linen and lived in luxury every day. At his gate was laid a beggar named Lazarus, covered with sores and longing to eat what fell from the rich man’s table. Even the dogs came and licked his sores.”

Luke 16:19–21 NIV

### THE BEGGAR DIES

“Now the poor man died and was carried by the angels to Abraham’s side.”

Luke 16:22 NET

For the intent of this study, **Abraham’s side** is equivalent to Heaven and is sometimes referred to as **paradise**. The man in question here was a different person than the Lazarus in the last story. This Lazarus went to **paradise**, not because he was poor, but because he trusted the LORD.



ETERNAL  
LIFE

### THE RICH MAN DIES

“The rich man also died and was buried. And in hell, as he was in torment, he looked up and saw Abraham far off with Lazarus at his side. So he called out, ‘Father Abraham, have mercy on me, and send Lazarus to dip the tip of his finger in water and cool

my tongue, because I am in anguish in this fire.””

Luke 16:22–24 NET

The rich man had gone to Hell, not because he was wealthy, but because he ignored God and lived only for himself while on earth. He begged Abraham for help.



ETERNAL  
JUDGMENT

“But Abraham said, ‘Child, remember that in your lifetime you received your good things and Lazarus likewise bad things, but now he is comforted here and you are in anguish. Besides all this, a great chasm has been fixed between us, so that those who want to cross over from here to you cannot do so, and no one can cross from there to us.’”

Luke 16:25–26 NET

The Bible makes it clear that one can only repent—have a change of mind—while here on earth. After a person dies, there is no second chance, no opportunity to escape Hell for Heaven. Those who die and are not in a right relationship with God remain separated from him forever. Nowhere does the Scripture suggest that one can escape this place of suffering. Even though the rich man cried out for a measure of relief from his torment,

there was none. Mercy can only be received during this lifetime. The rich man continued ...

**“Then I beg you, father—send Lazarus to my father’s house (for I have five brothers) to warn them so that they don’t come into this place of torment.”** Luke 16:27–28 NET

Even though this man was in terrible agony, he could remember his life on earth. He knew that his five brothers were not right with God and wanted them to be warned.

The idea of partying with one’s friends in Hell is foreign to the Bible. Those in Hell wouldn’t wish it on their worst enemies.

**“But Abraham said, ‘They have Moses and the Prophets; let them hear them.’**

**And he said, ‘No, father Abraham, but if someone goes to them from the dead, they will repent.’**

**[Abraham] said to him, ‘If they do not hear Moses and the Prophets, neither will they be convinced if someone should rise from the dead.’”** Luke 16:29–31 ESV

Earlier, we read of one whom Jesus raised from the dead. Yet in spite of this great demonstration of

power, many still would not accept Jesus. Instead, they plotted to kill him. The Bible says that if people refuse to believe God’s written Word, then...

**“...neither will they be convinced if someone should rise from the dead.”**

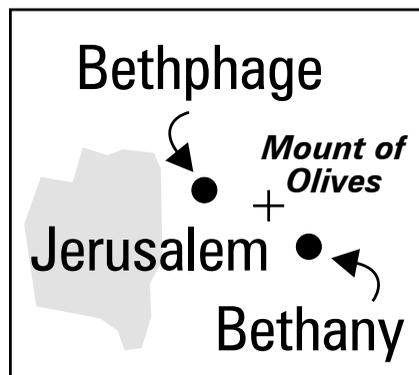
Luke 16:31 ESV

The description of Hell is almost synonymous with that of the Lake of Fire.<sup>1</sup> The Bible says that those who enter Hell have already entered everlasting punishment.

## 5 ACCEPTANCE AND BETRAYAL

Now as they approached Jerusalem, near Bethphage and Bethany, at the Mount of Olives, Jesus sent two of his disciples and said to them, “Go to the village ahead of you. As soon as you enter it, you will find a colt tied there that has never been ridden. Untie it and bring it here.” Mark 11:1–2 NET

Then they brought the colt to Jesus, threw their cloaks on it, and



he sat on it. Many spread their cloaks on the road and others spread branches they had cut in the fields. Both those who went ahead and those who followed kept shouting, "Hosanna! Blessed is the one who comes in the name of the Lord! Blessed is the coming kingdom of our father David! Hosanna in the highest!" Mark 11:7-10 NET

## SAVE NOW

The word *hosanna* means *save now*. The crowd was giving Jesus an impromptu version of a Roman parade normally used to welcome a triumphant conqueror. They were applauding and praising him in hopes that he would oust their Roman oppressors.



Unbeknown to them, they were fulfilling a 500 year old prophecy. The Prophet Zechariah had written that Jesus would receive just such a welcome.

**Rejoice greatly, O Daughter of Zion!  
Shout, Daughter of Jerusalem! See, your  
king comes to you, righteous and having  
salvation, gentle and riding on a donkey,  
on a colt, the foal of a donkey.**

Zechariah 9:9 NIV

This is the only time Jesus ever allowed such a momentous reception on his behalf. He had a reason. Jesus was forcing the hand of those who were out to kill him. He wanted them to act now, without delay.

**It was now two days before the Passover and the Feast of Unleavened Bread. And the chief priests and the scribes were seeking how to arrest him by stealth and kill him, for they said, "Not during the feast, lest there be an uproar from the people."**

Mark 14:1–2 ESV

From the perspective of the shouting crowd, it was time for Jesus to announce that he was the true King of Israel. But for the religious leaders who were plotting his death, it was an awkward situation. If Jesus needed to be put off the stage, now was the time, but they were afraid of the public reaction. Jesus was obviously very popular. The city was crammed with people for the Passover, many of whom were expectantly watching Jesus in the hope that he would evict the Romans. But as the hours passed with no official proclamation of his kingship, his hero-status was fast fading.

## THE PASSOVER MEAL

Jesus instructed two disciples to arrange a room for the Passover.

And when it was evening, he came with the twelve. And as they were reclining at table and eating, Jesus said, "Truly, I say to you, one of you will betray me, one who is eating with me." They began to be sorrowful and to say to him one after another, "Is it I?"

He said to them, "It is one of the twelve, one who is dipping bread into the dish with me."

Mark 14:17–20 ESV

When Jesus chose his twelve disciples three years earlier, he knew that one was a traitor.



1000 years before this time, King David, in speaking of this betrayal, had written from THE SAVIOUR'S perspective...

"Even my close friend, whom I trusted, he who shared my bread, has lifted up his heel against me."

Psalms 41:9 NIV

## BETRAYED

The traitor was Judas Iscariot. Though he was treasurer for the disciples, he was also a thief.

Apparently, he oiled his ambitions and lined his pockets without the disciples being any the wiser. But Jesus knew, and apparently Satan knew it too. He had been watching for a weak link in Jesus' armor, a time and place to crush THE PROMISED SAVIOUR forever. Now Satan saw his opportunity. Judas was willing. As the Passover bread was being served, the Devil made his move.

And after Judas took the piece of bread, Satan entered into him.

Jesus said to him, "What you are about to do, do quickly." (Now none of those present at the table understood why Jesus said this to Judas...) John 13:27-28 NET

[Judas] went away and discussed with the chief priests and officers of the temple guard how he might betray Jesus, handing him over to them. They were delighted and arranged to give him money.

Luke 22:4-5 NET

### **THE BROKEN BREAD AND THE CUP**

This scenario with Judas happened in the middle of the meal. While the traitor went about his diabolical mission, Jesus continued with the supper. It has great significance.

**While they were eating, He took some bread, and after a blessing He broke it, and gave it to them, and said, "Take it; this is My body."** Mark 14:22 NASB

Obviously they weren't eating Jesus' flesh, and yet Jesus was saying that the broken Passover loaf represented his body. The disciples must have been rather perplexed. Did this have to do with his earlier reference to himself as the Bread of Life?

**And he took a cup, and when he had given thanks he gave it to them, and they all drank of it.**

**And he said to them, "This is my blood of the covenant, which is poured out for many."** Mark 14:23–24 ESV

Again the symbolism was similar—Jesus' blood would soon be poured out for many people. We will see the significance of this later on.

**And when they had sung a \*hymn, they went out to the Mount of Olives.** Mark 14:26 ESV

\* a song praising God.

**1 Sunday:**

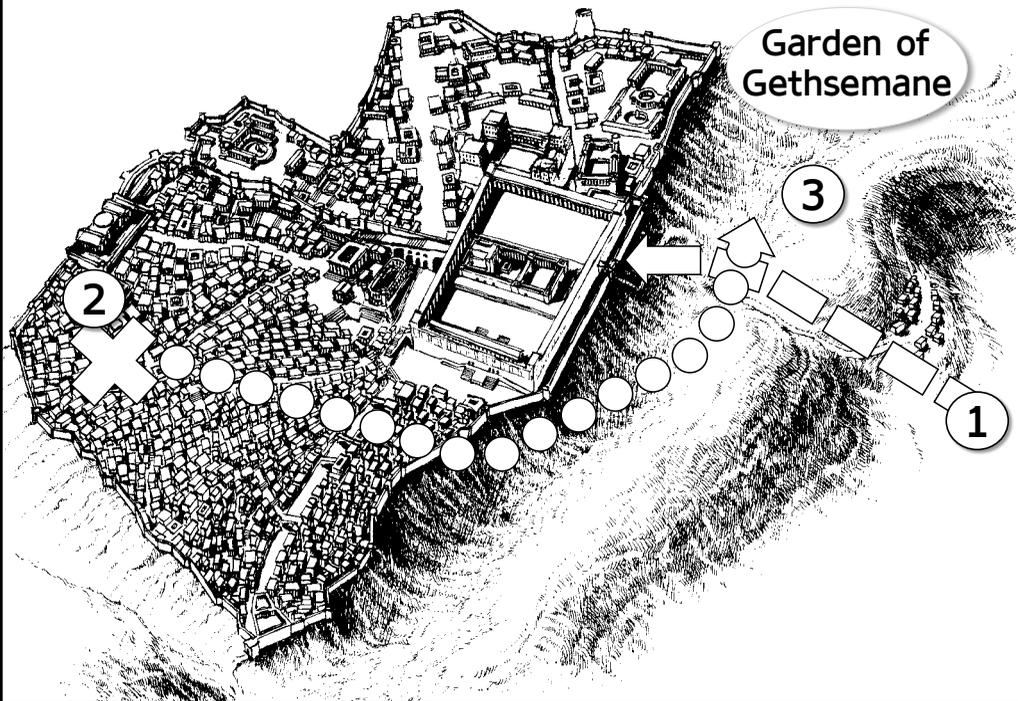
Jesus rides into Jerusalem on the back of a colt. The crowds welcome him with shouts of "Hosanna!"

**2 Monday to Wednesday:**

Jesus and his twelve disciples spend time in and around Jerusalem and Bethany.

**3 Thursday Night:**

Jesus and his disciples celebrate the Passover together. After singing a hymn they depart for the Garden of Gethsemane, located at the foot of the Mount of Olives.



# CHAPTER THIRTEEN

**1 THE ARREST**

**2 THE CRUCIFIXION**

**3 THE BURIAL AND RESURRECTION**

# 1 THE ARREST

And they went to a place called Gethsemane. And he said to his disciples, "Sit here while I pray." And he took with him Peter and James and John, and began to be greatly distressed and troubled. And he said to them, "My soul is very sorrowful, even to death. Remain here and watch."

And going a little farther, he fell on the ground and prayed that, if it were possible, the hour might pass from him. And he said, \***"Abba, Father, all things are possible for you. Remove this cup from me. Yet not what I will, but what you will."**

Mark 14:32–36 ESV

\* A term of endearment similar to daddy or papa.

## HIS HUMANITY

Sometimes in emphasizing that Jesus was truly God, it's easy to forget that he was also human. Suffering was not foreign to Jesus—he knew and felt pain. Being God, he knew the future agony he was about to face. He felt overwhelmed with the prospect that faced him. In the intimate language that only a son could have with his dear father, Jesus cried out, **Abba—Daddy—please find another**

way. But then he submitted his human will to his heavenly Father and prayed, Your will be done.

Immediately while He was still speaking, Judas, one of the twelve, came up accompanied by a crowd with swords and clubs, who were from the chief priests and the scribes and the elders.

Now he who was betraying Him had given them a signal, saying, "Whomever I kiss, He is the one; seize Him and lead Him away under guard." Mark 14:43-44 NASB

Then Jesus, knowing all that would happen to him, came forward and said to them, "Whom do you seek?"

They answered him, "Jesus of Nazareth." John 18:4-5 ESV

## HE SPOKE

Jesus said to them, "I am {he}." Judas, who betrayed him, was standing with them. John 18:5 ESV

The word {he} does not appear in the original Greek text. It was supplied to help the English rendering flow better, but in this case it distracts from the significance of what Jesus said. Jesus

answered the question with an emphatic **"I AM!"** It could be translated<sup>1</sup> literally, **"I am right now, GOD!"** As we have seen, **I AM** is God's name, meaning **the One who exists by his own power**. And it wasn't just anyone saying it; it was God himself. The effect is worth noting.

**When Jesus said, "I am he," they drew back and fell to the ground.** John 18:6 NIV

They didn't simply drop to the ground; they drew back and fell down. Jesus **blew them off their feet** with a mini-burst of his majesty. After the stunned group had clambered to their feet and dusted themselves off...

**Again he asked them, "Who is it you want?"**

**And they said, "Jesus of Nazareth."**

John 18:7 NIV

You can almost sense the crowd's respect and fear. Jesus had unsettled the mob. This was not shaping up to be a typical arrest. Their wall of confidence cracked even more when Jesus revealed that he knew the agreed-upon sign of betrayal.

**...Jesus said to him, "Judas, are you betraying the Son of Man with a kiss?"**

Luke 22:48 NKJV

**Judas immediately went to Him, saying, “Rabbi!” and kissed Him.** Mark 14:45 NASB

The other eleven disciples were galvanized into action. Simon Peter had a weapon...

**With that, one of Jesus’ companions reached for his sword, drew it out and struck the servant of the high priest, cutting off his ear.** Matthew 26:51 NIV

**But Jesus said, “No more of this!” And he touched his ear and healed him.**

Luke 22:51 ESV

What can you say? Even in the midst of all the tension, Jesus was thinking of others; he healed the High Priest’s servant. It was a short-sighted effort on Peter’s part anyway—zeal without knowledge. On a human level, the disciples were greatly outnumbered. You can’t help admiring Peter’s efforts. At least he tried! But obviously Peter was better with nets than swords. When you aim at the head and get an ear, it tells you something.

### **QUESTIONS, QUESTIONS**

Then Jesus asked a question—an uncomfortable question.

**And Jesus said to them, "Have you come out with swords and clubs to arrest Me, as you would against a robber? Every day I was with you in the temple teaching, and you did not seize Me; but this has taken place to fulfill the Scriptures."**

Mark 14:48–49 NASB

God's questions always expose a person's true thoughts, and if the rabble had taken a moment to think, they would have realized the inconsistency of their actions. But they were so fixated in their determination to do away with Christ, even another encounter with the miraculous power of this man didn't deter them the least bit.

Fearing for their lives, the disciples fled into the night.

**And they all left him and fled.**

Mark 14:50 ESV

**Then the detachment of troops and the captain and the officers of the Jews arrested Jesus and bound Him.**

John 18:12 NKJV

One can hardly read this without feeling some sense of incongruity. Jesus was only one individual. The detachment sent to arrest him would have numbered between 300 and 600 soldiers. In

addition, there were Jewish officials, priests and servants. It was an overkill for sure, but you can't help wondering if deep down inside they felt a poverty of power. They rushed Jesus and bound him. Satan must have chortled with delight.

### **IN COURT**

**They led Jesus away to the high priest; and all the chief priests and the elders and the scribes gathered together.**

Mark 14:53 NKJV

Temple courts were not held at night. The fact that the Sanhedrin, consisting of seventy-one men, could be assembled so quickly tells you something about the plot. Their willingness to convene in the middle of the night reveals even more. What they were doing was strictly illegal according to their own law. Even for those not familiar with the judicial system of that day, the irregularities of the trial are painfully obvious. No matter. Forget the rules. They wanted Jesus dead.

**The chief priests and the whole Sanhedrin were looking for evidence against Jesus so that they could put him to death, but they did not find anything. Many gave**

false testimony against him, but their testimony did not agree.

Then the high priest stood up before them and asked Jesus, "Have you no answer? What is this that they are testifying against you?" But he was silent and did not answer. Mark 14:55–56, 60–61 NET

### **ARE YOU GOD?**

Again the high priest questioned him, "Are you the Christ, the Son of the Blessed One?" Mark 14:61 NET

The question was black and white: "Are you God or not?"

Jesus said, "I am. And you will see the Son of Man sitting at the right hand of the Power, and coming with the clouds of heaven."

Then the high priest tore his clothes and said, "What further need do we have of witnesses? You have heard the blasphemy! What do you think?"

And they all condemned Him to be deserving of death. Mark 14:62–64 NKJV

The High Priest, Caiaphas, knew exactly what Jesus had said. Jesus was claiming to be God Himself. Blasphemy was anything that was considered injurious to God's character, and for a mere man to call himself **God** was sacrilege. But Jesus wasn't a mere man—he was God! However, neither Caiaphas nor the other Jewish leaders believed him. So they condemned Him to die. But there was a problem: the Sanhedrin did not have the authority to pass a death sentence; only the Romans could do that.

## 2 THE CRUCIFIXION

Because night courts were illegal, the Sanhedrin met again just after sunrise to go through the legal motions of trying Jesus. He must have been exhausted. He hadn't slept all night, and they had given him a severe beating just to make sure he knew who was in control.

**Then the whole group of them rose up and brought Jesus before Pilate.** Luke 23:1 NET

### **PONTIUS PILATE**

Pontius Pilate, governor of Judea, had all the authority of imperial Rome behind him. Since in

most cases the Jewish courts could not impose the death penalty, they needed Roman sanction. Pilate was their man. The temple leaders knew he was weak-kneed, so a little persuading was in order.

**And they began to accuse Him, saying, "We found this man misleading our nation and forbidding to pay taxes to Caesar, and saying that He Himself is Christ, a King."**

Luke 23:2 NASB

Jesus had never prohibited his followers from paying taxes. In fact, Jesus had said quite the opposite. This was a deliberate lie. But with so many legalities having already been ignored, who was keeping track? On the other hand, it was true that Jesus claimed to be the Messiah!

**So Pilate asked Jesus, "Are you the king of the Jews?"**

Luke 23:3 NET

**Jesus answered, "My Kingdom is not an earthly kingdom. If it were, my followers would fight to keep me from being handed over to the Jewish leaders. But my Kingdom is not of this world."**

John 18:36 NLT

Jesus' reign began in the heart. He had no political ambitions.

**“You are a king, then!” said Pilate. Jesus answered, “You are right in saying I am a king. In fact, for this reason I was born, and for this I came into the world, to testify to the truth. Everyone on the side of truth listens to me.”**

**“What is truth?” Pilate asked.**

John 18:37–38 NIV

People still ask the same question today. But Pilate was in no mood for listening; he didn’t even wait for the answer.

**With this he went out again to the Jews and said, “I find no basis for a charge against him.”**

John 18:38 NIV

Pilate mistrusted the priests. As Roman governor, he knew he was hated by the Jews, and he had reason to believe that the priests did not have Caesar’s best interests in mind. The Sanhedrin must have some other motive for wanting Jesus dead.

**Then Pilate announced to the chief priests and the crowd, “I find no basis for a charge against this man.”**

**But they insisted, “He stirs up the people all over Judea by his teaching.**

He started in Galilee and has come all the way here.”

On hearing this, Pilate asked if the man was a Galilean. When he learned that Jesus was under Herod’s jurisdiction, he sent him to Herod, who was also in Jerusalem at that time. Luke 23:4–7 NIV

Pilate had the authority to hear Jesus’ case, but the situation was getting uncomfortable. Jesus was being accused of inciting the people to insurrection. How would he explain to his superiors in Rome if Jesus did provoke a riot? It would be easier to dump the whole sorry mess in Herod’s lap. Besides, Herod was no friend of his, so Pilate passed the buck.

## **HEROD ANTIPAS**

Herod Antipas was a son of Herod the Great. As a puppet of Rome, he had been given jurisdiction over Jesus’ home province of Galilee. He had travelled to Jerusalem for the yearly Passover festivities.

Herod was delighted at the opportunity to see Jesus, because he had heard about him and had been hoping for a long time

to see him perform a miracle. He asked Jesus question after question, but Jesus refused to answer. Luke 23:8-9 NLT

Jesus knew that Herod had no interest in determining the truth. He only wished to be entertained by a miracle, showing his flagrant disrespect for Jesus' character. Jesus didn't indulge Herod. Instead, he remained quiet.

### **1 TO 2 THURSDAY NIGHT LATE:**

Jesus arrested in the Garden of Gethsemane and taken to the house of the High Priest. It is thought they traveled around the northern wall to avoid Temple traffic.

### **2 TO 3 FRIDAY SUNRISE:**

After appearing before Annas, Caiaphas the High Priest, and the Sanhedrin in a middle of the night session, Jesus is taken to the Temple for a quick court before the Sanhedrin, to formalize accusations

### **3 TO 4 FRIDAY MORNING EARLY:**

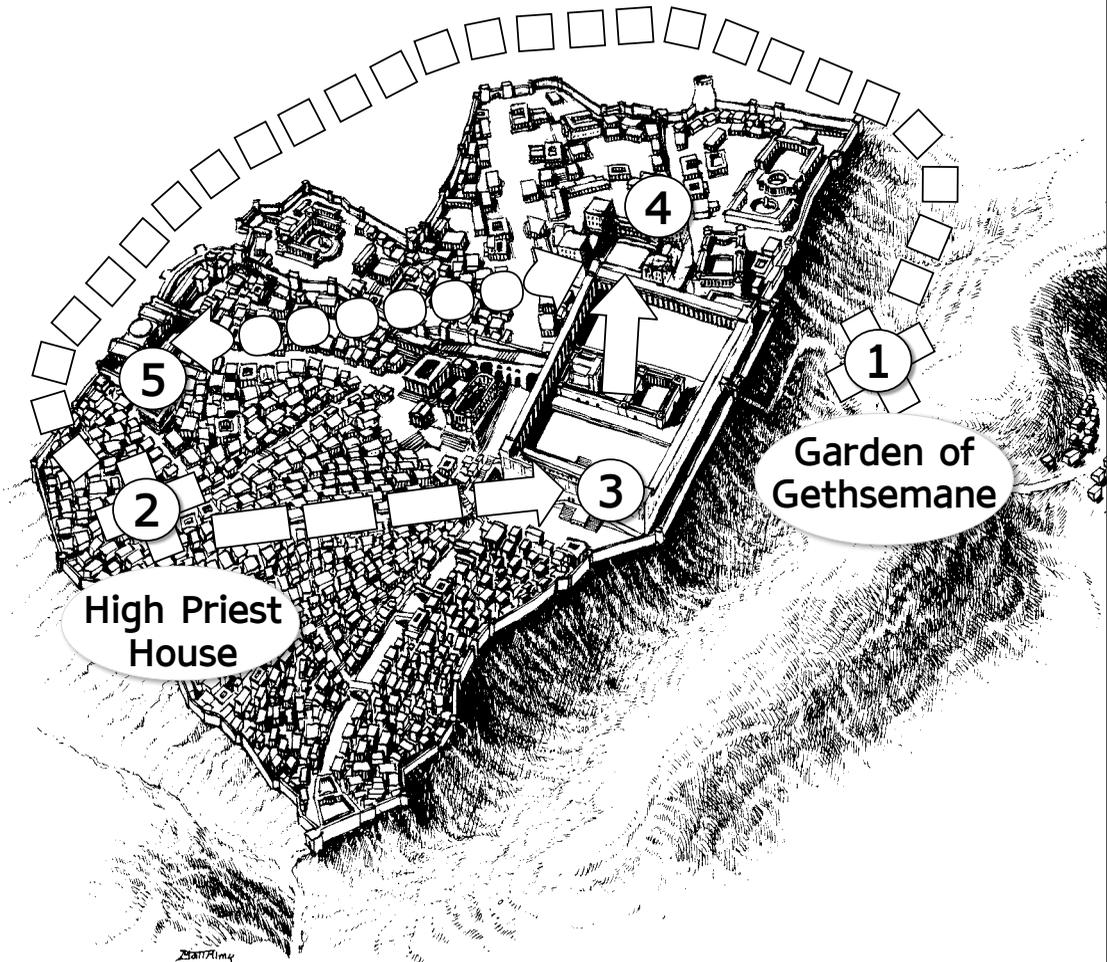
Jesus taken to Roman Fortress to appear before Pontius Pilate.

### **4 TO 5 TO 4 FRIDAY MORNING:**

Pilate sends Jesus to Herod who returns him to Pilate.

The chief priests and the teachers of the law were standing there, vehemently accusing him. Then Herod and his soldiers ridiculed and mocked him. Dressing him in an elegant robe, they sent him back to Pilate. That day Herod and Pilate became friends—before this they had been enemies.

Luke 23:10-12 NIV



## **CRUCIFY HIM!**

Since his arrest, Jesus had been in five court sessions: three Jewish, and two Roman. This sixth trial would be his last. By this time, word had spread throughout the city. No longer were the High Priest and Sanhedrin the only ones accusing Jesus. They had been joined by a fickle multitude, who only a few days before had shouted, "Hosanna," but who now vehemently roared, "Crucify him!" Pilate was in a dilemma. The more he dealt with Jesus, the more convinced he was that there was something uncommon about this man!

**Pilate then called together the chief priests and the rulers and the people, and said to them, "You brought me this man as one who was misleading the people. And after examining him before you, behold, I did not find this man guilty of any of your charges against him. Neither did Herod, for he sent him back to us. Look, nothing deserving death has been done by him. I will therefore punish and release him."**

Luke 23:13–16 ESV

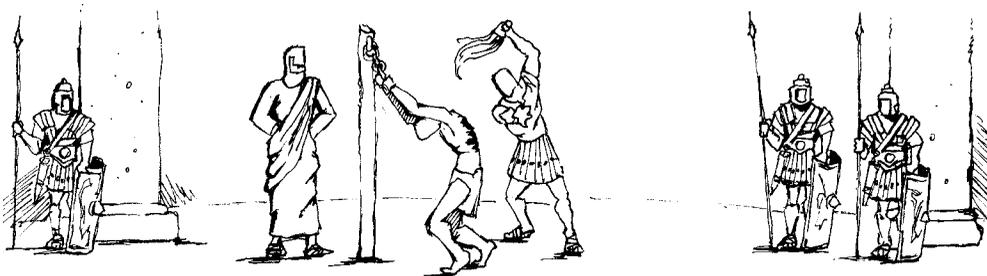
Neither Herod nor Pilate could find Jesus guilty of anything deserving the death penalty. Indeed,

it seemed no one could accuse him of any crime. So hoping to appease the crowd, Pilate offered a weak-kneed compromise. It had two parts:

**1. He would whip Jesus:**

This was no ordinary beating. The whip was comprised of a stick with leather thongs affixed to one end. Each thong had butterfly-shaped slivers of bone or metal attached to it. The condemned man would have his arms bound and tied above his head to a pole which fully exposed his back to the scourge. As the whip came down, the bone and metal would sink into the flesh. Pulling the whip away virtually stripped the flesh off the back. This type of beating was so severe that often the victim died.

By law a scourging could only be given to a convicted prisoner. Pilate himself had just said that Jesus was innocent. Because a Roman flogging was such a horrible ordeal, it can be assumed that Pilate hoped the whipping would appease Jesus' accusers so that they would accept his next offer.



## 2. He would release Jesus:

It was the local Roman custom to release one convicted criminal at the Passover as a gesture of goodwill. Pilate suggested that Jesus be released—after he had been beaten. The crowd was unanimous in their response:

...they all cried out together, "Away with this man ..."

Pilate addressed them once more, desiring to release Jesus, but they kept shouting, "Crucify, crucify him!"

A third time he said to them, "Why, what evil has he done? I have found in him no guilt deserving death. I will therefore punish and release him."

Luke 23:18,20–22 ESV

Then Pilate took Jesus and flogged him.

John 19:1 ESV

The soldiers were not satisfied with the cruelty of a flogging. They decided to add a little jest.

The soldiers twisted together a crown of thorns and put it on his head. They clothed him in a purple robe and went up to him again and again, saying, "Hail,

**king of the Jews!” And they struck him in the face.** John 19:2–3 NIV

Humiliation was not part of Pilate’s sentence. A purple robe was normally worn by royalty. The thorns were a cruel parody of an imperial crown. This was mockery at its worst.



700 years before this time, the prophet Isaiah had written:

**He was despised and rejected by men,... and we esteemed him not.** Isaiah 53:3 NIV

Pilate went out again and said to them,

**“See, I am bringing him out to you that you may know that I find no guilt in him.” So Jesus came out, wearing the crown of thorns and the purple robe. Pilate said to them, “Behold the man!”** John 19:4–5 ESV

Deep in his heart, Pilate must have known that he was setting aside all justice. No doubt he had hopes that this lacerated, thorn-crowned, bleeding man might evoke some pity.

**When the chief priests and the officers saw him, they cried out, “Crucify him, crucify him!”**

**Pilate said to them, "Take him yourselves and crucify him, for I find no guilt in him."**

John 19:6 ESV

Pilate knew very well that they could do no such thing. The Jewish courts could not impose the death sentence.

### **THE SON OF GOD**

**The Jewish leaders replied, "We have a law, and according to our law he ought to die, because he claimed to be the Son of God!"**

**When Pilate heard what they said, he was more afraid than ever, and he went back into the governor's residence and said to Jesus, "Where do you come from?"**

John 19:7-9 NET

Pilate had just heard that Jesus was from Galilee, thus the reason for having sent him to Herod. Now, again, he was asking Jesus where he was from. No doubt he was feeling a little



nervous about someone who claimed to be God! The Greeks believed the gods came down from Mount Olympus to fraternize with man. Perhaps Pilate was wondering if Jesus fit that category. Certainly this was no ordinary criminal. Just the way he handled himself in court demonstrated a peace and confidence that was disconcerting. Jesus, where are you really from?

But Jesus gave him no answer. So Pilate said to him, "You will not speak to me? Do you not know that I have authority to release you and authority to crucify you?"

Jesus answered him, "You would have no authority over me at all unless it had been given you from above..."

From then on Pilate sought to release him, but the Jews cried out, "If you release this man, you are not Caesar's friend. Everyone who makes himself a king opposes Caesar."

So when Pilate heard these words, he brought Jesus out and sat down on the judgment seat at a place called The Stone Pavement, and in Aramaic Gabbatha.

**Now it was the day of Preparation of the Passover.**

John 19:9–14 ESV

The Day of Preparation was when the Passover lamb was killed.

**[Pilate] said to the Jews, “Behold your King!”**

**They cried out, “Away with him, away with him, crucify him!”**

**Pilate said to them, “Shall I crucify your King?” The chief priests answered, “We have no king but Caesar.”**

John 19:14–15 ESV

This was Israel’s final rejection of Jesus as their King. They had chosen the Roman Caesar in place of God.

**Finally Pilate handed him over to them to be crucified.**

**So the soldiers took charge of Jesus. Carrying his own cross, he went out to the place of the Skull (which in Aramaic is called Golgotha).<sup>2</sup> Here they crucified him, and with him two others—one on each side and Jesus in the middle.**

John 19:16–18 NIV

## CRUCIFIXION

Crucifixion was a Roman form of capital punishment used only for slaves and criminals of the lowest order. It was a common method of execution, and secular history records hundreds being crucified at one time.

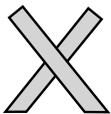
Research has indicated that there were several different forms:



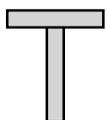
Standing tree: The victim was simply backed up to a tree and tacked onto it, in whatever shape the branches flowed. Josephus, the first century Jewish historian, records the Roman soldiers entertaining themselves by crucifying captives in unusual positions.<sup>3</sup>



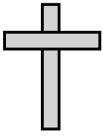
I-shaped: A simple post in the ground. Hands were nailed over the head.



X-shaped: Basically two logs planted at angles. The body was splayed out with the hands and feet fixed at four corners.



T-shaped: A pole with a cross bar on the top. This was probably the most common, next to the tree. The arms were stretched out along the bar.



t-shaped: Usually reserved for notorious criminals. A certificate disclosing one's crime would be tacked to the top of the cross. This was the type on which Jesus was crucified.

The victim was usually stretched out naked. Hands and feet were held in place by nails driven through the wrist and ankle bones.



1000 years earlier, God had instructed King David to write a complete Psalm about the way Jesus would die. In it, David records<sup>4</sup> God as saying...

**...they have pierced my hands and my feet. I can count all my bones; people stare and gloat over me.** Psalm 22:16–17 NIV

This was written long before the Romans had come to power, and about 800 years before the Romans adopted crucifixion as one of their official forms of capital punishment.

To this day crucifixion is considered to be the most brutal form of execution. Death was slow. Sometimes it took days. Ultimately, one died of asphyxiation. Hanging on out-stretched arms, the pressure on the diaphragm made it impossible

for one to breathe. One could inhale or exhale only by lifting oneself up, by pulling on the arms and pushing with the feet to allow room for the diaphragm to work. Of course, this pulling and pushing was done against the excruciating restraint of the nails. Death came when exhaustion and shock left one unable to lift the body.

The nails and tormented gasping for air were not the only sources of anguish. One also suffered from thirst and exposure. People came to stare and, in Jesus' case, to mock.

**Pilate also had a notice written and fastened to the cross, which read: "Jesus the Nazarene, the king of the Jews." Thus many of the Jewish residents of Jerusalem read this notice, because the place where Jesus was crucified was near the city, and the notice was written in Aramaic, Latin, and Greek.**

John 19:19–20 ESV

**When the soldiers had crucified Jesus, they took his garments and divided them into four parts, one part for each soldier; also his tunic. But the tunic was seamless, woven in one piece from top to bottom, so they said to one another, "Let us not**

**tear it, but cast lots for it to see whose it shall be.”**

John 19:23–24 ESV

Gambling was a distraction from a gory task. As the soldiers sat beneath Jesus’ cross, perhaps rolling dice in a helmet, they had no way of knowing they were fulfilling an ancient prophecy.

**This happened that the scripture might be fulfilled which said, “They divided my garments among them and cast lots for my clothing.” So this is what the soldiers did.**

John 19:24 compare Psalm 22:18 NIV

**And the people stood looking on. But even the rulers with them sneered, saying, “He saved others; let Him save Himself if He is the Christ, the chosen of God.”**

Luke 23:35 NKJV



Ten centuries earlier, King David had prophetically written that **THE PROMISED DELIVERER** would be mocked.

**But I am a worm, not a man; people insult me and despise me. All who see me taunt me; they mock me and shake their heads.**

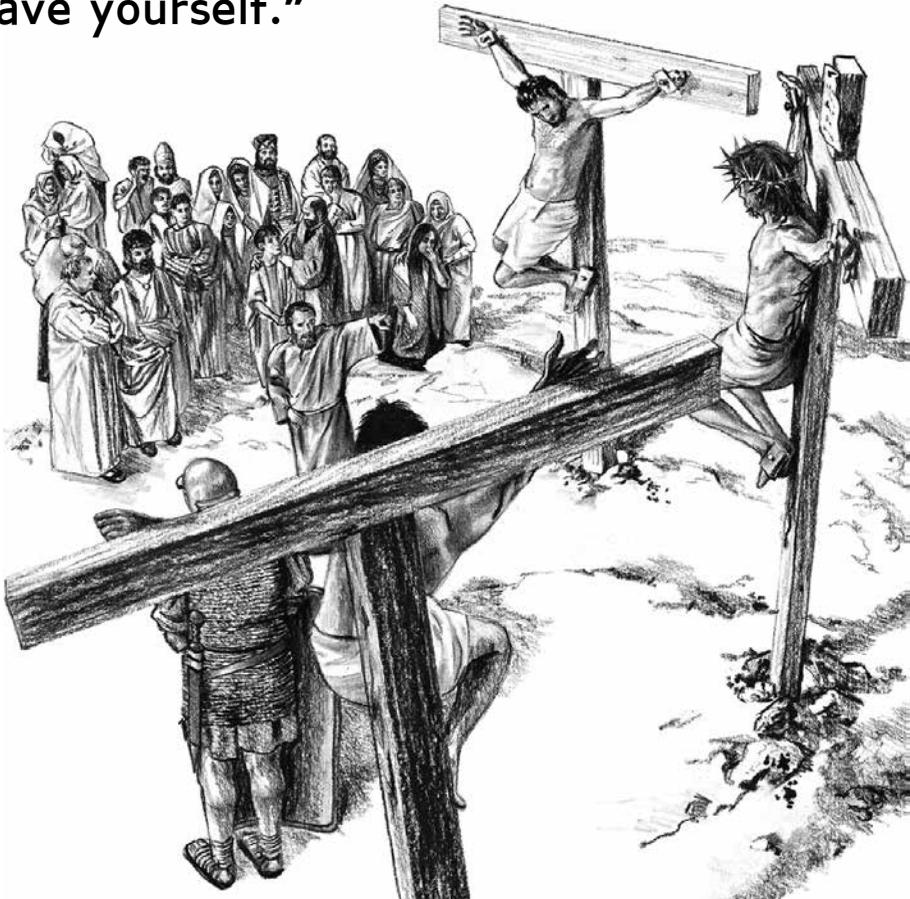
Psalm 22:6–7 NET



Even the words of the ridicule were recorded by David.

**“He trusts in the LORD; let the LORD rescue him. Let him deliver him, since he delights in him.”** Psalm 22:8 NIV

The soldiers also came up and mocked him. They offered him wine vinegar and said, “If you are the king of the Jews, save yourself.”



One of the criminals who hung there hurled insults at him: "Aren't you the Christ? Save yourself and us!"

But the other criminal rebuked him. "Don't you fear God," he said, "since you are under the same sentence? We are punished justly, for we are getting what our deeds deserve. But this man has done nothing wrong."

Then he said, "Jesus, remember me when you come into your kingdom."

Jesus answered him, "I tell you the truth, today you will be with me in paradise."

Luke 23:36–37,39–43 NIV

Jesus assured the thief that as soon as they both died, their spirits would meet each other in Paradise. Jesus could say this because he knew that this man was trusting in Him to deliver him from the consequences of sin—from eternal punishment.

It was now about the sixth hour, and darkness fell over the whole land until the ninth hour ...

Luke 23:44 NASB

And at the ninth hour Jesus cried out with a loud voice, saying, "Eloi, Eloi, lama sabachthani?" which is translated, "My

**God, My God, why have You forsaken Me?"**

Mark 15:34 NKJV



Once again, a thousand years before, King David had written that THE MESSIAH would say just those words.

**"My God, my God, why have you forsaken me?"**

Psalm 22:1 ESV

It wasn't without reason that Jesus cried this out loud. We will look at its meaning soon. The significance of Jesus' final moments on the cross cannot be emphasized enough. The Bible says...

**And Jesus, crying out with a loud voice, said, "It is finished! ... Father, into Your hands I commit my spirit." Having said this, He breathed His last... And He bowed His head and gave up His spirit.**

Luke 23:46 and John 19:30 NASB

**And the curtain of the temple was torn in two, from top to bottom.**

Mark 15:38 ESV

Jesus was dead. It's not hard to imagine the whole realm of evil being ecstatic.<sup>5</sup> Satan and his demons had succeeded beyond their wildest dreams. From their perspective, they had killed God. THE PROMISED DELIVERER was dead! But a couple of things did not

sit well with Satan. Why had the temple curtain torn—from top to bottom? And why had Jesus shouted **It is finished!** with such intensity?

### **THE TORN CURTAIN**

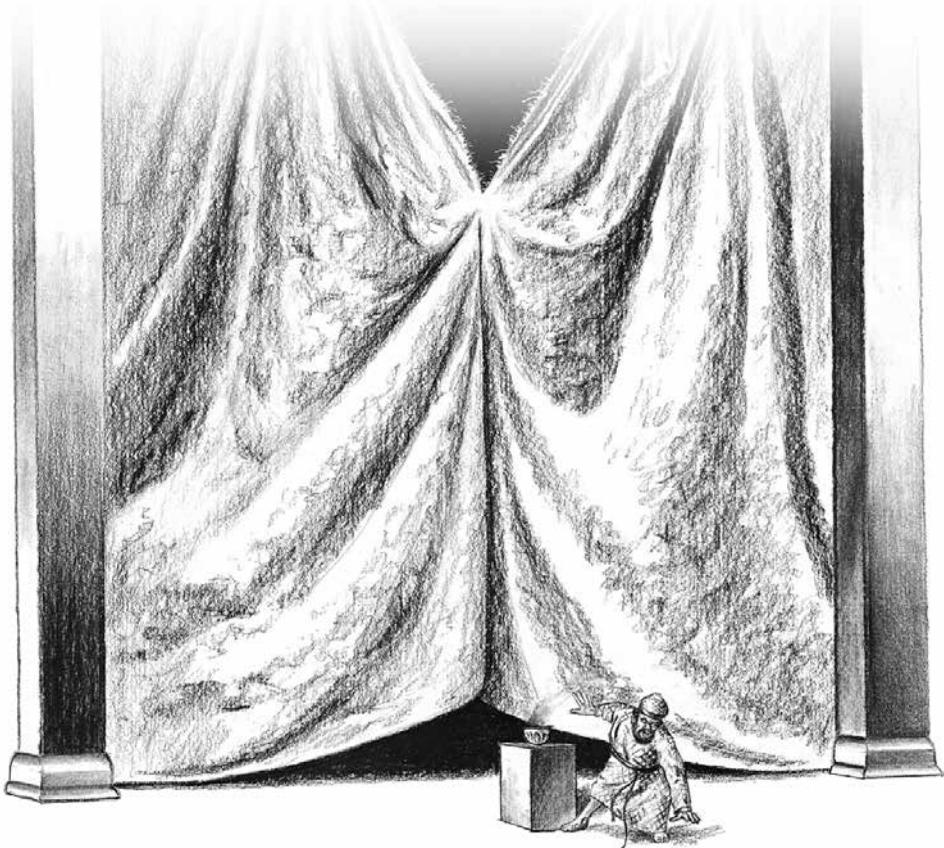
Remember, the Temple was a permanent replica of the original Tabernacle. The curtain separated the Holy Place from the sacred Holy of Holies. It was no small matter for this veil to be torn.

First of all, the Bible says that the curtain shielded the Most Holy Place from man's view. To look behind the curtain was to die. God had told Moses centuries before...

**“Tell your brother Aaron not to come whenever he chooses into the Most Holy Place behind the curtain in front of the atonement cover on the ark, or else he will die, because I appear in the cloud over the atonement cover.”**      Leviticus 16:2 NIV

Second, to tear the curtain in any way would have been a monumental task. It is said that the curtain was sixty feet in height (18 m) and thirty feet in width (9 m), with its thickness being the width of a man's hand—about four inches (10 cm).<sup>6</sup>

Third, to be torn from the top to the bottom could only mean one thing: God had rent the curtain, not man. By Jewish reckoning, Jesus died at the ninth hour, which would have been 3:00 p.m. The temple would have been full of priests performing their sacred duties. This was the time of the evening sacrifice, when a lamb was killed. It was also the Passover. News of the torn curtain could not have been concealed. Too many people were present, and the event was too staggering to be forgotten.



The significance of this whole incident will be explained shortly.

### **IT IS FINISHED!**

The phrase “It is finished” is translated from a single Greek word **tetelestai**. **Tetelestai** had many different usages, but the following three have significance to the story:<sup>7</sup>

1. **Tetelestai** was used by a servant reporting to his or her master upon completing a task: “The job you gave me is finished.”
2. **Tetelestai** was also a familiar term in Greek commercial life. It signified the completion of a transaction when a debt was paid in full. When the final payment was made, one could say “**tetelestai**,” that is, “The debt is finished.” Ancient receipts for taxes have been found with **tetelestai**—paid in full—written across them.
3. The selection of a lamb for sacrifice in the temple was always an important time. The flock would be searched and, upon finding an unblemished lamb, one would say **tetelestai**—the job was finished.

Quite literally Jesus shouted: “The work you gave me is completed, the debt is paid, the sacrificial

lamb is found.” The Scripture says Jesus cried out in a loud voice, “It is finished.”

**So when the centurion saw what had happened, he glorified God, saying, “Certainly this was a righteous Man!”**

Luke 23:47 NKJV

It is noteworthy that it was the centurion, an officer in charge of 100 soldiers, who immediately commented upon Jesus’ cry. Surely he, a military man, knew the difference between a gasp of defeat and a shout of victory.

**Then, because it was the day of preparation, so that the bodies should not stay on the crosses on the Sabbath...the Jewish leaders asked Pilate to have the victims’ legs broken and the bodies taken down.**

John 19:31 NET

## **BREAK THE LEGS**

It was Passover week and this day was the climax, when the lamb was to be killed. The chief priests wanted this crucifixion business over and done with, so as not to contaminate the feast. They asked that Jesus’ legs be broken. This would mean that the one being crucified could no longer lift himself up to breathe, resulting in

quick asphyxiation, unless the shock of his bones being broken killed him first.

So the soldiers came and broke the legs of the two men who had been crucified with Jesus, first the one and then the other. But when they came to Jesus and saw that he was already dead, they did not break his legs. But one of the soldiers pierced his side with a spear, and blood and water flowed out immediately.

And the person who saw it has testified (and his testimony is true, and he knows that he is telling the truth), so that you also may believe. For these things happened so that the scripture would be fulfilled, "Not a bone of his will be broken." And again another scripture says, "They will look on the one whom they have pierced." John 19:32–37 NET

### **3 THE BURIAL AND RESURRECTION**

**FRIDAY: LATE AFTERNOON**

After these things Joseph of Arimathea, who was a disciple of Jesus, but secretly for fear of the Jews, asked Pilate that he

might take away the body of Jesus, and Pilate gave him permission. So he came and took away his body. Nicodemus also, who earlier had come to Jesus by night, came bringing a mixture of myrrh and aloes, about seventy-five pounds in weight. So they took the body of Jesus and bound it in linen cloths with the spices, as is the burial custom of the Jews. Now in the place where he was crucified there was a garden, and in the garden a new tomb in which no one had yet been laid. So because of the Jewish day of Preparation, since the tomb was close at hand, they laid Jesus there.

John 19:38-42 ESV

The women who had come with Jesus from Galilee followed Joseph and saw the tomb and how his body was laid in it. Then they went home and prepared spices and perfumes. But they rested on the Sabbath in obedience to the commandment.

Luke 23:55-56 NIV

Though Joseph and Nicodemus were part of the Sanhedrin, it seems they did not reject the evidence that Jesus was truly God. According to their traditional custom, they wrapped Jesus in

long burial cloths, intermingled with seventy-five pounds (34 kg) of aromatic spices and laid him in a tomb. A large wheel-like stone, possibly weighing as much as two tons (1.8 tonne), was rolled across the front of the sepulcher. The women watched and then went home to prepare additional spices for the final burial. It was now Friday night.

## **SATURDAY**

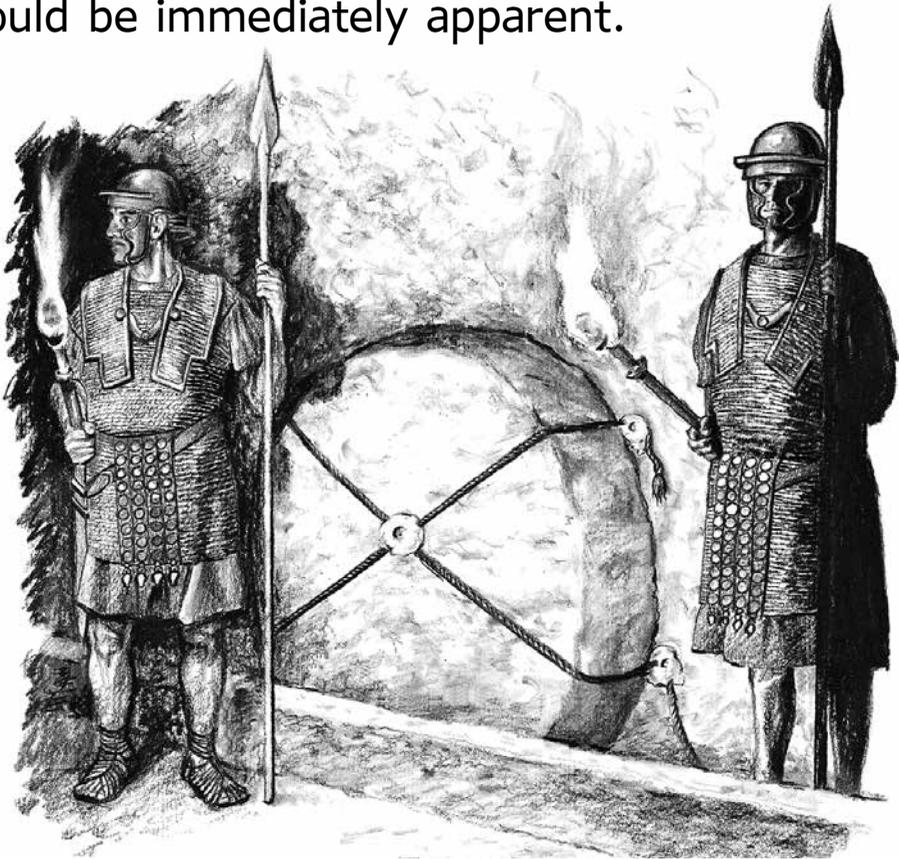
Now on the next day, the day after the preparation, the chief priests and the Pharisees gathered together with Pilate, and said, "Sir, we remember that when He was still alive that deceiver said, 'After three days I am to rise again.' Therefore, give orders for the grave to be made secure until the third day, otherwise His disciples may come and steal Him away and say to the people, 'He has risen from the dead,' and the last deception will be worse than the first."

Pilate said to them, "You have a guard; go, make it as secure as you know how." And they went and made the grave secure, and along with the guard they set a seal on the stone.

Matthew 27:62-66 NASB

This was no rag-tag band of soldiery that was sent to guard the tomb. A Roman guard consisted of four to sixteen men, each man trained to protect six feet of ground. Together they were capable of defending themselves against an entire battalion.<sup>8</sup>

Pilate instructed the chief priests and Pharisees to seal the tomb. Ropes would have been stretched across the large stone door and fixed in place with moist clay. The clay would then be imprinted with a signet ring. Any tampering with the rock would be immediately apparent.



**SUNDAY**

The guard was set in place on Saturday, the Jewish Sabbath. On Sunday while it was still dark...

**...there was a great earthquake! For an angel of the Lord came down from heaven, rolled aside the stone, and sat on it. His face shone like lightning, and his clothing was as white as snow. The guards shook with fear when they saw him, and they fell into a dead faint. Matthew 28:2-4 NLT**

It took only a glance for these rough and rugged soldiers to know they were no match for this one angel. The last phrase in the above passage is a first century way of saying they passed out from fear! But they weren't the only ones shaking. The whole realm of evil must have been in chaos. It's not hard to imagine what it was like—Satan in confusion, shouting jumbled orders as demons scrambled in disarray. What a shock! Who would have dreamed that the tomb could be empty. Jesus had obviously come back to life. Impossible!

In the Meantime...

**...Mary Magdalene, Mary the mother of James, and Salome bought aromatic spices so that they might go and anoint him.**

And very early on the first day of the week, at sunrise, they went to the tomb. They had been asking each other, "Who will roll away the stone for us from the entrance to the tomb?"

But when they looked up, they saw that the stone, which was very large, had been rolled back.

Mark 16:1–4 NET

Mary Magdalene apparently turned away in shock and dismay at the initial sight of the open tomb. She probably assumed the obvious—Jesus' body had been vandalized. Sobbing, she turned and ran to tell the disciples. But Mary and Salome pushed forward and entered the tomb.

And entering the tomb, they saw a young man sitting on the right side, dressed in a white robe, and they were alarmed.

And he said to them, "Do not be alarmed. You seek Jesus of Nazareth, who was crucified. He has risen; he is not here. See the place where they laid him.

But go, tell his disciples and Peter that he is going before you to Galilee. There you will see him, just as he told you."

Mark 16:5–7 ESV

So they departed quickly from the tomb with fear and great joy, and ran to tell his disciples.

And behold, Jesus met them and said, "Greetings!" And they came up and took hold of his feet and worshiped him. Then Jesus said to them, "Do not be afraid; go and tell my brothers to go to Galilee, and there they will see me."

Matthew 28:8–10 ESV

## **HE HAS RISEN**

Reading the record,<sup>9</sup> you can sense the confusion and excitement of the early morning news. For those who had seen Jesus die, the report from the elated women was met with a great deal of skepticism. Initially ...

...these words appeared to them as nonsense, and they would not believe them.

Luke 24:11 NASB

Peter ran to check out the tomb. John ran too, passing Peter on the way, but then waited outside the entrance.

Then Simon Peter came, following him, and went into the tomb. He saw the linen cloths lying there, and the face cloth,

**which had been on Jesus' head, not lying with the linen cloths but folded up in a place by itself.** John 20:6–7 ESV

This was not the scene of a plundered grave. The long strips of cloth used to shroud the body were still wrapped as though around a corpse, but they were collapsed—empty! The body had passed right through them. The head napkin was folded too, as if someone had tidied up before leaving. The Bible says Peter saw, but John saw and believed. For John there was no doubt that Jesus was alive! But Peter's head was spinning. He needed time to think.

It still must have been early morning when Mary Magdalene returned and...

**...stood outside by the tomb weeping, and as she wept she stooped down and looked into the tomb. And she saw two angels in white sitting, one at the head and the other at the feet, where the body of Jesus had lain. Then they said to her, "Woman, why are you weeping?"**

**She said to them, "Because they have taken away my Lord, and I do not know where they have laid Him."** John 20:11–13 NKJV

The tomb was located in a garden, so perhaps she supposed these angels were gardeners. Mary was so distressed that she did not think to identify the men. We must remember that Mary was grieving intensely and that the entire conversation was carried on through her sobbing.

**When she had said this, she turned around and saw Jesus standing there, but she did not know that it was Jesus.**



**Jesus said to her, "Woman, why are you weeping? Who are you looking for?"**

**Because she thought he was the gardener, she said to him, "Sir, if you have carried him away, tell me where you have put him, and I will take him."**

**Jesus said to her, "Mary."** John 20:14–16 NET

If one can say a name in such a way that it brings back all the memories of every previous encounter with a loved one, then Jesus did just that. Mary recognized the voice immediately.

**She turned and said to him in Aramaic, "Rabboni" (which means Teacher).**

John 20:16 NET

Now she had a different reason to weep. She must have flung her arms around him, perhaps embracing his feet in keeping with the custom of that day.

**"Don't cling to me," Jesus said, "for I haven't yet ascended to the Father. But go find my brothers and tell them..."**

**Mary Magdalene found the disciples and told them, "I have seen the Lord!"**

John 20:17–18 NLT

While all this was happening, the guards were hunting down the chief priests. There was no way they were going back to face Pilate.

Now while [the women] were on their way, some of the guard came into the city and reported to the chief priests all that had happened. And when they had assembled with the elders and consulted together, they gave a large sum of money to the soldiers, and said, "You are to say, 'His disciples came by night and stole Him away while we were asleep.' And if this should come to the governor's ears, we will win him over and keep you out of trouble." And they took the money and did as they had been instructed; and this story was widely spread among the Jews, and is to this day.

Matthew 28:11-15 NASB

It took an immense sum of money to persuade these proud soldiers to say that they had been sleeping. But it wasn't true. Once again you can see the hand of Satan behind it all, rushing around doing damage control. After all, he is the father of lies. It was an anemic effort to

save face. No doubt, Satan realized that he was defeated. Jesus, THE ANOINTED ONE, had crushed Satan's head, just as God had promised way back in the Garden of Eden.

## **ALIVE**

Jesus had come back to life! He was truly alive—physically! For three days his body had laid lifeless in the tomb, separated from his spirit. But then in a dramatic demonstration of supernatural power, Jesus had been resurrected with a new body. Jesus had foretold his own death during his ministry.

**“The reason my Father loves me is that I lay down my life—only to take it up again. No one takes it from me, but I lay it down of my own accord. I have authority to lay it down and authority to take it up again...”**      John 10:17–18 NIV

Jesus' death had not been an ordinary one. For mankind, death is a consequence of sin—of breaking God's law. But Jesus had kept the ten commands perfectly. He was sinless, so he did not need to die. According to the law of sin and death, Jesus could have lived forever. So why

did he die? Satan hadn't killed Jesus against His will; nor had the Jews or the Romans. Jesus had chosen to die, willingly. But why? The succeeding chapters will answer that question.

The events of that early morn were just a beginning. Over the next forty days, Jesus appeared to many of those who knew him best. But before we leave the resurrection day, there is one more account that must be shared.

# 72 Hours that Changed History

*JEWISH DAYS	FRIDAY	<p><b>THU</b> Disciples prepare Passover          Passover Supper          Walk to Garden of Gethsemane          Jesus arrested in Garden; disciples flee</p> 
	<p><b>FRI</b> Trials:          1<sup>st</sup> —before Chief Priest’s father-in-law, Annas          2<sup>nd</sup>—before Chief Priest and Sanhedrin          3<sup>rd</sup> —before Sanhedrin (to make it legal)          6:30am 4<sup>th</sup> —before Pilate          5<sup>th</sup> —before Herod (Jesus mocked)          6<sup>th</sup> —before Pilate          9:00am Crucifixion          NOON          3:00pm Jesus cries, “it is finished”; Temple curtain torn          Legs of two thieves broken; Jesus’ side pierced          Joseph of Arimathea requests Jesus’ body for          burial; Jesus buried in tomb</p> 	
	SATURDAY	<p><b>SAT</b> Roman guard requested and placed in tomb          Tomb sealed</p> 
	SUNDAY	<p><b>SUN</b> Earthquake—stone rolled away by angels          Guards flee          Women go to tomb          Jesus appears to Mary and Salome          Jesus appears to Mary Magdalene          Jesus appears to Peter</p>

\* Jewish days begin at sundown, continue through the night into the next day until the following sundown.

# CHAPTER FOURTEEN

**1 THE STRANGER**

**2 ADAM TO NOAH**

**3 ABRAHAM TO THE LAW**

**4 THE TABERNACLE TO THE BRONZE SERPENT**

**5 JOHN THE BAPTIST TO THE RESURRECTION**

# 1 THE STRANGER

That very day two of them were going to a village named Emmaus, about seven miles from Jerusalem, and they were talking with each other about all these things that had happened. While they were talking and discussing together, Jesus himself drew near and went with them. But their eyes were kept from recognizing him.

And he said to them, "What is this conversation that you are holding with each other as you walk?"

And they stood still, looking sad.

Luke 24:13–17 ESV

These disciples were not part of the inner circle, but they too, were followers of Jesus.

Then one of them, named Cleopas, answered him, "Are you the only visitor to Jerusalem who does not know the things that have happened there in these days?"

And he said to them, "What things?"

And they said to him, "Concerning Jesus of Nazareth, a man who was a prophet mighty in deed and word before God and all

the people, and how our chief priests and rulers delivered him up to be condemned to death, and crucified him. But we had hoped that he was the one to redeem Israel. Yes, and besides all this, it is now the third day since these things happened. Moreover, some women of our company amazed us. They were at the tomb early in the morning, and when they did not find his body, they came back saying that they had even seen a vision of angels, who said that he was alive. Some of those who were with us went to the tomb and found it just as the women had said, but him they did not see.” Luke 24:18–24 ESV

The two disciples gave a brief synopsis of the day. Of course, all of this was not news to Jesus, but he quietly waited for them to finish. He had news for them too. Jesus said ...

“O foolish ones, and slow of heart to believe all that the prophets have spoken! Was it not necessary that the Christ should suffer these things and enter into his glory?” And beginning with Moses and all the Prophets, he interpreted to them in

**all the Scriptures the things concerning himself.**

Luke 24:25–27 ESV

Jesus told them that **THE MESSIAH had to suffer, die and then come back to life.** He said it was necessary. You can be sure this raised some eyebrows. But Jesus didn't stop there. He went back into the Jewish Scriptures and taught them about himself, starting at the very beginning. He then progressed step by step, story by story, through the entire Bible. It must have been quite a lesson.

**And they approached the village where they were going, and He acted as though He were going farther. But they urged Him, saying, "Stay with us, for it is getting toward evening, and the day is now nearly over." So He went in to stay with them. When He had reclined at the table with them, He took the bread and blessed it, and breaking it, He began giving it to them.**

**Then their eyes were opened and they recognized Him; and He vanished from their sight.**

**They said to one another, "Were not our hearts burning within us while He was**

speaking to us on the road, while He was explaining the Scriptures to us?"

Luke 24:28–32 NASB

Their new understanding put legs to their excitement!

They got up and returned at once to Jerusalem.

Luke 24:33 NIV

You can imagine the trip back to the city as these elated followers of Jesus discussed what they would say to the \*eleven disciples. The journey was all uphill, but they must have pushed themselves. They had good news!

\*Judas Iscariot had committed suicide.

There they found the Eleven and those with them, assembled together and saying, "It is true! The Lord has risen and has appeared to Simon." Then the two told what had happened on the way, and how Jesus was recognized by them when he broke the bread.

While they were still talking about this, Jesus himself stood among them and said to them, "Peace be with you."

They were startled and frightened, thinking they saw a ghost. He said to

them, "Why are you troubled, and why do doubts rise in your minds? Look at my hands and my feet. It is I myself! Touch me and see; a ghost does not have flesh and bones, as you see I have."

When he had said this, he showed them his hands and feet. And while they still did not believe it because of joy and amazement, he asked them, "Do you have anything here to eat?" They gave him a piece of broiled fish, and he took it and ate it in their presence.

He said to them, "This is what I told you while I was still with you: Everything must be fulfilled that is written about me in the Law of Moses, the Prophets and the Psalms."

Luke 24:33-44 NIV

Just as he had done with the two disciples on the road to Emmaus, Jesus used the Bible to explain the events surrounding his death and resurrection. The Jews divide the Scriptures into three sections—the Law, the Writings (or Psalms) and the Prophets. Jesus took each of those segments and showed his followers how it all applied to him.

Then he opened their minds so they could understand the Scriptures. He told them, "This is what is written: The Christ will suffer and rise from the dead on the third day, and repentance and forgiveness of sins will be preached in his name to all nations, beginning at Jerusalem. You are witnesses of these things." Luke 24:45–48 NIV

Jesus said his death, burial and resurrection, **must happen** to fulfill Scripture. He went on to say this was such good news that it would be told everywhere, beginning at Jerusalem.

Before we go on with the story we want to stop and go back to the beginning, just as Jesus did with his disciples. We want to see what Jesus said about himself in the Law, the Prophets and the Psalms.

Exactly why did Jesus come to the earth, and why did he **have to** suffer and die, when all along he planned to come back to life? Why didn't he simply tell people to believe in him and skip the entire crucifixion? What were these events all about—this **death, burial and resurrection**? The last piece of the puzzle is about to be put in place. When you understand this, you will have the whole picture.

## 2 ADAM TO NOAH

To answer this question ... Why did Jesus have to die?... we will go back in time, and start at the very beginning.

### ADAM AND EVE

Remember the unique friendship that existed between God and man at the onset of creation? The LORD made man, not as a robot, but with a will, so that by the obedient choices he made he would honour God, just as an obedient son honours his father.

You will recall that through obedience man enjoyed tremendous benefits from this relationship, for the LORD of the universe was committed to Adam and Eve's well-being, walking and talking with them as their friend.

But then Adam and Eve deliberately ignored God's instructions and experimented with forbidden knowledge. Since the events surrounding this incident contain critical elements of the puzzle, the Scripture uses some powerful word pictures to help us understand what happened.



LOST

The Bible says that man felt he knew **better than God** what was good for him. He chose his own path, to do his own thing, but that path led into a spiritual wilderness. Man was LOST.



ENEMY

Instead of listening to God, man trusted and believed Satan. Man joined Satan's rebellious ranks, thus becoming an ENEMY of God.

But such a choice had ramifications. The Scripture teaches us that sin's effects are very costly.



ESTRANGED

Because there was no trust, there was no relationship. Immediately, the unique friendship between God and man ended. Separated by sin, man was ESTRANGED from the perfect, holy God. God was no longer close. He seemed remote and distant.



SLAVE

Satan was not the benevolent friend God had been. Rather, the Devil manipulated man with lies to do his satanic will. Man became a SLAVE to Satan and a slave to sin.

In choosing his own way, man disobeyed the one command that God had given him. This wasn't

without hurt or harm, for whenever you break a law, you also face a consequence.



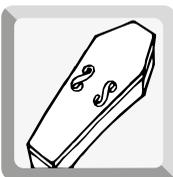
GUILTY

God took off his mantle of friendship and donned a magistrate's cloak. As man's judge, God found man **GUILTY** of a crime—of breaking his law, of sinning against a holy God.



DEBTOR

In essence, God wrote out a verdict, a **Certificate of Debt**. Man was now a **DEBTOR** with a price to pay. The penalty for sin was death.



DEAD

Every human being would now **DIE** physically. The spirit would be **separated** from the body; the life **separated** from family and friends.



SEPARATED

Because the stench of sin corrupted man's total being, God **separated** himself from mankind. Man's relationship with God was over—it was **DEAD**.

ETERNAL  
JUDGMENT

After physical death, there would be a **SECOND DEATH**. Man would be **separated** forever from God and his expressions of love. He would be

confined in the Lake of Fire, the place that had been prepared for Satan and his demons.

Death in its three aspects ruled man's life, and he could do nothing about it. Man had no choice as to whether he wanted to die or not. It was a bitter, potent reality that all faced; that all shared; that all who thought soberly, feared. With absolute, utter finality, the Scripture clearly states ...

**... a person shall die for his own sin.**

2 Chronicles 25:4 NKJV

These word pictures help us understand just how far removed from God mankind had become as a result of Adam and Eve's sin. Man was faced with that age-old question: **How can we get rid of our sin with all its consequences and gain a righteousness equal to God's righteousness so we can be accepted back into his presence?**

## **A DESPERATE ATTEMPT**

Remember how Adam and Eve tried to cover up their sin by clothing themselves in fig leaves? We saw that, though the LORD rejected their efforts, he did not leave them in a lurch. Rather, he...

**... devises ways so that a banished person may not remain estranged from him.**

2 Samuel 14:14 NIV



The LORD used these events to teach Adam and Eve, as well as us, universal principles that apply to all mankind.

### **ACCEPTANCE**

Just as Adam and Eve could not make themselves acceptable to God by fixing up their outward appearance, neither can we be accepted based on our externals. We may impress others with what we are on the outside, but God knows what we are really like.

We saw that God provided Adam and Eve with a way of acceptance, but on different terms. The Bible says that...

**The LORD God made garments of skin for Adam and his wife and clothed them.**

Genesis 3:21 NASB

The significance of this little verse would be overlooked if it wasn't for other parts of the Bible explaining it. So what does it mean? What would Jesus have told the disciples? Very simply this: Just as an animal had to die to clothe Adam and Eve in acceptable clothing, so **Jesus had to die to make us acceptable in the presence of God.**

This was and is God's idea. It's God's way to acceptability.

As the disciples struggled to comprehend what Jesus was saying, there must have been a torrent of questions. Why would God require an animal to die for Adam and Eve? Why didn't God simply clothe them with his choice of leaves? And why would Jesus have to die for us? Was there not another way? We can suppose that Jesus continued with the next story.

### **CAIN AND ABEL**

Remember how the children of Adam and Eve brought sacrifices to God? Why did they do that? We saw that the escape route God devised had two dimensions.

There was an **inward** aspect—something they had to work through in their hearts, a choice Cain and Abel each had to make on their own.

There was also an **outward** aspect—a visual aid to help them understand what it would take to remove sin.

Remember how we saw that when Cain and Abel brought their sacrifices to God, Cain brought vegetables from his garden but Abel brought the firstborn of his flock? God rejected Cain's sacrifice, but he accepted Abel's. Why?

## **CAIN**

**Inward:** Cain did not believe God. He had his own ideas about how to get rid of sin and be made right with the LORD.

In the same way, our world is full of people who have their own notions about God and how to please him. It's become fashionable to have a personally tailored theory. A custom-designed god is in vogue. Cain would have felt right at home.

**Outward:** Based on his thinking, Cain did his own thing. He brought a sacrifice that did not illustrate God's way of dealing with the sin problem. Vegetables do not shed blood. Cain ignored the fact that...



...without the shedding of blood there is no forgiveness. Hebrews 9:22 NET

His sacrifice did not provide an atonement-covering for sin. The Bible tells us...

Do not be like Cain, who belonged to the evil one...his own actions were evil and his brother's were righteous. 1 John 3:12 NIV

## **ABEL**

On the other hand, God accepted Abel's sacrifice.

**Inward:** Abel was trusting the LORD to be his Saviour. This is what God wanted. God still wants people to trust him. We are told repeatedly throughout the pages of Scripture, that we are to trust the LORD Jesus Christ as our Saviour.

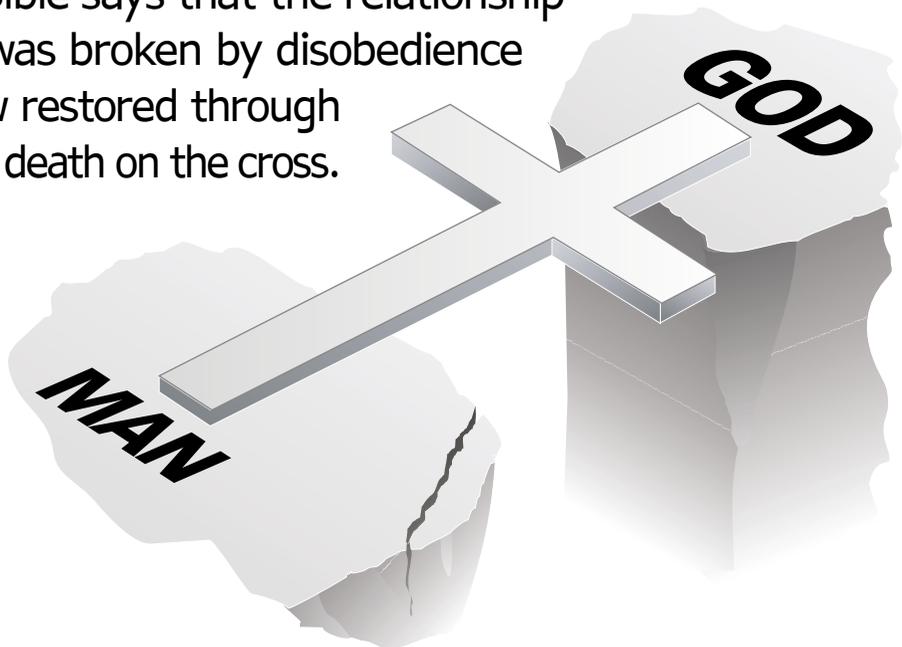
**Outward:** God accepted Abel's sacrifice because it illustrated what Jesus accomplished on the cross.

- ❖ It pictured **substitution**: Just as an innocent animal died in Abel's place, so Jesus, innocent of all sin, died in our place, paying the death penalty for us.

**For Christ also suffered once for sins, the righteous for the unrighteous, that he might bring us to God.**     1 Peter 3:18 ESV

- ❖ It pictured **atonement**: Just as an animal shed its blood so Abel might have a covering for sin, in the same way Jesus offered himself as the ultimate blood sacrifice so we might have forgiveness of sin.

The Bible says that the relationship that was broken by disobedience is now restored through Jesus' death on the cross.



Once you were alienated from God and  
were enemies ...

But now he has reconciled you by Christ's  
physical body through death ...

Colossians 1:21–22 NIV



ENEMY

As children of Adam and Eve, we  
were born into this world as **enemies**  
of God ...



RECONCILED

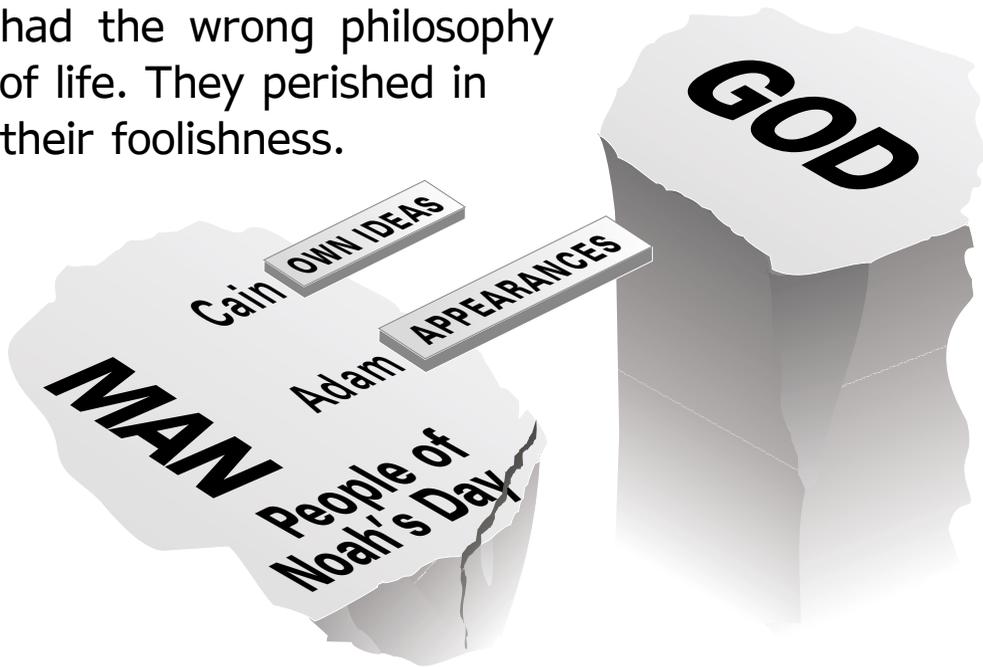
... but now because of Jesus' physical  
death on the cross, we are **reconciled**.  
We can be friends again. The broken  
relationship has been restored.

Some may say, "Okay, I can see how Jesus' death took care of our sin problem, but how do we gain a **righteousness equal** to **God's righteousness** so we can be accepted back into his presence?"

As we said many chapters ago, this question has two facets, like opposite sides of the same coin. You can't divide them. When God took care of our sin problem, he also addressed the lack of righteousness. We will understand this more in just a few pages.

## NOAH

In the days of Noah the people ignored God's Word. Perhaps they thought the old man was crazy. Whatever the case, they persuaded themselves that life existed only for the here and now. God did not withhold his judgment just because they had the wrong philosophy of life. They perished in their foolishness.



God was saying this: just as the people of Noah's day were judged for their sin, so God will judge all men, regardless of how they think.

**The fool says in his heart, "There is no God."**

Psalm 53:1; 14:1 ESV

**He who trusts in his own heart is a fool ...**

Proverbs 28:26 NKJV

God will let us ignore him and even reject his way of escape for a time, but eventually we must face the inescapable conclusion: we must pay our sin-debt with our eternal death.

Remember how Noah and his sons were kept safe in the Ark? There was only one boat, and only one door to enter and gain refuge from the flood. There was no other option.

In the same way, Jesus Christ is the only way to eternal life. Just as safety could only be found inside the Ark, so only in Jesus can we find safety from everlasting punishment.

**Jesus said to him, "I am the way, and the truth, and the life. No one comes to the Father except through me." John 14:6 ESV**

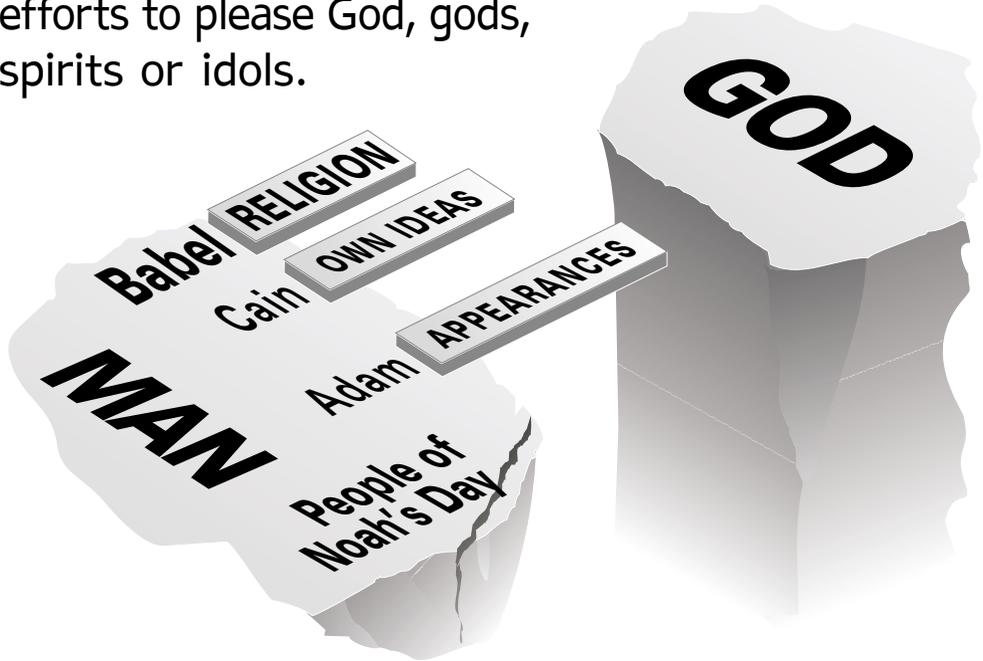
There is only one way to God. Those who ignore or reject the way face the same fate as those who didn't heed Noah's warnings of the coming flood: eternal death with all its implications.

The Bible is very explicit. Jesus is the only way to God.

## **BABEL**

Remember how we saw that Babel was the first incident of organized religion in the Bible? The people tried to build a tower to reach the

heavens. We said that a definition for the word **religion** is this: **man's efforts to reach God**. At Babel, man slaved away with brick and tar. In the same way, religion is a taskmaster that requires constant struggle. It demands ever-increasing efforts to please God, gods, spirits or idols.



In contrast to religion, the Bible says that the only true way to God was provided by the LORD himself, when in his mercy, **God reached down to man** in the person of Jesus Christ. All the work needed to restore the broken relationship was done by Jesus on the cross.

You can almost see the glimmer of excitement in the disciples' eyes as they listened to God's

plan through thousands of years of history being fulfilled in Jesus. For centuries, man had looked forward to the day when he would be delivered from judgment of sin. Now that time had come. But Jesus wasn't finished with his explanation. He continued, no doubt, with the story of Abraham and Isaac.

### **3 ABRAHAM TO THE LAW**

Remember when God asked Abraham to sacrifice his son? Isaac was under God's order to die and, in reality, he deserved to die for he was a sinner. Isaac was bound and placed on the altar—helpless.

What God was saying is this: Just as Isaac was helpless and could not save himself, so all of us are bound by sin and cannot save ourselves from its consequences.

Remember how Abraham took the knife and prepared to plunge it into Isaac? Abraham was trusting in God's goodness to provide a solution to death. At the last moment, God called from Heaven and stopped him. Because of Abraham's trust, the LORD provided a **substitute** sacrifice for Isaac.

**A SUBSTITUTE**

Just as the ram died in Isaac's place, so Jesus died in our place. We should have died and been punished for our sin, but Jesus died and took our punishment on the cross. He is our substitute.

If the ram had not died, then Isaac would have perished. If Jesus had not died, then we would have had to pay our own sin-debt.

The Bible says that God honoured Abraham's faith.

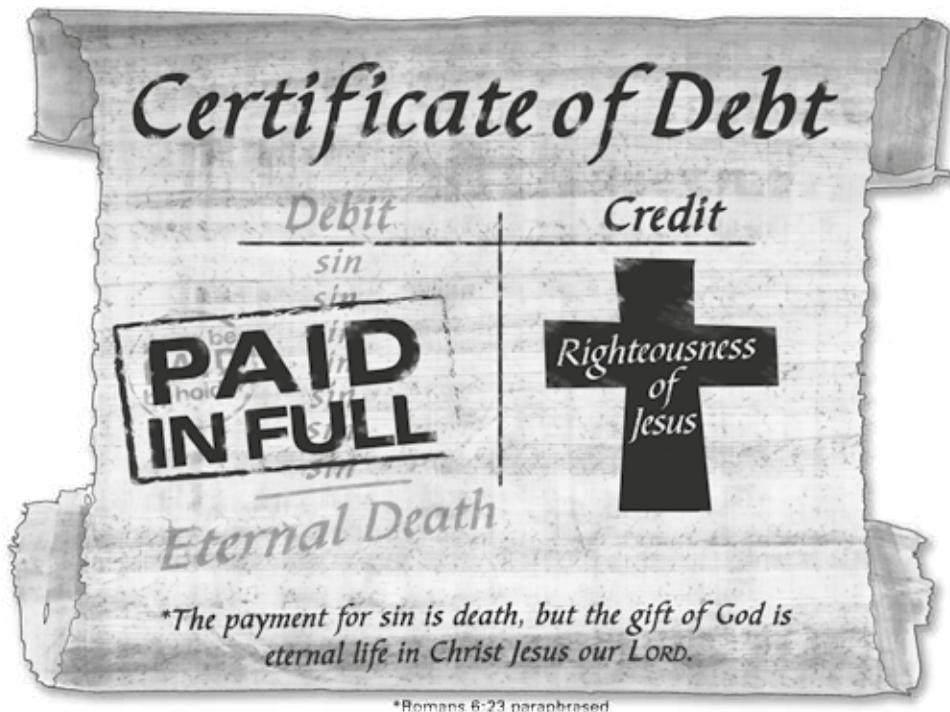
**"Abraham believed God, and it was credited to him as righteousness."**

Romans 4:3 NASB

Remember that **Certificate of Debt** that every human has as a result of sin? The Bible says that God credited righteousness to Abraham's account because of his faith. God did that for Abraham because the LORD was looking ahead to what Jesus would do on the cross. The Bible says that...

**The words "it was credited to him" were written not for him [Abraham] alone, but also for us, to whom God will credit righteousness—for us who believe in him who raised Jesus our Lord from the dead.**

Romans 4:23–24 NIV



DEBTOR

Down through history, every person had carried a **Certificate of Debt**, a massive sin-debt that each one was accountable to pay. The only way that debt could be paid was with one's own eternal death.



CANCELLED  
DEBT

But then Jesus came. His death completely paid man's sin-debt—past, present and future. That is why Jesus cried, "It is finished." **The debt is paid!**

But the payment made by Jesus is only effective if one believes. The Bible says...

**... God will credit righteousness—for us who believe in him who raised Jesus our Lord from the dead.** Romans 4:24 NIV

Remember that the word **believe**, as used in the Bible, has a fuller meaning than we sometimes give it.

- ❖ The terms **faith, belief, trust** and **confidence** all mean essentially the same.
- ❖ Genuine faith is built on fact (i.e. “Jesus died in our place for our sin”). Faith is not built on **feeling forgiven**.
- ❖ True biblical belief does not stop with mental assent to the truth. It includes a confidence in the facts expressed by a voluntary act of the will. (e.g. “I believe that Jesus has paid my sin-debt”)

All of this would have been good news to the disciples. It should be good news to us as well. The Bible says...

**...everything that was written in the past was written to teach us, so that through endurance and the encouragement of the Scriptures we might have hope.**

Romans 15:4 NIV

The accounts of Abraham and Isaac were stories that the disciples knew well. Although they had heard them since childhood, now they were seeing the whole picture for the first time. As Jesus spoke, one could have heard a pin drop. Every eye was glued on him, THE PROMISED SAVIOUR, NOW in their midst. Jesus continued.

### **THE PASSOVER**

Remember when the children of Israel were slaves in Egypt and God delivered them from Pharaoh with great plagues? The last plague was the death of the first-born child. God had said that if the Israelites followed his Word, they would be safe from this tragedy.

Do you recall how the Israelites were to sacrifice a lamb? Well, the Bible tells us that Jesus is our Lamb.

It seems hardly a coincidence that, from the time of Jesus' birth, he was identified with these harmless creatures. He was born in a stable, a place where little lambs could be sheltered. His first visitors were shepherds, men who cared for lambs and made sure that they came to no harm. We are told that Bethlehem, his birth city, was commissioned by the high priests as a place to raise lamb sacrifices for use in the Temple.

John the Baptist said of Jesus:

**“Look, the Lamb of God who takes away  
the sin of the world!”** John 1:29 NET

So when we find Jesus identified as the Passover lamb, we shouldn't be surprised. The parallels are stunning. I will mention only a few.

Remember how the Passover lamb could have **no defect?**

Jesus was **sinless**.

The lamb had to be a **male**.

Jesus was a **man**.

The Passover lamb was killed, dying in the **place of the first-born**.

Jesus died in **our place**.

The blood was applied to the door posts and lintel of the house.

Just as safety was only found by remaining inside, so only by trusting in what Jesus did on the cross brings us safety from eternal death.

When the death angel came, wherever he saw the blood applied, he would **pass over** that house.

In the same way, God provided a way for his judgment to **pass over** us, and in so doing

all the judgment we deserved came to rest upon Jesus.

God had specifically told the Israelites that they must not break any bones when they ate the Passover lamb. This was because the lamb was a picture, a foreshadow of Jesus. Jesus' bones were not broken either. When the Roman soldiers...

...came to Jesus and saw that he was already dead, they did not break his legs.

John 19:33 ESV



As the disciples sat there, hanging on to every word, listening to Jesus explain the real significance of the Passover, they couldn't help but think of what time of year it was. Jesus had been crucified on the very day the Passover lamb died! They had no way of knowing that the priests had hoped to kill him after the feast was over, but they did know that God's plan had triumphed. Jesus not only died on the right day, but he died at the ninth hour (3:00 P.M.), the very hour the temple lamb was offered—the hour of the evening sacrifice. He died right on schedule, just as the Bible said he would.<sup>1</sup> The Scripture says ...

**... Christ, our Passover lamb, has been sacrificed.**

1 Corinthians 5:7 ESV

## **THE LAW**

Remember the Ten Commandments? The Israelites thought that it would be easy to obey them. Today, many people believe that you can please God by keeping the ten rules, or some modified version of them. But we saw from our study that God expects nothing less than perfect obedience.

**For the one who obeys the whole law but fails in one point has become guilty of all of it.**

James 2:10 NET

Trying to keep the Ten Commandments does not restore the broken relationship with God.

**Therefore no one will be declared righteous in his sight by observing the law; rather, through the law we become conscious of sin.**

Romans 3:20 NIV

The law reminds us of our age-old, two-sides-of-the-coin dilemma. We have something we don't want—sin; and we need something we don't have—righteousness. The Ten Commandments cannot give us a righteousness equal to God's righteousness.

**But now a righteousness from God, apart from law, has been made known, to which the Law and the Prophets testify. This righteousness from God comes through faith in Jesus Christ to all who believe.**

Romans 3:21–22 NIV

Jesus revealed to mankind that there is a type of righteousness totally unrelated to the law, a level of goodness that comes directly from God himself. The Bible says that to obtain this type of righteousness, all we have to do is **believe**. It's just that simple. Simple for us, that is, but for God it involved a lot more.

God's just character could not overlook sin and pretend it had not happened. Sin must be punished—there had to be death. Up to this time, man had been offering animal sacrifices as a death payment, but they were only temporary coverings, because...

**...it is impossible for the blood of bulls and goats to take away sins.** Hebrews 10:4 NASB

Was there another solution? Perhaps one man could have died for another, but then he would have had to have been both **sinless** and **willing to be punished**. No such person ever existed. Every man and woman through the ages had been confronted with a personal sin-debt—there was no way they could pay for someone else's. But then God himself left Heaven and became a man—a sinless man. In one remarkable act of selfless love...

**God presented him as a sacrifice of atonement, through faith in his blood. He did this to demonstrate his justice, because in his forbearance he had left the sins committed beforehand unpunished ...**

Romans 3:25 NIV

God's just nature was satisfied by the death of Jesus, a death payment for sin. God had left the sins committed beforehand unpunished because

he knew that someday Jesus would die for all sin—past, present and future—paying the death penalty in full. Jesus died so God could ...

**... demonstrate his justice at the present time, so as to be just and the one who justifies those who have faith in Jesus.**

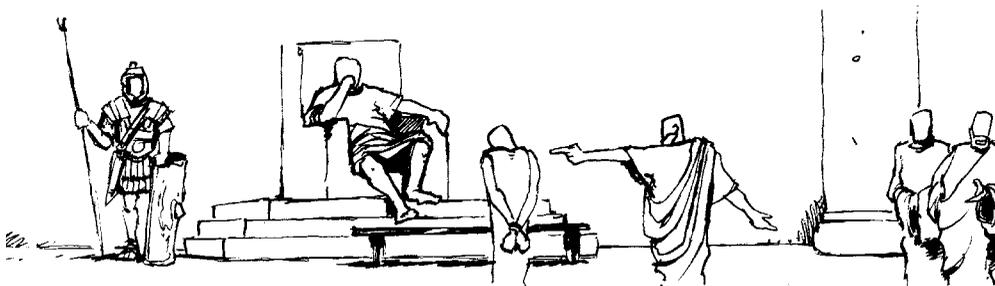
Romans 3:26 NIV

The word **justified** was a judicial term used in the courtrooms of Jesus' day. Remember the events when man sinned in the garden? At that time God took off the mantle of friendship and donned a magistrate's cloak. As a fair and just judge, God



**GUILTY**

found man **GUILTY** of a crime, breaking God's perfect law, sinning against a holy God. Man stood before a frowning God, accused and convicted as a perpetual, incurable lawbreaker. The sentence was death—eternal death.



But then God rose from his judgment bench, and taking off the judicial cloak, he put back on the

mantle of a friend. God left the lofty heights of Heaven and descended as the God-man, Jesus, to stand with us in front of the bench. He had only one purpose—to take our sentence of death upon himself and pay it for us. Since he had no sin of his own to die for, he was able to die for the sin of others.<sup>2</sup> He died in our place. He was able to pay sin’s death penalty for all time, for all mankind.

Sin was gone, but righteousness was still needed. Ah yes, we saw earlier that, just like Abraham, righteousness comes to us by faith. However, to provide **that** purity, something had to happen in God’s courtroom. Jesus not only took our putrid rags of sin upon himself, but then—wonder of wonders—he thoroughly wrapped us in the pure, clean robe of his righteousness, a righteousness that is completely equal to HIS holy perfection.

Now, as God sits as a judge and looks across the faces of humanity, wherever he sees one clothed in Christ’s righteousness, he can honestly and



DECLARED  
RIGHTEOUS

justly say, **“In my heavenly courtroom, that man, that woman, stands before me perfect.”** The Almighty Judge of Heaven raises his gavel and, with a crash, declares us **“Righteous!”**

That is the meaning of the word JUSTIFIED—to be declared righteous in God’s sight. But remember: this is only true for those who believe that Jesus died in their place. The Bible says...

**...that a man is justified by faith ...**

Romans 3:28 NKJV

**Therefore being justified by faith, we have peace with God through our Lord Jesus Christ ...**

Romans 5:1 KJV

No, the Ten Commandments cannot make one righteous.

**Clearly no one is justified before God by the law ...**

Galatians 3:11 NIV

**...for all have sinned and fall short of the glory of God.**

Romans 3:23 ESV

But the Law had a purpose. The Bible says the ten commands are like a teacher who takes us by the hand, leads us to the cross, and points out to us our need for a Saviour.

**...the law was our schoolmaster to bring us unto Christ, that we might be justified by faith.**

Galatians 3:24 KJV

Everyone needs a Saviour. Only when clothed in the righteousness of Christ, can we experience God’s welcoming smile.

## LOVE AND JUSTICE

On the road to Emmaus, Jesus told the disciples he **had to die**. The idea of Jesus **having to die** makes us uncomfortable—we know we don't deserve such love. Why did he say that? His death was only necessary in this sense:

If God had exclusively allowed the **just** side of his nature to rule, then we would have died for our own sin. That would have been fair, but his **love** would not allow that.

On the other hand, if only **love** had ruled his character, he would have ignored sin for eternity. But that was not an option because of his **just** nature. Sin had to be dealt with.

It was on the cross that we find the complete and perfectly balanced expression of both attributes—boundless **love** shown and infinite **justice** satisfied. From God's point of view, **love** and **justice** made the cross necessary.

**Greater love has no one than this,  
that one lay down his life for his  
friends.**

John 15:13 NASB

Continued...

**But God demonstrates His own love toward us, in that while we were still sinners, Christ died for us.**

Romans 5:8 NKJV

## **4 THE TABERNACLE TO THE BRONZE SERPENT**

You will recall how God instructed Moses to build the Tabernacle. It was an elaborate visual aid to help us understand what the LORD was doing to mend our broken relationship with him. Remember how God showed his presence among the Israelites with a pillar of cloud by day, and a column of fire by night? That pillar hovered over the Ark of the Covenant in the Holy of Holies.

### **ONE ENTRANCE**

As man approached God in the Tabernacle, the first thing he saw was the wall around the courtyard which had only one entrance, a reminder that there is only one way to God. Jesus said ...

**"...I am the way, the truth, and the life. No one can come to the Father except through me."**

John 14:6 NLT

## THE BRONZE ALTAR

As a person entered the Tabernacle, the first piece of furniture he saw was the Bronze Altar, a reminder that the only way to a right relationship with God was through the blood sacrifice. It's the same with us. The only way to a right relationship with God is through Jesus, who sacrificed his life in our place.

Even a very brief comparison of these two places of death—the Bronze Altar and the Cross—show how Jesus completely fulfilled the graphic picture illustrated in the Tabernacle offerings.

### THE BRONZE ALTAR

The sacrifice was...

... from either the herd  
or the flock.

... a male

... without defect

... [to] be accepted on  
his behalf

... to make atonement  
[or covering for sin]  
for him

... [a] blood [sacrifice].

Leviticus 1:2–5 NIV

### THE CROSS

Jesus...

... is the Lamb of God

... is a male

... is sinless

... died in our place

... is our way to have  
forgiveness of sin

... was the blood sacrifice  
made for us.

## THE LAMPSTAND

Remember how God told Moses to make a lampstand of pure gold to light the Holy Place? This is a picture of Jesus who said ...

**"I am the Light of the world; he who follows Me will not walk in the darkness, but will have the Light of life."** John 8:12 NASB

Jesus wants to deliver people out of the darkness of sin into the light of eternal life.

## THE TABLE WITH THE BREAD

Remember how God told Moses to make a table and place on it twelve loaves of bread? Again, this is a picture of Jesus who said ...

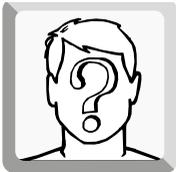
**"I am the bread of life. The one who comes to me will never go hungry, and the one who believes in me will never be thirsty."** John 6:35 NET

Just as the twelve loaves were a picture of sufficient bread for everyone in Israel, so Jesus' death was for the sins of the whole world. As the bread of life, He offers us eternal life.

**"Truly ... I say to you, he who believes has eternal life. I am the bread of life."** John 6:47-48 NASB

## THE CURTAIN

Think again about how God instructed Moses to hang a thick curtain between the Holy Place and the Holy of Holies. Sinful man was barred from entering God's holy presence.



ESTRANGED

The Bible says we are separated from God and cannot come into his presence because of our sin. We are **ESTRANGED** from God and his love.

But then Jesus came. The Scripture tells us that the Tabernacle curtain was a picture of his physical body. When he died on the cross, the curtain was ripped in two from top to bottom. No man could have torn the veil, but God tore it to illustrate Jesus' body being sacrificed for you and me. When we put our trust in him, our sin is forgiven and we can boldly enter into God's presence. The relationship has been restored.

**Therefore, brothers, since we have confidence to enter the Most Holy Place by the blood of Jesus, by a new and living way opened for us through the curtain, that is, his body ... let us draw near to God with a sincere heart in full assurance ...**

Hebrews 10:19–20,22 NIV

**But now in Christ Jesus you who used to be far away have been brought near by the blood of Christ.** Ephesians 2:13 NET

We are not accepted back simply as a friend. The Scripture tells us that we are placed into God's family as full members—it says we are **adopted**.

In the Roman world of Jesus' day, adoption was the legal rite of investing sonship. In our modern society, a child born into a family is automatically recognized as having all the rights and privileges of that family. But in a world where men had wives, concubines and mistresses, as well as children by their slaves, a child was not a legal heir until invested with that sonship in a separate action. Once adopted as a son, you were a full member of the family.



ADOPTED

So it is with us. We, who once were **ESTRANGED** from God's love, can now become members of God's family—as **SONS**.

**And because you are sons, God sent the Spirit of his Son into our hearts, who calls "Abba [Daddy]! Father!" So you are no longer a slave [to sin and Satan] but a son, and if you are a son, then you are also an heir through God.** Galatians 4:6–7 NET

## THE ATONEMENT COVER

The Atonement Cover was that special lid on the Ark of the Covenant, which was located in the Holy of Holies. It was here that the High Priest brought the blood once a year on the Day of Atonement. God gave the Israelites a way to escape judgment of their sin through the shed blood of an innocent lamb. In the same way, Jesus is now our Atonement Cover and, through his shed blood, we find a way to escape eternal death. No longer does man need to offer lambs for a sacrifice. Jesus was the final sacrifice. God says...

**“Their sins and lawless acts I will remember no more.” And where these have been forgiven, there is no longer any sacrifice for sin.**

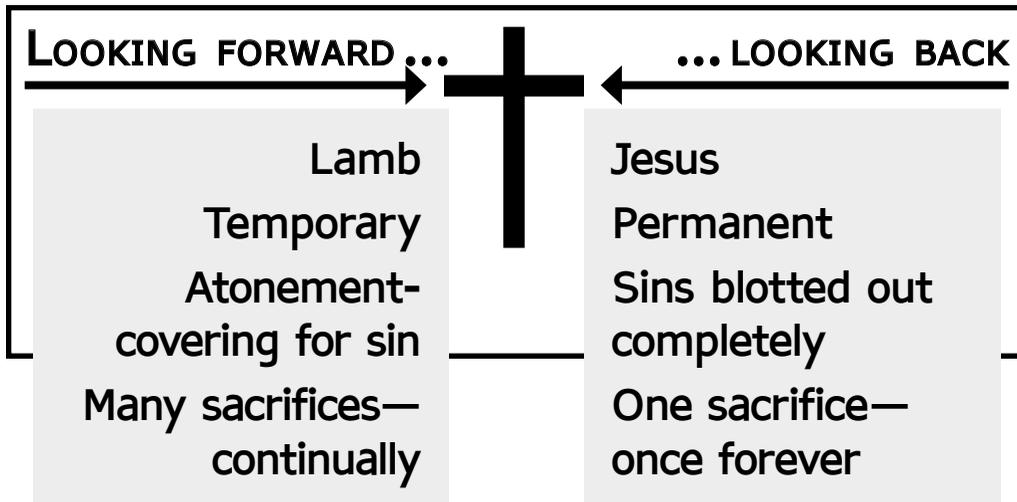
Hebrews 10:17–18 NIV

With Jesus’ death on the cross, the last Lamb had died. Since the beginning of history, it had been God’s plan that the way of escape would be provided through Jesus. The sacrifices had only been a picture of what was to come. There was nothing unique about them; they could not take away sin. But now it was no longer necessary to offer any kind of sacrifice, because Jesus’ blood paid the sin-debt once for all.

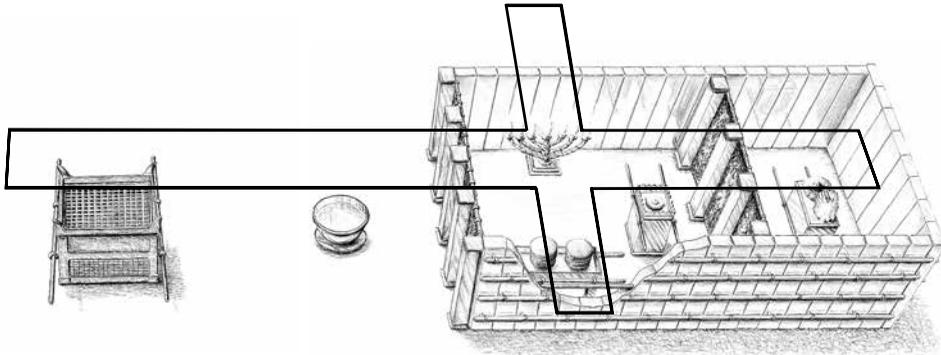
...we have been made holy through the sacrifice of the body of Jesus Christ once for all.

Day after day every priest stands and performs his religious duties; again and again he offers the same sacrifices, which can never take away sins. But when this priest [Jesus] had offered for all time one sacrifice for sins, he sat down at the right hand of God. Hebrew 10:10-12 NIV

God accepted the animals because he was looking forward in history to the time when Jesus would die as the final sacrifice. When Jesus died, he did more than cover sin for a year. He blotted it out from God's sight forever. On the cross He cried, "It is finished"—the final Lamb is found.



Jesus may have told his disciples many more things about himself that are illustrated in the Tabernacle for it is a visual aid of incredible detail, full of comparisons. You can be sure that what Jesus did tell them was unforgettable.



## **MOSES AND THE BRONZE SERPENT**

Recall how the Israelites sinned and God sent the snakes. They cried out for deliverance, so God instructed Moses to make a bronze serpent and raise it up in the middle of the camp. To be healed, all the people had to do was to LOOK at the serpent. There was nothing else they could do.

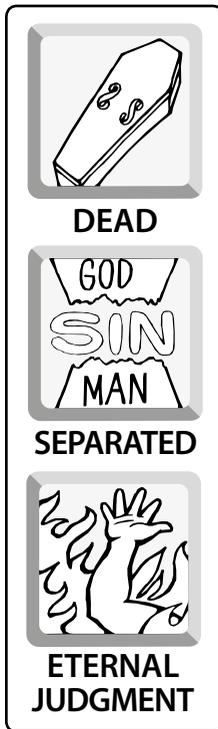
**“Just as Moses lifted up the snake in the desert, so the Son of Man must be lifted up [on the cross], that everyone who believes in him may have eternal life.**

**For God so loved the world that he gave his one and only Son, that whoever believes in him shall not perish but have eternal**

life. For God did not send his Son into the world to condemn the world, but to save the world through him.

Whoever believes in him is not condemned, but whoever does not believe stands condemned already because he has not believed in the name of God's one and only Son."

John 3:14–18 NIV



Man is born into this world condemned already. We are like the Israelites who had been bitten by snakes. We are as good as DEAD. We have no relationship with God; our bodies will eventually die and, after death, we will partake of the Second Death, punishment in the Lake of Fire.

But then Jesus enters the picture. He paid the sin-debt with his own death. However, Jesus did not remain dead—he came back to life. If we look to him in faith just as the Israelites

looked to the bronze snake, then he gives us spiritual life. Just as he came alive, we become spiritually ALIVE, both now and for eternity. The Bible speaks of this as being born again.

When you were dead in your sins ... God made you alive with Christ. He forgave us all our sins. Colossians 2:13 NIV

But because of his great love for us, God, who is rich in mercy, made us alive with Christ even when we were dead in transgressions [sin] ...

Ephesians 2:4–5 NIV



ETERNAL  
LIFE

Once spiritually DEAD, we are now ALIVE and will dwell forever in Heaven.

## 5 JOHN THE BAPTIST TO THE RESURRECTION

As Jesus systematically explained to the disciples the significance of the events recorded in the Scripture, it is probable that he elaborated on accounts similar to the following.

### THE GOOD SHEPHERD



LOST

The Bible says ...

All of us like sheep have gone astray, Each of us has turned to his own way ... Isaiah 53:6 NASB

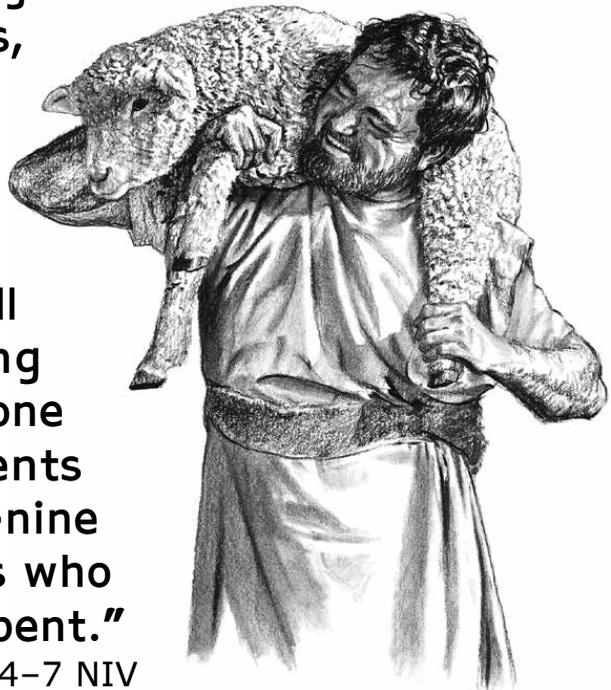


FOUND

Man chose to go his own way, taking a path that led him into a spiritual wilderness. Man is LOST.

But then Jesus came looking for us. While on earth he told a parable that describes God's concern.

"Suppose one of you has a hundred sheep and loses one of them. Does he not leave the ninety-nine in the open country and go after the lost sheep until he finds it? And when he finds it, he joyfully puts it on his shoulders and goes home. Then he calls his friends and neighbors together and says, 'Rejoice with me; I have found my lost sheep.' I tell you that in the same way there will be more rejoicing in heaven over one sinner who repents than over ninety-nine righteous persons who do not need to repent."



Luke 15:4-7 NIV

God could have stayed in Heaven and forever turned his back on mankind, but that isn't what happened. The Bible makes it clear that Jesus took the initiative to seek us out and then, as the good shepherd, went much further.

**"I am the good shepherd. The good shepherd lays down his life for the sheep."**

John 10:11 ESV

That is exactly what Jesus did. He **died for us, in our place, to pay our sin-debt.** That is love in all its perfection. Yes, God is love, but not without tremendous cost.

## **SEPARATION**

When Jesus was on the cross he cried out,

**"My God, My God, why have You forsaken Me?"**

Mark 15:34 NKJV

Jesus didn't just die a physical death, there was also a spiritual dimension. **Sin demands separation.** In those desperate hours on the cross, God the Father turned his back on his Son. It must have wrenched his loving heart but, consistent with his holy nature, God could not look upon Jesus as he took our sin upon himself. The Bible says that the sky grew dark although it was midday. It seems as though

the Father did not want the world to see the agony that the Son went through, as Jesus willingly took our sin on himself, became our substitute Lamb, and died. God allowed it; indeed, he planned it.

## THE GREAT EXCHANGE

The Bible says that...

**God made him who had no sin to be \*sin for us ...**

2 Corinthians 5:21 NIV

This verse is not saying that Jesus became a sinner. The word \*sin has the idea of a sin-offering. **“God made Jesus, who had no sin, to be a sin-offering for us...”** When Jesus took our sin, God poured out on him all the fury of his rightful anger on sin. Then Jesus was able to do something we could not do. He said, **“It is finished.”** If we had paid our own sin-debt, we would have gone on and on paying—for eternity. We could never have said, **“It is finished.”** But Jesus paid it all.

The rest of the verse reads:

**...so that in him we might become the righteousness of God.** 2 Corinthians 5:21 NIV

It's in him we find righteousness! It's not ours. Jesus took our sin and offers us his righteousness. It's the greatest of all exchanges. No longer do we

need the blood of a lamb to cover our sin; we are clothed in something far better, the righteousness of Christ. When we trust him, God gives us His righteousness! Remember that question from ages past—“How can man get rid of his sin and gain a righteousness equal to God’s righteousness so he can be accepted in God’s presence?” The complete answer is found in this one verse. Read it again.

**God made him who had no sin to be [a] sin [offering] for us, so that in him we might become the righteousness of God.**

2 Corinthians 5:21 NIV

## **THE RESURRECTION**

Jesus died, yes, but he didn’t stay dead like the prophets of the past. Jesus came back to life to prove that death had no power over Him. He said...

**For this reason the Father loves me, because I lay down my life that I may take it up again. No one takes it from me, but I lay it down of my own accord. I have authority to lay it down, and I have authority to take it up again.**

John 10:17–18 ESV

The Romans have been blamed for executing Jesus, and the religious leaders for pressuring them to do it. Over the centuries, the Jews have faced

immense persecution on the premise that the whole sorry affair was **their** fault. Such a perception is completely false. The Bible states clearly that it was **Jesus** who voluntarily laid down his life. No one forced him to die against his will. It was his choice, motivated by his love for us. The truth of the matter is that the sins of the whole world were responsible for nailing Jesus to the cross.

The resurrection was a powerful display that God's **just** nature was satisfied with Jesus' death on our behalf. The payment had been made and it had been accepted as sufficient! The grave could not hold him in its clutches. He had victory over death! Jesus had broken sin's grip, defeated Satan's power and removed death's terrible finality.

**Since the children have flesh and blood, he too shared in their humanity so that by his death he might destroy him who holds the power of death—that is, the devil—and free those who all their lives were held in slavery by their fear of death.**

Hebrews 2:14–15 NIV

An overwhelming feeling of despair must have swept over Satan when Jesus was resurrected. Satan had thought that when he had enticed

Judas Iscariot to betray Jesus, he was the winner. Now he had been defeated at his own game. His most powerful tool—death—had lost its sting.

## REDEEMED

For centuries, man had been a SLAVE to Satan's will. Through blatant lies, imitation of the truth, even the denial of his own existence, Satan had



SLAVE

manipulated mankind for his own purposes. But even independently of Satan's influence, man could not live a perfect life. Man was a SLAVE to sin.



SET-FREE  
REDEEMED

But then Jesus came and REDEEMED us. It is difficult for us to grasp the rich significance connected with this word if we do not understand its association with ancient slavery.

A wealthy man would go to the slave market to buy a slave. There he would see the captives chained, humbled and broken, each being sold for a given sum. The man would pay the asking price and the slave would become his. So far this was nothing unusual, but now the story takes an interesting twist. On rare occasions, the new owner would then take his new slave out of the

slave market, break off the chains and set him free. When this happened, it was said that the slave had been REDEEMED.

That is what Jesus did for us. We were bound by the chains of sin and Satan in the slave market of life. We were helpless to deliver ourselves. But then Jesus came and purchased us, paying the price with his own blood. He then took us out of the market, broke off the chains and set us free.

**For you know that it was not with perishable things such as silver or gold that you were redeemed from the empty way of life...but with the precious blood of Christ, a lamb without blemish or defect.**

1 Peter 1:18-19 NIV

**In him we have redemption through his blood, the forgiveness of sins, in accordance with the riches of God's grace.**

Ephesians 1:7 NIV



## THE SHEEP PEN

Now, let's continue with the analogy Jesus used in describing us as sheep. Remember how a good shepherd would sleep in the entrance of the sheep pen to protect the flock? Jesus said ...

**"Yes, I am the gate. Those who come in through me will be saved."** John 10:9 NLT

The pen had only one gate. In the same way, Jesus is the only door to eternal life. There is no other way to be saved from the consequences of sin.

...Just as there was only one way in which Cain and Abel could approach God;

...just as there was only one door to safety in Noah's boat;

...just as there was only one door to the Tabernacle;

...and just as there is only one door to a sheep pen, so Jesus is the only way to God.

Some people believe you can come to God by another religion, perhaps by some combination of many religions, but the Bible allows no room for other ways to God. This may be viewed as discriminatory in our politically-correct age, but repeatedly, the Bible echoes this theme: **Jesus is the only way.**

**"...there is salvation in no one else, for there is no other name under heaven given among men by which we must be saved."**

Acts 4:12 ESV

Some may not like this biblical narrow-mindedness, however to be true to the text, I must say that this is what the Bible clearly teaches. It also says that if we don't approve of God's chosen way, we can reject it. God allows us that freedom, but then we must also pay our own debt with our own personal death for eternity. Of course, one can deny the existence of God and ignore the Bible's message entirely, though frankly, a person has to admit, it's a hazardous option.

### **INTOLERANCE**

Though Jesus made it clear that there was no other way to God, he did not advocate violent suppression of other belief systems. His approach was to teach truth. Truth exposes error and people are then free to make their choice.

As the disciples listened to Jesus teach from the Law and the Prophets, they must have had premonitions of the consequences of his message. They lived

in the Roman Empire. The Romans were tolerant of other religions up to a point, but they had also come to believe that Caesar was a god. The Romans wouldn't object to Jesus being presented as **another way** to God, but to teach what Jesus taught—that **He** is the **only way**—would jeopardize their lives. According to extra-biblical sources, all but one of the eleven original disciples were put to death for this message. They died for what they knew to be true. The eleventh was exiled.

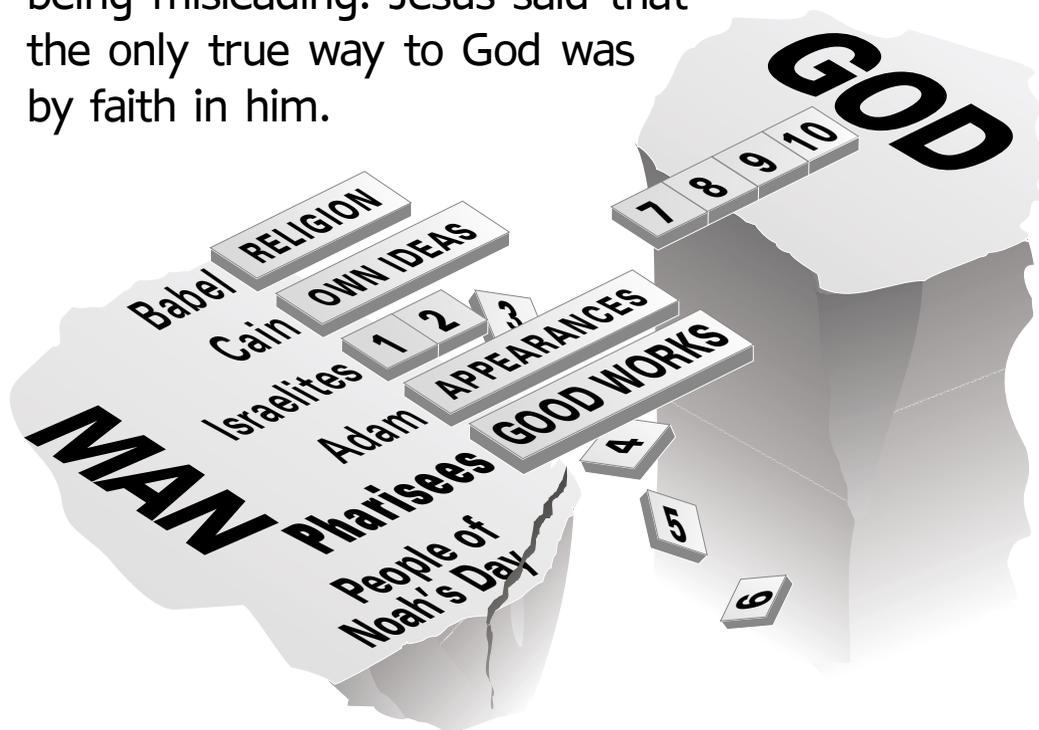
### **THE PHARISEES**

The Pharisees, of all people, were impeccably religious. They had an extensive list of do's and don'ts.

Today, one of the most common misconceptions about life is that people can earn their way to Heaven by doing enough good to outweigh their bad. Based on **that** kind of thinking, they go to church, pray, burn candles, do penance, give to charity, etc., hoping they will be acceptable to God. That is not what the Bible teaches—anywhere. In fact, it states the opposite.

The Pharisees were very religious, but Jesus condemned both their lives and their teaching as

being misleading. Jesus said that the only true way to God was by faith in him.



We put faith into practice every day. You are probably applying a principle of faith right now. If you are sitting in a chair, you are trusting in the chair to hold you up, without collapsing. It's doubtful that you sat down thinking—"I am going to trust this chair to be sturdy"—but, nonetheless, you exercised faith in the chair. In a sense, faith in itself is neutral. What is important is this: in what or in whom are you placing your trust? The chair may collapse—but then it's only a chair. However, if you are placing your faith in Jesus having paid your

sin-debt, then you can have absolute confidence that he has done just that. He has promised.

**For it is by grace you have been saved, through faith—and this not from yourselves, it is the gift of God—not by works, so that no one can boast.** Ephesians 2:8–9 NIV

The Bible says we are saved from the consequences of sin through faith in Jesus Christ. This **salvation** is a **gift** from God. We didn't have to earn it by any religious act or good work.

Gifts are free. If you work for a **gift**, it is no longer a gift.

**Gifts in the truest sense are undeserved.**

If we feel we deserve it, then it ceases to be a **gift** and becomes an **award**. The eternal life God gives us is truly a gift because we don't deserve it in any way.

The Pharisees were convinced that their good deeds would please God. But God says that if he accepted people based on what they themselves did, then people would **boast** about their goodness. He saves us from judgment, not on the basis of how good we are, but on the basis of his gift to us.

**For the wages of sin is death, but the free gift of God is eternal life in Christ Jesus our Lord.**

Romans 6:23 ESV

**We believe that Jesus died in our place for our sin.**

**We believe that Jesus paid our sin-debt.**

**We believe that God's justice was satisfied by that death. We believe that when He looks at us, He no longer sees our sin, but He sees us clothed in Jesus' righteousness.**

**We believe that God gives us the gift of eternal life.**

**It's all faith, but it's not blind faith.**

**It's faith that is built on the facts we find in the Bible.**

Some people add a spiritual aura to faith. It becomes quantified. You either have a lot of faith or just a little. But that thinking confuses the issue. Putting faith in Jesus is similar to a drowning man nodding to his rescuer when the lifesaver says, **"Will you trust me to save you?"** The size of the nod is immaterial. The point is not the nod at all. The point is that the drowning man is acknowledging his predicament and trusting in the lifeguard to rescue him. For the drowning

man to later claim that his big nod saved his life would be ludicrous.

So it is with us. We need to acknowledge that we are helpless sinners and then trust in Jesus to save us from our sin. It is not the size of our trust that saves us. It is Jesus who does the saving. It is all of him and none of us.

**For in the gospel a righteousness from God is revealed, a righteousness that is by faith from first to last...**

Romans 1:17 NIV



In continuing the analogy of a drowning man, let me also add that it is important to **know** that you are drowning. If you think you are floating just fine, you will reject all help. However, even if you **know** you are drowning but are too proud to ask for help, you will drown all the same. Others may see that you are floundering, but they will be unable to help you until you allow them. It's the same spiritually. You must see yourself as a helpless sinner before you can be saved from your sin-debt. That's the starting point.

The Bible is full of illustrations of who Jesus Christ is and what he has done. We can only offer conjecture as to which of those illustrations Jesus used as he taught the disciples. Undoubtedly, he used most or all of the ones we have touched on. He probably used more. When he had finished teaching, the room must have been silent. The question which remained for Jesus' disciples is the same question which remains for us. In whom are you placing your faith? In yourself, your religion, your ideas, your good works, or in the fact that Jesus died in your place to pay your sin-debt?

It should all make sense now. If someone was to ask you, "Why did Jesus die?" you should be able to answer:

**Sin demands death. Instead of each of us dying for our sin and paying the eternal consequences, Jesus died in our place, taking those consequences upon Himself. He is our substitute.**

If someone was to ask you, "How can I get to Heaven?" you should be able to answer:

**To live in Heaven we need to be pure and perfect, just as God is pure and perfect. If we put our faith in God, believing that when Jesus was dying on the cross, he was dying in our place for our sin, then God will clothe us in his righteousness and we will be accepted completely.**

Jesus took our sin and offers us his righteousness.

# CHAPTER FIFTEEN

**1** WHAT DO YOU WANT ME TO DO?

**2** A CONVENIENT TIME

# 1 WHAT DO YOU WANT ME TO DO?

In the days immediately following Jesus' resurrection, he spent time with his disciples and ...

...showed himself to these men and gave many convincing proofs that he was alive. He appeared to them over a period of forty days and spoke about the kingdom of God.

Acts 1:3 NIV

In the end, Jesus took them back to familiar ground, just two miles from Jerusalem.

Then he led them out as far as Bethany, and lifting up his hands he blessed them. While he blessed them, he parted from them and was carried up into heaven.

Luke 24:50–51 ESV

As they were still staring into the sky while he was going, suddenly two men in white clothing stood near them and said, "Men of Galilee, why do you stand here looking up into the sky? This same Jesus who has been taken up from you into heaven will come back in the same way you saw him go into heaven."

Acts 1:10–11 NET

The angels said Jesus would come again. If we were to study the Bible further, we would see that it has a lot to say about that future event.<sup>1</sup> Just as God kept his promise related to prophecies about his first coming, we can be assured that he will keep his Word regarding his second coming. He always does.

The rest of the Bible records the events surrounding the lives of the disciples who became known as apostles. These followers of Jesus told multitudes of people about him.

**The word of God continued to spread, the number of disciples in Jerusalem increased greatly, and a large group of [temple] priests became obedient to the faith.**

Acts 6:7 NET

Even priests who had been instrumental in Jesus' death believed. But not everyone was convinced and, just as the disciples must have anticipated, there was resistance. One particularly ardent Jesus-hater was a young Pharisee named Saul, who murdered and imprisoned followers of Jesus.

**Meanwhile Saul, still breathing out threats to murder the Lord's disciples,**

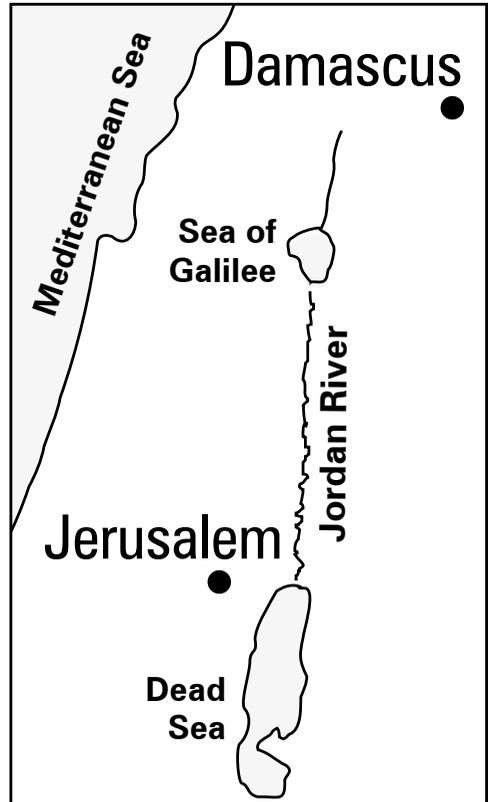
went to the high priest and requested letters from him to the synagogues in Damascus, so that if he found any who belonged to the Way, either men or women, he could bring them as prisoners to Jerusalem.

As he was going along, approaching Damascus, suddenly a light from heaven flashed around him. He fell to the ground and heard a voice saying to him, "Saul, Saul, why are you persecuting me?"

So he said, "Who are you, Lord?"

He replied, "I am Jesus whom you are persecuting!"

Acts 9:1-5 NET



This was the beginning of a remarkable life. Saul changed radically. He stopped killing believers

and became one himself. The tables turned and the persecutor became the persecuted. On one occasion, he was stoned with rocks and left for dead. Three times he was beaten with rods; five times whipped; three times shipwrecked (during one of which he floated on the sea for twenty-four hours). All of this occurred as Saul tried to tell others about his own belief that Jesus was THE PROMISED SAVIOUR. This Saul was none other than the man we know as **Paul the Apostle**, the one who wrote a significant part of the Bible.

Over and over again, we have seen throughout the Scriptures that God asked thought-provoking questions. These queries were designed to expose and clarify a person's innermost thoughts so that the one being addressed would have to grapple with reality. Saul, too, was confronted by God and asked a question:

**"Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me?"**

In a way, God was saying, "Saul, why are you my enemy when you could be my friend?" Saul's reply revealed that he knew exactly who was quizzing him. He said, "Lord."

If we were to be so fortunate as to encounter God in person, I can't help but feel that he would begin the conversation with a question. The likelihood of being confronted the same way as Saul was is very remote; in all of Scripture it happened to only a few. Even though we may not be confronted in person, we are still faced with what God has recorded in the Bible. Through it he asks us a question, **"Will you recognize and believe in Jesus as your own personal Saviour—the one who has paid your sin-debt?"**

Don't answer without thought. Maybe you have been thinking it through. On the other hand, maybe you need to take some time to ponder the question.

If you answer, **"NO, I don't trust Jesus,"** then the rest of this chapter will have little relevance for you. You are welcome to read it, but I would suggest you skip this section and finish with the next section entitled, **A CONVENIENT TIME** (page 548). The Bible says that if we reject the message of the cross, then the rest of the Scripture will not be understood correctly because ...

...it is veiled only to those who are perishing.

In their case the god of this world [Satan] has blinded the minds of the unbelievers, to keep them from seeing the light of the gospel [the good news] of the glory of Christ, who is the image of God.

2 Corinthians 4:3-4 ESV

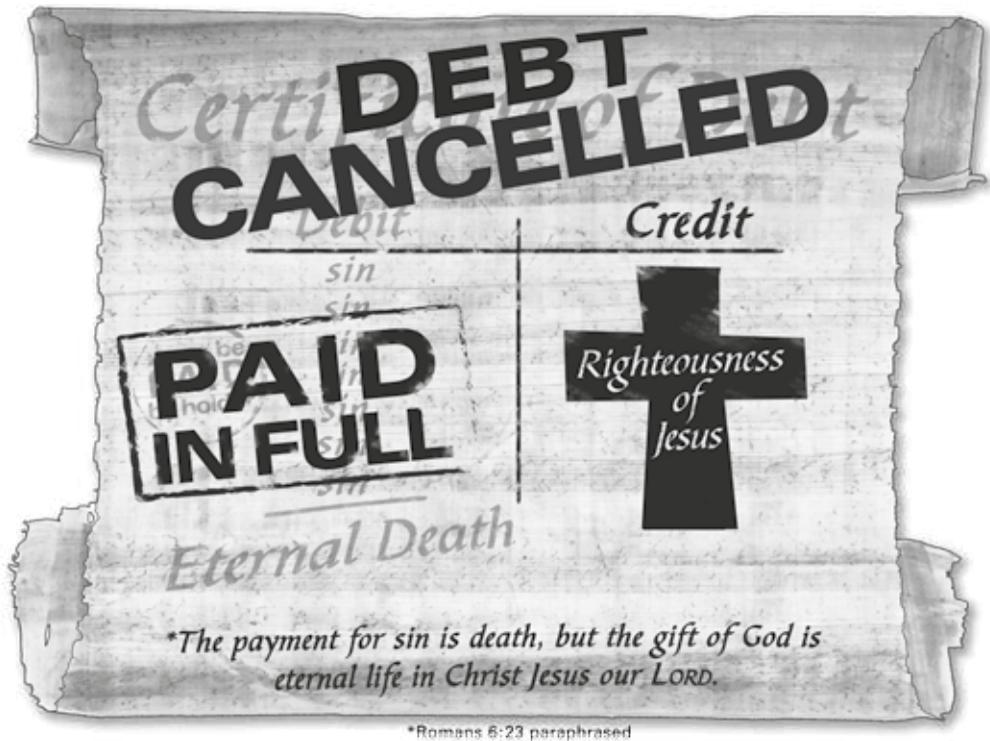
On the other hand, if you answer, "YES, I would like to trust Jesus," or "YES, I believe He has paid my sin-debt," then read on. The rest of the Bible is written for people like you.

If, in all honesty you have answered these questions with a YES, then based on what the Bible says, you can rest assured that your sin is forgiven and that your relationship with God has been restored. You can have complete confidence in the fact that your **Certificate of Debt** has been paid in full.

And when you were dead in your transgressions<sup>2</sup> ... He made you alive together with Him, having forgiven us all our transgressions, having canceled out the certificate of debt consisting of

decrees against us and which was hostile to us; and He has taken it out of the way, having nailed it to the cross.

Colossians 2:13–14 NASB



Your sin-debt was nailed to the cross two thousand years ago. Because of your trust in him, God now says that your ...

**"...sins and lawless acts I will remember no more."**

Hebrews 10:17 NIV

God's forgiveness is total.

For as high as the heavens are above the earth, so great is his steadfast love toward those who fear [or respect] him; as far as the east is from the west, so far does he remove our transgressions<sup>2</sup> from us.

Psalm 103:11–12 ESV

Therefore, if anyone is in Christ, he is a new creation; old things have passed away; behold, all things have become new.

2 Corinthians 5:17 NKJV

Now instead of eternal death in the Lake of Fire, Jesus says:

“Let not your heart be troubled; you believe in God, believe also in Me. In My Father’s house are many mansions; if it were not so, I would have told you. I go to prepare a place for you. And if I go and prepare a place for you, I will come again and receive you to Myself; that where I am, there you may be also. And where I go you know, and the way you know.”

John 14:1–4 NKJV

## **RELATIONSHIP**

As a believer, life still goes on, but now you are assured of a future destiny in Heaven. Jesus

says he is preparing a dwelling place for you. With confidence you can now say that you are a citizen of Heaven. Your **relationship** with God is now restored.

Just as you were once born into an earthly family, the Bible says you have now been born into God's family. And just as your earthly parents will always be your parents regardless of what happens, so it is that once you are born into God's family, you can't be **un-born**. It is important to understand that when it comes to your **relationship** with God, your eternal destiny is settled once for all. You belong to God's family for eternity.<sup>3</sup>



I write these things to you who believe in the name of the Son of God that you may know that you have<sup>4</sup> eternal life.

1 John 5:13 ESV

For I am convinced that neither death nor life, neither angels nor demons, neither the present nor the future, nor any powers, neither height nor depth, nor anything else in all creation, will be able to separate us from the love of God that is in Christ Jesus our Lord.

Romans 8:38–39 NIV

Even though you are now part of God's family (relationship), the Bible says that you will still sin. When that happens, there is a break in your family fellowship.

## **FELLOWSHIP**

**Fellowship** is different than **relationship**. For instance, if a son is asked by his dad to mow the lawn, but instead he goes fishing, things won't be right when Dad arrives home. There will be a barrier between father and son, and you would probably sense it if you were there. It is true that the son and dad are still related—their

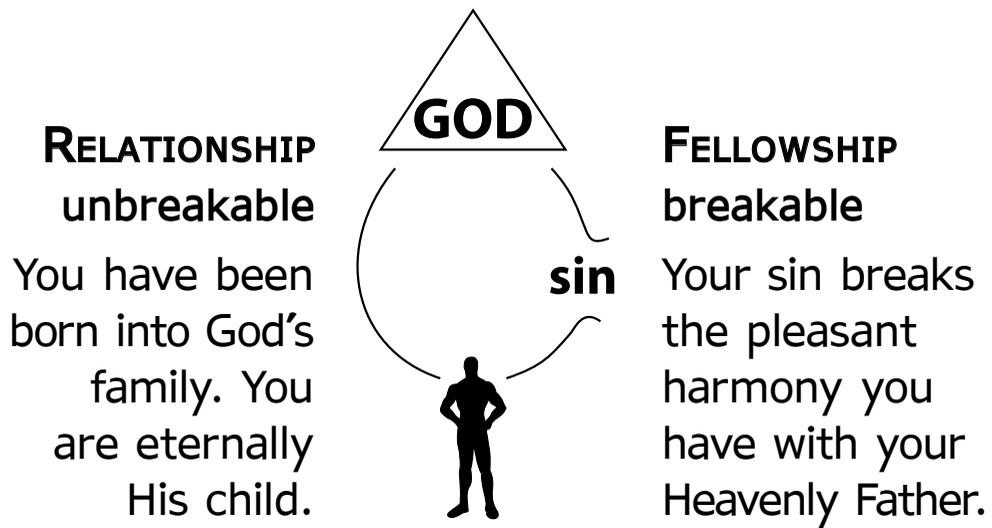
relationship has not changed—but the family fellowship has gone sour. However, the Bible has a solution.

When we sin, we are told to acknowledge that fact to God, and if we have wronged our fellow man, then we must seek to be reconciled to him as well. God has promised that...

**If we confess our sins, He is faithful and just to forgive us our sins and to cleanse us from all unrighteousness.**

1 John 1:9 NKJV

Our fellowship with God will be immediately restored when we acknowledge our sin.



## THE FACTS—WITHOUT THE CROSS



GUILTY

I am accused and found guilty of breaking God's perfect law.



DEBTOR

To break God's law is to sin, and my sin incurs a sin-debt, a consequence I must pay.

ETERNAL  
JUDGMENT

The debt can only be paid by my death, a payment that is made for eternity in the Lake of Fire.



SLAVE

It is impossible to keep God's law perfectly. Even when I try hard, I still find myself failing. In addition, Satan manipulates me to do his will. I am a slave.



ESTRANGED

My sin has estranged me from God and his love. God seems distant and remote.

## THE FACTS—BECAUSE OF THE CROSS



**DECLARED  
RIGHTEOUS**

God, as the perfect judge, declares me right with him—justified. He now views me as righteous.



**CANCELLED  
DEBT**

My sin-debt was taken care of on the cross. The debt is gone—paid in full, erased.



**ETERNAL  
LIFE**

God gives me a new life, both now and for all of eternity in Heaven.



**SET-FREE  
REDEEMED**

Once enslaved, I have now been bought with Jesus' blood and set free. I am no longer a slave to Satan's purposes.



**ADOPTED**

Not only have I been born into God's family, but God has given me the full rights of a son.

**THE FACTS—WITHOUT THE CROSS** (CONTINUED)

ENEMY

When I was born into this world, I joined forces with Satan, who also sinned against God.



LOST

Having chosen my own way, I find myself in a spiritual wilderness, groping for truth. I am like a lost sheep.

**BORN AN UNBELIEVER...****I DON'T BELIEVE...**

I believe that there may be many ways to be accepted by God—if there is a God. Jesus may be one way. Whatever the case, if I live a good life and do my best, then God will accept me.

## THE FACTS—BECAUSE OF THE CROSS (CONTINUED)



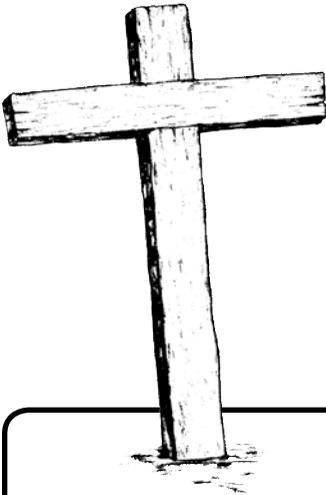
RECONCILED

Jesus' death and resurrection defeated Satan. I no longer belong to the Devil. I have peace with God.



FOUND

Jesus, the Good Shepherd, has found me and given me new life, eternal life, forgiveness, purpose for living, freedom from guilt, and much more.



**...IT'S A CHOICE TO BELIEVE**

**...I DO BELIEVE**

I believe that Jesus is God himself, and that He died on the cross in my place, paying my sin-debt. I trust in the resurrected Saviour alone to save me from the consequences of sin.

## YOUR RESPONSIBILITY

I remember a time, after completing this study, a student asked, "John, I know that I am a helpless sinner." He then gave a brief overview of the Bible to assure me that he knew he couldn't do anything good in himself to please God. He summarized it with a clear explanation of his faith in what Jesus had accomplished on the cross for him. He then said, "John, you have a son. Just as I didn't have to do anything to become a member of God's family, neither did your son do anything to become a member of your family. But now that he is a member, he has responsibilities around the house." He then asked, **"As part of God's family, what are my responsibilities?"**

That was a very perceptive question, one which the rest of the Bible answers. The Scripture says that the life a person lives is determined by the **focus** he maintains, on **what** he fixes his attention. This is not some sort of mind game. It has to do with your center of attention. If you focus on yourself, you will become very self-centered. If you focus on God, you will find your life bringing him the honour and glory that he deserves. Therefore to be a responsible believer:

1. You need to **focus** on what you now have because of Jesus, which includes all the things you see listed on pages 529 and 531. What you **now have** is referred to as your position in Christ. God wants you to rejoice in the fact that your sin is forgiven and that you now have a new life.
2. You need to **focus** on getting acquainted with Jesus. Paul the Apostle wrote that his life ambition was to...

**...count all things to be loss in view of the surpassing value of knowing Christ Jesus my Lord, for whom I have suffered the loss of all things, and count them but rubbish so that I may gain Christ, and may be found in Him, not having a righteousness of my own derived from the Law, but that which is through faith in Christ, the righteousness which comes from God on the basis of faith, that I may know Him ...**      Philippians 3:8–10 NASB

When you fix your attention on the LORD, you take your eyes off yourself. You become captivated with pleasing him and serving others. It's like a young man with his girlfriend—all taken up with getting to know her.

3. You need to focus on trusting Him daily, in all of life's situations, for you can have confidence that he is fully able to handle all your worries and concerns.

Jesus said ...

**"Come to me, all you who are weary and burdened, and I will give you rest."**

Matthew 11:28 NET

As you apply these truths, you will find that you will be growing from a spiritual babe into a spiritually mature adult. Should you begin to think that this all happens as a result of some sort of super-discipline you conjure up in yourself, it is important to understand that...

**... He who has begun a good work in you will complete it until the day of Jesus Christ ...**

Philippians 1:6 NKJV

Just as it's not normal or healthy for an infant to remain a baby all its life, it's not right for a person who is a newborn child of God to remain a spiritual infant. Unfortunately, this is all too common, but one doesn't need to be that way. Keep your focus in the proper place and you will grow.

## OBSTACLES

There are obstacles that will destroy your focus and hinder your spiritual growth.

**1. Our human nature:**<sup>5</sup> If there ever was a case of being one's own worst enemy, this is it. The Bible says that our sinful human nature is never satisfied. It always desires more money, more attention, a different personality, better looks, nicer this, greater that, ad infinitum it goes. It may be satisfied momentarily, but then it will desire something more to fill the black hole of feelings and wants. Our human nature has one primary focus—our **SELF**. The Scriptures say ...

**...live by the Spirit, and you will not gratify the desires of the sinful nature.**

Galatians 5:16 NIV

So how do we **live by the Spirit**? It comes back to this matter of focus. As we focus on the things of God, the **desires of the sinful nature** are replaced with a stronger desire to please our Creator-Owner.

We are told to treat our sinful or **earthly nature** as if it were dead. We are to actively ignore its demands and desires.

**Put to death, therefore, whatever belongs to your earthly nature ...** Colossians 3:5 NIV

For example, being a soldier means one has a certain identity. Clothing, haircut, lifestyle, all relates to the military. While in the army a soldier must obey his superiors. But when he leaves the military he takes on a new identity—the identity of a civilian. No longer is he required to dress a certain way. His former superiors have no say over his life. In the same way, before we believed, we were identified with Adam and had only our sinful or **earthly nature** to satisfy. But now as a believer, we are identified with Christ, and he wants us to **focus on Him** and serve others.

**...let us throw off everything that hinders and the sin that so easily entangles, and let us run with perseverance the race marked out for us. Let us fix our eyes [or focus] on Jesus ...** Hebrews 12:1–2 NIV

This biblical counsel runs contrary to much advice we receive today. Nowadays we are told to delve into our past to search for the answers to our problems. Every wrong must be righted and, if we have been hurt, then we are to be pitied as victims. The end result of all this advice is that

we focus on ourselves. We become self-obsessed. By contrast, the Bible tells us to forget about ourselves, including our past. If we have been truly wronged, we are to forgive, as difficult as that may be.

**And be kind to one another, tenderhearted, forgiving one another, just as God in Christ forgave you.** Ephesians 4:32 NKJV

It may seem strange, but in the process of forgiving others, we experience healing in our own lives. Jesus, who surely knew what it was to be wronged, said ...

**I have told you these things so that my joy may be in you, and your joy may be complete.** John 15:11 NET

**2. The world system:** The Bible says that the world system has a negative impact on us spiritually, shifting our focus from Jesus to those things that are fleeting. We are responsible to discern what tends to drag us back into old, sinful patterns and avoid those things that destroy our focus.

**For the grace of God ... teaches us to say "No" to ungodliness and worldly passions, and to live self-controlled, upright and**

**godly lives in this present age, while we wait for the blessed hope—the glorious appearing of our great God and Savior, Jesus Christ...**

Titus 2:11–13 NIV

**3. The Devil:** Even though Satan has been defeated, he still actively tries to influence us. God didn't obliterate the Devil when we became believers. Rather, we are responsible to resist his temptations and seek strength from God alone.

**Submit yourselves, then, to God. Resist the devil, and he will flee from you.**

James 4:7 NIV

Satan cleverly uses the influence of the world and our self-centered human natures to tempt us, to shift our focus. You can expect him to plant doubt in your mind, even about the choice you have made to trust Jesus. He will say your faith wasn't big enough or question whether you really understood. Remember, he did that with Adam and Eve too. Resist him and do what Jesus did. Go to the Bible for help.

As we overcome the influence of these three obstacles, as we maintain our focus, we grow strong spiritual roots.

## RESOURCES

The Bible gives multiple resources to help us maintain our focus.

**1. God Himself:** When you trusted in Jesus, the Bible says the Holy Spirit entered you; he came to live in you. Now he is constantly accessible—to encourage you when you are downhearted, to urge you to earnestly live for him, to rebuke you when you drift into sin. The **Holy Spirit** is such a faithful companion that he is called the **Comforter, the Helper, the Counselor**—all of which are God's names.

**“But the Helper, the Holy Spirit, whom the Father will send in My name, He will teach you all things, and bring to your remembrance all things that I said to you.”**

John 14:26 NKJV

As parents, we are delighted when our children achieve a set goal, or behave themselves in a pleasing manner. As God's children, it is important that we conduct ourselves in a way that will bring honour and not disgrace to our heavenly Father's name. Our obedience shows we are giving to God the proper esteem and respect he deserves.

**“You are worthy, our Lord and God, to receive glory and honor and power, since you created all things, and because of your will they existed and were created!”**

Revelation 4:11 NET

**2. Faith:** The process of growing spiritually is often referred to in Scripture as **walking with God**. It occurs one step at a time. Just as we became members of God’s family by **faith**, so we are to walk with God by **faith**.

**As you have therefore received Christ Jesus the Lord, so walk in Him, rooted and built up in Him and established in the faith, as you have been taught, abounding in it with thanksgiving.**

Colossians 2:6–7 NKJV

Remember, **faith** is built on the **facts** that are found in the Bible. It’s important not to walk with God based on the way you **feel**. You may get up in the morning feeling congested and running a fever. That does not mean you are no longer part of your parents’ family or, for that matter, a part of God’s family. Sometimes you may not **feel** very spiritual, but that does not determine how well you are walking with God. Our walk each day is

determined by the choices we make. If we make wise choices, we will be learning God's wisdom. If we make foolish ones, we'll be demonstrating immaturity, and will remain spiritual children. The choices we make are guided by God as we read the Bible.

**3. The Bible:** It's our source of daily strength, our guide book.

**All Scripture is God-breathed and is useful for teaching, rebuking, correcting and training in righteousness, so that the man of God may be thoroughly equipped for every good work.**      2 Timothy 3:16–17 NIV

The Bible compares itself to spiritual food. The more you study it, the stronger you will become spiritually. God will **speak** to you through the Bible—not audibly, but in your mind. It's one of the keys to developing your **fellowship** with God. Reading the Scripture is how you get to **know** Him. Without its constant nourishment, you will remain a spiritual baby.

If you do not personally own a Bible, purchase one. Begin by reading the **Gospel of John**. It reads like a story, so it's not difficult. Then

obtain a copy of *BY THIS NAME* (see page 576), a book that is similar to *THE STRANGER*. As you read it, you will add a whole new layer to your understanding of the Bible. When you are done, go back through *BY THIS NAME* and look up every reference in your Bible. Using a coloured pencil, underline the verses. It will help you spot them quickly, and bring back to your memory what you have learned. Then read the books of *Acts* and *Romans*. If you don't understand something, just keep reading. It will slowly come together.

**4. Prayer:** Prayer is simply talking to God. You don't need to bow your head and close your eyes, although that is appropriate if it helps you avoid distractions. Because God knows your thoughts and is everywhere present, you can silently voice your prayer to him at any time and he will hear it. It is not necessary to pray audibly.

**Do not be anxious about anything. Instead, in every situation, through prayer and petition with thanksgiving, tell your requests to God. And the peace of God that surpasses all understanding will guard your hearts and minds in Christ Jesus.**

Philippians 4:6–7 NET

Prayer is a way of expressing our concerns, our heartaches, our requests and our thankfulness to God.

**5. Other Believers:** The Bible tells us that we gain spiritual maturity through friendship with others Bible believers. This is vital.

**And let us consider how we may spur one another on toward love and good deeds.**

**Let us not give up meeting together, as some are in the habit of doing, but let us encourage one another—and all the more as you see the Day [of Jesus' return] approaching.**

Hebrews 10:24–25 NIV

Most of your friendships with other believers will be built within the context of a church. However, a few cautions are in order.

Remember, Satan comes as an **angel of light**. He loves religion. Because of that, you need to realize that there are many **false shepherds** and **false sheep** out there. Just because people talk about God does not mean they are true believers. Churches range from good to bad in their understanding and practice of the truth. The Bible says that both true and false teachers

will exist until Jesus returns a second time, when he will sort it all out. Until then, be discerning. Ask these questions:

- Does the church believe that the Bible is the true, inspired Word of God, without error in its original writings? Watch out for those who say it only **contains** God's Word.
- Does the church believe the Bible literally, or does it teach it as fables or abstract stories? (e.g. The Bible tells us there is a literal Hell, a literal Devil, a literal Heaven, etc.)
- Does the church believe in such events as Jesus' birth by a **virgin** woman? Be alert for those who say it meant only a **young woman**, that Mary wasn't a virgin.
- Does the church believe that Jesus is fully God as well as man? Be on guard for those who say Jesus was just another god, and that we are gods as well. In the same way, avoid those who say Jesus was just a great teacher.
- Does the church believe in the Trinity?
- Does the church understand that Jesus died in our place for our sin-debt? If the church is

fuzzy on this, or it is felt that you need to do something in addition to be accepted by God, such as baptism or other special rites—beware.

- Does the church have a good reputation? Are the meetings known for bizarre or disorderly behavior? Does it hold high moral standards? Are its business dealings of dubious nature?

If the church is questionable in **one** of these areas, then there is a great likelihood that it will be off-base in other teachings as well. These questions are targeted to reveal symptoms of deeper problems. You should feel completely free to ask the church leaders to answer specific questions. Any hedging on their part should flash a caution signal. Don't be caught up by how nice the preacher is, or how persuasively he communicates. Remember, many churches are **not** following the Bible. There is no such thing as a perfect church, but these questions will help you find a group of like-minded believers.

The whole notion of church may cause derision from family and friends. It may be a difficult, humbling experience. Your pride may want to come to the rescue, but just remember where pride had its

source, and seek out a group of believers anyway. The idea of getting together for mutual strength was God's idea—it's important for your growth as a Christian. Fellow believers can be a tremendous help in encouraging you in your spiritual journey.

**6. Music:** King David wrote some of the first songs or **Psalms** for the purpose of encouraging our hearts. Since then, other believers have written excellent lyrics about God. Once again, beware—there is both good and bad music. Use the same discernment you would apply in choosing a church. Based on what you have studied, determine whether the words being sung are **true** or **false**. God will help you.

**7. Tell Others:** The disciples went everywhere telling others about this **good news**. You can too. It's encouraging to see friends come to the same understanding. But remember, God has given people a free will, so respect it. Be patient in your approach and sensitive in what you say. Don't cram it down their throats. The Bible tells us to be **witnesses**, not **lawyers**. A witness explains something; a lawyer argues and tries to convince. Simply passing this book on to friends may help them understand.

8. Future Hope: The Bible says that one day, Jesus will return to the earth.

Brothers, we do not want you to be ignorant about those who fall asleep [or have died], or to grieve like the rest of men, who have no hope. We believe that Jesus died and rose again and so we believe that God will bring with Jesus those who have fallen asleep in him. According to the Lord's own word, we tell you that we who are still alive, who are left till the coming of the Lord, will certainly not precede those who have fallen asleep.

For the Lord himself will come down from heaven, with a loud command, with the voice of the archangel and with the trumpet call of God, and the dead in Christ will rise first. After that, we who are still alive and are left will be caught up together with them in the clouds to meet the Lord in the air. And so we will be with the Lord forever. Therefore encourage each other with these words.

1 Thessalonians 4:13–18 NIV

Well, there is so much more that could be written. But if you are one of those who has put your trust in Christ, then it is good to know that the Bible says God will lead you, step by step. You have started a spiritual pilgrimage. Keep your eyes on him; let him be your focus. Study your map, the Bible, regularly. The road will not always be smooth, but God will be with you—he has given you his promise. Have a very good journey.

**May the God of peace, who through the blood of the eternal covenant brought back from the dead our Lord Jesus, that great Shepherd of the sheep, equip you with everything good for doing his will, and may he work in us what is pleasing to him, through Jesus Christ, to whom be glory for ever and ever. Amen.**

Hebrews 13:20–21 NIV

## **2 A CONVENIENT TIME**

There are those who, after reading the Bible and understanding what it has to say, decide to take a risk. They decide not to believe it. They choose to:

- Ignore its message.
- Reject it outright.

- Get busy with life, and thereby forget it.
- Change its message.

...and they hope that the Bible is wrong.

Herod Agrippa took such a risk. As the grandson of Herod the Great and nephew of Herod Antipas, he must have been privy to the gossip about Jesus in the royal household. No doubt, spies had reported every word the prophet from Nazareth spoke. But Herod had status; he was an important man. Rather than humble himself before the King of Kings, he continued to live his life for himself. He even gained an element of popularity by beheading one of Jesus' disciples.

But then ...

**On the appointed day Herod, wearing his royal robes, sat on his throne and delivered a public address to the people. They shouted, "This is the voice of a god, not of a man." Immediately, because Herod did not give praise to God, an angel of the Lord struck him down, and he was eaten by worms and died.**

Acts 12:21-23 NIV

God in his grace will tolerate sin for awhile, but then in his justice he will judge it. Judgment may come in this life or it may be withheld until after

death, but it will happen. Herod died<sup>6</sup> and faced an eternity in the Lake of Fire. The next verse is noteworthy ...

**But the word of God continued to increase and spread.**

Acts 12:24 NIV

I would encourage you not to casually ignore the Bible's message or become too busy to properly investigate it. It would be a tragedy not to have taken the time to really discover all you needed to know about life and death.

Another contemporary of Jesus was Herod Agrippa II. As the great grandson of Herod the Great, and son of Herod Agrippa, he would also have known about Jesus. The Bible says King Agrippa was **well versed** in all the things concerning Jesus. The apostle Paul<sup>7</sup> was arrested and testified before him. In his defense before Agrippa, Paul told him about Jesus. He said ...

**“For the king, before whom I also speak freely, knows these things; for I am convinced that none of these things escapes his attention, since this thing was not done in a corner. King Agrippa, do you believe the prophets? I know that you do believe.”**

**Then Agrippa said to Paul, "You almost persuade me to become a Christian."**

Acts 26:26–28 NKJV

King Agrippa seemed to understand Paul quite well, so much so that he even admitted that Paul had almost persuaded him to believe. But Agrippa took the risk. He didn't believe. He side-stepped the question in an effort to avoid making a decision. As far as we know, Agrippa never did believe. He went to his grave **understanding** but not believing. It was his choice.

Paul also defended himself before a Roman governor named Felix. Paul always took these opportunities to give a lengthy explanation of who Jesus was and what He had done.

**Several days later Felix came with his wife Drusilla, who was a Jewess. He sent for Paul and listened to him as he spoke about faith in Christ Jesus. As Paul discoursed on righteousness, self-control and the judgment to come, Felix was afraid and said, "That's enough for now! You may leave. When I find it convenient, I will send for you."**

Acts 24:24–25 NIV

Felix put off his decision. He was waiting for a more convenient time. It's easy to do that, but the Bible reminds us that...

**...now is the accepted time; ...now is the day of salvation.**      2 Corinthians 6:2 NKJV

We never know what the future holds, or how quickly our lives can be taken. We need to decide **now**. Of course Felix was afraid, and sometimes we become fearful too. We wonder what others may think. It really doesn't matter. What does matter is what God thinks. History doesn't record what happened to Felix but, to the best of our knowledge, he never did find a convenient time to believe.

Felix also had other hopes...

**...he was hoping that Paul would offer him a bribe, so he sent for him frequently and talked with him.**      Acts 24:26 NIV

Felix had ulterior motives. His professed interest in Jesus was distorted by a desire for monetary gain. Nevertheless, he did speak **often** with Paul about Jesus. Many could have interpreted these conversations as Felix having **gotten religion**. Some people are like Felix. They talk a lot

about the Bible, but then they use its message for their own profit. Most people recognize the inconsistency, but some are deceived. Because of such hypocrites, some people claim they will never believe the Bible. But hey, wait a minute! Did the Bible's message change? No, not one bit. It still says the same thing no matter how people distort it for their own ends. If you are one who would be tempted to reject the Bible because of guys like Felix, then think again.

If you find yourself vacillating, not understanding, or just outright rejecting what you have read, then might I suggest that you investigate the Bible a little more before you close the case. As we said at the beginning, the Scripture does have a lot to say about life...and death.

Don't stop your investigation now.

Your life—and your life after death—is at stake.

# **APPENDIX**

**GLOSSARY**

**CHOOSING A BIBLE**

**RESOURCES**

**END NOTES**

## GLOSSARY

**Abba:** (Aramaic) equivalent to the English words “daddy” or “papa”

**Adoption:** the rite of investing legal sonship, complete with its obligations and privileges

**Altar:** a platform made of earth or rocks upon which sacrifices were offered to God or gods

**Amen:** (Hebrew/Greek) a word of affirmation; a form of agreement, “That’s right!” or “I agree!”

**Angel:** (Greek) messenger; a created heavenly spirit being

**Anoint:** to pour oil upon the person’s head or on an object for the purpose of setting apart for God’s use. The word came to mean or refer to anything chosen for the LORD’S service.

**Apostle:** (Greek) a sent one; used most often in reference to the twelve disciples and Paul

**Ark:** a container; either large (boat) or small (box)

**Blessing:** the receiving or giving of God’s favour

**Centurion:** (Greek/Latin) a Roman army officer responsible for 100 men

**Christ:** (Greek) “the anointed one,” translated Messiah (Hebrew) in the Old Testament

**Confess:** to agree with or acknowledge

**Covenant:** a promise, agreement

**Curse:** to incur or bestow displeasure

**Demon:** a created evil spirit being giving allegiance to Satan

**Devil:** (derived from Greek) false accuser, slanderer; another name for Satan, the most powerful of all evil spirit beings

**Disciple:** a follower

**Faith:** to trust or put confidence in (see pages 196-199)

**Genesis:** (Greek) beginnings or origins

**Glory:** literally "to have weight," as in the sense of worth

**Gospel:** good news

**Grace:** God's kindness to undeserving sinners

**I AM:** a name of God, meaning "the self-existent one" or "the one who exists by His own power."

**Immanuel:** (Hebrew/Greek) "God with us"

**Jesus:** (Greek—derived from Hebrew) means the LORD is our Saviour.

**Justified:** a judicial act whereby God declares a person righteous in His sight

**Mercy:** God's love demonstrated towards undeserving sinners, pity

**Messiah:** (Hebrew) "the anointed one," translated "Christ" (Greek) in the New Testament

**Parable:** a short story with a lesson

**Pharaoh:** the king of Egypt

**Pharisee:** a Jew who followed God's law meticulously to the point of creating additional laws so as not to break God's laws

**Priest:** a man who performed assigned duties in the Tabernacle or Temple

**Prophet:** a messenger who spoke for God

**Psalms:** (Greek) a song

**Rabbi:** (Greek) teacher, master

**Redeem:** to buy, as in the sense of purchasing a slave in a market

**Repent:** to have a change of mind (see page 290)

**Righteous:** to be viewed as right with God. This does not mean that a person is sinless. Can also be used in the sense of how one lives; of having a good or right sort of lifestyle.

**Sabbath:** the seventh day of the week; Saturday

**Sanhedrin:** (Greek) a Jewish court comprised of seventy-one men

**Satan:** (Hebrew/Greek) adversary; the supreme enemy of God

**Saviour:** someone who delivers or rescues another

**Scribe:** one who made copies of the Scriptures in ancient times

**Sin:** has the idea of shooting an arrow and missing the mark, in this case aiming for God's holiness, but falling short; to despise God and his Word; refusing to live as God intended

**Sin Nature:** sometimes referred to as the human nature or Adam's nature; a condition

**Son of God:** an idiomatic term, having no physical implications, used to designate the same attributes

**Son of man:** a phrase used by Jesus in reference to himself to emphasize His humanity, also understood by ancient scholars to be a term referring to Messiah

**Synagogue:** (Greek) assemblies; commonly used in reference to the building

**Transgression:** see sin

**Worship:** to declare God's worth

## CHOOSING A BIBLE

The Bible was written in the common language of each generation—Hebrew, Aramaic or Greek. God intended it to be accessible to every man, woman and child regardless of their background or social status. Since the age of Greek civilization, translations were made in other languages.

During the period that came to be known as the Dark Ages, the Bible was commonly available only in Latin and only the organized clergy had access to the limited, handwritten copies. It was considered a sin for the man on the street to read or try to understand it for himself. Satan had seemingly succeeded in hiding God's Word behind a clergyman's robe.

Then in the early 1500's, William Tyndale committed himself to putting the Bible into the everyday language of the English-speaking people. It is said that at one time he told a clergyman,

**"If God spare my life, ere many years pass, I will cause a boy that driveth the plough to know more of the Scripture than thou doest."**

Tyndale was harshly opposed in his task by both the clergy and the political powers of that day.

Suffering shipwreck, loss of manuscripts, pursuit by secret agents and betrayal by friends, he succeeded in translating the Bible into English at the expense of his own life. Captured, imprisoned, sentenced, then strangled and burned—his last words were, “LORD, open the King of England’s eyes.”

Today, the English language offers a plethora of translations—many with varying degrees of supplementary Bible helps. In choosing a Bible, remember two things:

1. Whatever English Bible you buy, it is a translation of the original languages. Any time you translate a message from one language to another, the accuracy, the readability—the entire production—will have its strengths and weaknesses. Fortunately, the translation of the Bible into English has usually been done with meticulous care, so that what we have today is very accurate. There are, however, both good and not-so-good translations of the Bible. I strongly suggest you aim to get the most precise translation you can, but in so doing, still remember it is a translation. I say this, not depreciating one iota the power of the Bible’s message in another tongue.

2. Get a translation that is simple for you to read. Remember, Tyndale gave his life to make the Bible readable to the common man. He wanted people to understand it easily, and not feel like they were reading a foreign language.

In light of the above two points, the following translations are efforts at maintaining accuracy and readability:

Translation	School Grade Level <sup>1</sup>
New International Version	7.8
New King James Version	9.0
New American Standard Version	10.5
King James Version (old English)	11.6

To help explain the Bible in greater detail, many versions come with cross-references, notes on customs, maps, etc.—all listed under the category of Bible helps. These can indeed be helpful, but remember, they are nothing more than man’s comments on the Bible text, and are not the Scriptures themselves.

In obtaining a Bible, you may wish to have a small one that can be carried with you, and a larger one that you can leave at home for greater in-depth study.

## RESOURCES

Due to the range of issues covered in any list of books, videos, web sites or magazines, by policy, GoodSeed does not issue specific endorsements. Nonetheless, at the time of writing, the following resources contained helpful information on creation/evolution and other Bible related issues.

### WEB SITES:

[www.AnswersInGenesis.org](http://www.AnswersInGenesis.org)

[www.creation.com](http://www.creation.com)

[www.icr.org](http://www.icr.org)

### MAGAZINES:

Creation Magazine

—available from [www.creation.com](http://www.creation.com).

Answers Magazine

—available from [www.AnswersInGenesis.org](http://www.AnswersInGenesis.org).

### BOOKS:

**An Ice Age Caused by the Genesis Flood**—by Michael J. Oard, ICR, El Cajon, CA 243 pp.

**Bones of Contention: A Creationist Assessment of Human Fossils**—by Marvin L. Lubenow, Baker Bk House, Grand Rapids, MI 295 pp.

**Creation and Change: Genesis 1.1-2.4 in the light of changing scientific paradigms**—Douglas F. Kelly, Christian Focus Pub., Ross-shire, GB 272 pp.

**Creation: Facts of Life**—by Gary Parker, Master Bks Green Forest, AR 215 pp.

**Darwin's Black Box**—by Michael J. Behe, Touchstone, Simon and Schuster, NY, NY 307 pp.

**Darwin's Enigma: Ebbing the Tide of Naturalism**—by L. Sunderland, MBks, Grn Fst, AR 192 pp.

**Evolution: A Theory in Crisis, New Developments in Science are Challenging Orthodox Darwinism**—by Michael Denton, Adler & Adler, Pub., Inc., Bethesda, MD 368 pp.

**Evolution: The Fossils Still Say NO!**—by Duane T. Gish, ICR, El Cajon, CA 391 pp.

**Ice Cores and the Age of the Earth**—by Larry Vardiman, Ph.D., ICR, El Cajon, CA 72 pp.

**Noah's Ark: A Feasibility Study**—by John Woodmorappe, ICR, El Cajon, CA 306 pp.

**Refuting Compromise**—Jonathan Sarfati, Ph.D., Creation Book Publishers

**Refuting Evolution: A Response to the National Acad. of Sciences' Teaching About Evolution & the Nature of Sciences**—by J. Sarfati, Ph.D., Master Bks, Green Forest, AR 143 pp.

**The Controversy: Roots of the Creat.-Evol. Conflict**—by D. Chittick, Creation Cps, 280 pp.

**The Long War Against God: The History and Impact of the Creation/Evolution Conflict**—by Henry M. Morris, Baker Bk House, Grand Rapids, MI 344 pp.

**The Mythology of Modern Dating Methods: Why million/billion-year results are not credible**—by John

Woodmorappe, M.A. *Geology, B.A. Biology, ICR, El Cajon, CA* 118 pp.

**The Creation Answers Book: 60 Questions about Creation, Evolution, and the Book of Genesis, Answered!**—  
Edited by Don Batten, Ph.D, Creation Book Publishers,  
**Starlight, Time and the New Physics**—John Hartnett  
Ph.D Creation Book Publishers

**Dismantling the Big Bang**—Alex Williams M.Sc and  
John Hartnett Ph.D Creation Book Publishers

### **DVDs:**

**Evidences: The Record and the Flood**—Geoscience  
Rsch. Inst., LL, CA, Rev & Hld Pub. Assoc.

**Mount St. Helens: Explosive Evidence for Catastrophe**—  
Steve Austin, Ph.D., ICR, El Caj., CA

**The Genesis Solution**—Ken Ham, Films for Christ,  
Mesa, AZ

**From A Frog to a Prince (Documentary)** Keziah Films.  
Available [www.creation.com](http://www.creation.com)

**The Grand Canyon Catastrophe: New Evidence of  
the Genesis Flood**—Prod. by Keziah & distrib. by  
American Portrait Films, Cleveland, OH

**The Young Age of the Earth**—American Portrait  
Films, Cleveland, OH

**Unlocking The Mystery Of Life: Reveals Growing Number  
Of Scientific Challenges To Darwinian Evolution**—By  
Stephen C. Meyer, W. Peter Allen, Illustra Media

## END NOTES

### Chapter One

1. Josh McDowell, compiled by Bill Wilson, *A READY DEFENSE*, Thomas Nelson Publishers, © 1993 pp. 27, 28. Used by permission of Thomas Nelson, Inc.
2. Some English Bibles translate “God-breathed” as “inspired.” “God-breathed” is the more literal translation.
3. And they came, bringing to Him a paralytic, carried by four men. Mark 2:3 NASB
4. *Illustrated Bible Dictionary*, Pt 3, IVP ©The Universities and Colleges Christian Fellowship 1980, p. 1538
5. Philip W. Comfort, *THE ORIGIN OF THE BIBLE*, Mark R. Norton, *Texts & Manuscripts of the Old Testament*, p. 151ff, ©1992 by Tyndale House Pub., Inc.
6. Translated by William Whiston, *THE WORKS OF JOSEPHUS*, ©1987 by Hendrickson Publishers, Inc., p. 776
7. Norman L. Geisler and William E. Nix, *From God To Us, How We Got The Bible*, ©1974 Moody Press, Chicago, p. 7
8. Today, Jewish scholars divide the Hebrew Scriptures into three sections—The Law, The Writings, and The Prophets. Though it may have been established as early as the second century

BC, it wasn't until the 5th century that this three-fold division was completed. Ibid., pp. 77–85

## Chapter Two

1. The Galaxy pictured here is not the Milky Way, as it is impossible to photograph. A similar one, the Andromeda, has been substituted.
2. Statistical data: The World Book Encyclopedia; NIGHTWATCH, A Practical Guide to Viewing the Universe by Terence Dickinson, pub. Firefly Books, April 1999. The estimated number of galaxies continues to grow.
3. The word "Lord" is God's personal name—"Yahweh" is Hebrew. The ancient Israelites were in such awe of Yahweh that in the centuries to come they refused to speak his name. In reading the Scriptures out loud, wherever they came to the word Yahweh they would simply say "Lord" or "The Name" with everyone understanding that it was actually referring to Yahweh. Even to this day, the Bible is often written using the substitute word Lord in place of Yahweh. So, in the Bible, whenever you see the name Lord, with all the letters capitalized, understand it as the ancients understood it. You are actually reading Yahweh—the personal name of God.
4. Jude 6
5. Luke 20:36 Death in the physical sense. Angels never cease to exist.

6. Mark 12:25
7. Lucifer is Latin for "shining one." It has its source in the Latin name for the planet Venus, which is often referred to as the "morning star."

### Chapter Three

1. Comparison:

	English	Hebrew	Literal Translation
Day 1	light or	light	
Day 4	lights	ma-or	light-givers

2. The originally created kinds may have given rise to groups, which would subsequently be classified as separate species (e.g. dingoes, coyotes and wolves may all have descended from the one dog kind). This is not a form of evolution, as no new genetic information has been added that was not in the original ancestral population.
3. "Perfect people" as in the sense of moral perfection.
4. For an example, see Dr. Michael J. Behe, *DARWIN'S BLACK BOX*, Touchstone, Simon and Schuster, NY, NY 307 pp.
5. Geochronology is a vast area of study. A search on the WEB brings up numerous papers on different clock models.

### Chapter Four

1. Revelation 12:3–9; Verses 3 & 4 are generally considered to refer to the fall of Satan. Verses

7–9 are viewed by many scholars as having to do with a yet future event. I have quoted the entire passage as the latter verses explain the portion we are concerned about—verses 3 & 4—the who that is in question. For an excellent book on the realm of Satan, see *What the Bible Teaches About Spiritual Warfare*— by Robert Dean, Thomas Ice, Kregel Publications, 208 pp.

2. This passage reflects the choices Adam and Eve made.
3. See Romans 5:12–14 for more details. Also see Chapter Ten, end note-1. Adam was the father—the head—of the entire human race. We were in him when he sinned.
4. Newsweek, January 11, 1988, pp. 46–52
5. Time, December 4, 1995, USA Edition, p. 29

## Chapter Five

1. Some have taught that the reason why God did not accept Cain's sacrifice is because of Cain's attitude. There is no doubt that Cain had an attitude of independence from God, but the Bible clearly states: "By faith Abel offered God a better sacrifice than Cain did..." The Bible does not say: "a better attitude." Cain disobeyed God by bringing the wrong sacrifice. See Hebrews 11:4. For a paper giving extensive treatment of this subject, contact

the appropriate GoodSeed office as listed in the back of the book.

2. Luke 17:27; Matthew 24:38
3. Romans 1:21–32; Though this passage does not make direct reference to the people of Noah’s day, it does reflect the choices they made at the time with the attending ramifications.
4. Probably made from pine-tree resin boiled with charcoal. Bituminous tar would have come into being after the flood.
5. Genesis 6:3
6. 2 Peter 2:5
7. A number of scholars have calculated the “room on the Ark.” One helpful resource on this is: **Noah’s Ark: A Feasibility Study**—by John Woodmorappe, ICR, El Cajon, CA 306 pp.
8. Dr. John Baumgardner, geophysicist at the Los Alamos National Laboratories in New Mexico, proposes a model known in creationist circles as Catastrophic Plate Tectonics.
9. Job 40:15-24; 41:1-34
10. “The Lord came down...” If God is everywhere present at one time, why did he have to “come down”? The Bible often uses terms in relationship to God that enhance our understanding of the passage. For example, God is spoken of as “seeing” even though, as a Spirit, he does not have physical eyes.

11. I am indebted to Dr. Carl Wieland for his input on genetics. For more details on this subject written for the layman, see: *The Creation Answers Book*—by David Catchpoole, Jonathan Sarfati, Carl Wieland, Don Batten (Editor), Creation Book Publishers, LLC 264 pp.

## Chapter Six

1. Notice how life spans decreased dramatically after the flood. Abraham was already considered old at the age of seventy-five.
2. Abram became a great nation: the father of both the Jewish and Arab nations.
3. Abram's name did become great; he is revered by Jew and Arab alike. It is important to note that it was God who made Abram's name great, whereas at Babel the desire was self-motivated.
4. It would seem from history that those who have persecuted the Jews have not prospered over the long run.
5. John 8:56
6. Matthew 17:20
7. "For the wages of sin is death..." Romans 6:23. See Chap 4, Death, p. 62.

## Chapter Seven

1. The twelve tribes of Israel are the twelve sons of Jacob. Exceptions: There was no tribe of Levi

since they became the nation's religious leaders. There was also no tribe of Joseph—his two sons Ephraim and Manasseh made up the difference.

2. This word can be translated "lice."

## Chapter Eight

1. This paragraph is a loose paraphrase of Exodus 19:5.
2. For the purposes of this book, I have only included the Ten Commandments—often referred to as the Moral Law. In actuality the passages referring to the "whole law" would be including much more—all 613 commands given by Moses.

## Chapter Nine

1.
  - ❶ The Bronze Altar: Exodus 27:1,2
  - ❷ The Basin: Exodus 30:18
  - ❸ The Lampstand: Exodus 25:31
  - ❹ The Table with the Bread of the Presence: Exodus 25:23,30
  - ❺ The Golden Altar or The Altar of Incense: Exodus 30:1,3
  - ❻ The Ark of the Covenant: Exodus 25:10,11
  - ❼ The Atonement Cover or Mercy Seat: Exodus 25:17–21
2. The priests could not enter when the pillar of cloud hovered over the Holy of Holies. It signified God's presence. When the cloud moved to lead

them on the journey, then they would have been free to pack up the entire Tabernacle and follow.

3. 2 Samuel 7:12–17
4. Scholars differ on the exact dates associated with Creation, the Noahic Flood and Babel. Taking the Bible at face value does rule out periods of time involving millions or billions of years. All three of these events had to have happened in no more than a few thousand years.

## Chapter Ten

1. This should not be thought of as being some sort of genetic link—that the sin nature can be found in a string of DNA. The association is purely spiritual. God held man responsible for the rebellion in the Garden of Eden, and because of that “...just as sin entered the world through one man, and death through sin, and in this way death came to all men, because all sinned...” (Romans 5:12 NIV) We all have a human father, therefore we are all sinful. Jesus’ father was God, the Holy Spirit, so He had God’s nature.
2. Consider what one of the prophets wrote more than 500 years before Jesus’ birth. “I saw in the night visions, and, behold, one like the Son of man came...And there was given him dominion, and glory, and a kingdom, that all people, nations, and languages, should serve him.” Daniel 7:13,14 KJV

3. "Lord" is an Old Testament title for Messiah (Ps. 110:1) and emphasizes His authority, His right to rule. J. Dwight Pentecost, *The Words and works of Jesus Christ*, ©1981 by Zondervan, p. 61
4. Ephrathah was a region that distinguished this Bethlehem from another town of the same name near Nazareth.
5. A fragrant perfume
6. This could have been the time of Jesus' bar mitzvah. The Talmud says, "at the age of puberty." Some place it a year later.

## Chapter Eleven

1. John was imprisoned by Herod Antipas, son of Herod the Great. John had spoken against Herod's sin, that of living with his half-brother's wife.

## Chapter Twelve

1. There is a distinction: "Then death and Hades [Hell] were thrown into the lake of fire. The lake of fire is the second death." Revelation 20:14 NIV

## Chapter Thirteen

1. Emphatic personal pronoun "I" followed by present indicative active ("...at this present time while I am speaking, I Am.").
2. I have not included all the details of the trial and crucifixion. Of some significance, at this point, is this event: "As they led him away, they seized

Simon from Cyrene, who was on his way in from the country, and put the cross on him and made him carry it behind Jesus." Luke 23:26 NIV

3. Whiston, THE WORKS OF JOSEPHUS p. 720
4. Written in the past tense signifies the certainty of its future happening.
5. What Satan actually thought is not recorded, but because he was the mastermind behind the whole affair, I felt at liberty to conjecture.
6. J. W. Shepard, The Christ of the Gospels, (Eerdmans, Grand Rapids © 1964) p. 604 as quoted by Pentecost, The Words and Works of Jesus Christ, p. 487
7. John F. Walvoord, Roy B. Zuck, The Bible Knowledge Commentary ©1983, SP Publications, Inc. p. 340  
Pentecost, The Words and works of Jesus Christ, p. 487  
Warren W. Wiersbe, The Bible Exposition Commentary, Vol. 1, ©1989, SP Publications, Inc. p. 384
8. A battalion is an army unit consisting of 300 to 1000 men.
9. The exact sequence of the resurrection morning events is not recorded. I have given one of the more likely scenarios.

## Chapter Fourteen

1. Jesus was nailed to the cross at 9:00 a.m.—the time of the morning sacrifice. He died at 3:00 p.m.—the time of the evening sacrifice.
2. Jesus' perfect life qualified him to be a suitable sacrifice, but it was his death that made the payment for sin. Only by dying could it be said that Jesus had fulfilled the demands of the Law.  
Matthew 5:17,18

## Chapter Fifteen

1. Approximately 30% of the Bible is prophecy, either completed or yet to be fulfilled.
2. Another word for "sin."
3. This is often referred to as your position in Christ.
4. "have" is present tense, signifying that eternal life is a present possession.
5. Some English Bibles use the term flesh in reference to our human nature.
6. Josephus, the first-century historian, also records this man's death.
7. Saul's name was changed to Paul.

## Appendix

1. These comparisons are based on an average of several charts posted on-line.

# GOODSEED® International

P. O. Box 3704  
Olds, AB T4H 1P5  
CANADA

**Business:** 403 556-9955

**Facsimile:** 403 556-9950

**Email:** [info@goodseed.com](mailto:info@goodseed.com)

**GOODSEED Australia**  
1800 897-333  
[info.au@goodseed.com](mailto:info.au@goodseed.com)

**GOODSEED Canada**  
800 442-7333  
[info.ca@goodseed.com](mailto:info.ca@goodseed.com)

**BONNESEMENCE Canada**  
Service en français  
888 314-3623  
[info.qc@goodseed.com](mailto:info.qc@goodseed.com)

**GOODSEED Europe**  
(Germany)  
0049 (0)5231-94 35 144  
[info.eu@goodseed.com](mailto:info.eu@goodseed.com)

**GOODSEED UK**  
0800 073-6340  
[info.uk@goodseed.com](mailto:info.uk@goodseed.com)

**GOODSEED USA**  
888 654-7333  
[info.us@goodseed.com](mailto:info.us@goodseed.com)



——— [www.goodseed.com](http://www.goodseed.com) ———

GOODSEED® International is a not-for-profit organization that exists for the purpose of clearly communicating the contents of this book in this language and others. We invite you to contact us if you are interested in ongoing projects or translations.

'GOODSEED,' and the Book/Leaf design mark are trademarks of GOODSEED International.